

# **Ulead® MediaStudio® Pro 7**

*User Guide  
Ulead Systems, Inc.  
January 2003*

First English edition for MediaStudio Pro version 7, January 2003

© 1992–2003, Ulead Systems, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or storing in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form without the express written permission of Ulead Systems, Inc.

### ***Software license***

The software described in this document is furnished under a License Agreement which is included with the product. This Agreement specifies the permitted and prohibited uses of the product.

### ***Licenses and trademarks***

Ulead, Ulead Systems logo, MediaStudio and MediaStudio Pro are registered trademarks and/or trademarks of Ulead Systems, Inc. All other product names and any registered and unregistered trademarks mentioned in this manual are used for identification purposes only and remain the exclusive property of their respective owners.

### ***Sample files***

Files provided as samples on the program CD can be used for personal demonstrations, productions and presentations. No rights are granted for commercial reproduction or redistribution of any sample files.

#### **North & South America Ulead Systems, Inc.**

<http://www.ulead.com>  
E-mail: [info@ulead.com](mailto:info@ulead.com)

#### **Japan Ulead Systems, Inc.**

<http://www.ulead.co.jp>  
E-mail: [info@ulead.co.jp](mailto:info@ulead.co.jp)

#### **Germany Ulead Systems GmbH**

<http://www.ulead.de>  
E-mail: [info@ulead.de](mailto:info@ulead.de)

#### **International Ulead Systems, Inc.**

<http://www.ulead.com>  
<http://www.asiapac.ulead.com>  
<http://www.ulead.com.tw>  
E-mail: [info@ulead.com.tw](mailto:info@ulead.com.tw)

#### **China Ulead Systems, Inc.**

<http://www.ulead.com.cn>  
E-mail: [info@ulead.com.cn](mailto:info@ulead.com.cn)

# Table of Contents

## Introduction

<b>Welcome to MediaStudio Pro</b> .....	<b>15</b>
<b>Getting started</b> .....	<b>16</b>
<b>Help!</b> .....	<b>16</b>
<b>The manual</b> .....	<b>16</b>
<b>More info</b> .....	<b>17</b>
<b>Installation</b> .....	<b>17</b>
<i>Installing Acrobat Reader</i> .....	<i>18</i>
<i>Running the programs</i> .....	<i>18</i>
<i>Read Me</i> .....	<i>18</i>
<b>What's new?</b> .....	<b>19</b>
<i>Real-time software preview capability in Video Editor</i> .....	<i>19</i>
<i>MPEG-1, MPEG-2 and Windows Media Format native editing</i> .....	<i>19</i>
<i>Audio enhancement and mixing control</i> .....	<i>19</i>
<i>Realtime output</i> .....	<i>20</i>
<i>Rich title feature</i> .....	<i>20</i>
<i>Video capture enhancement</i> .....	<i>20</i>
<i>16:9 Widescreen format</i> .....	<i>20</i>
<i>Scene detection enhancement</i> .....	<i>20</i>
<i>Support Dolby AC-3 encoding and decoding</i> .....	<i>21</i>
<i>Improved integration</i> .....	<i>21</i>
<i>Sony MICROMV support</i> .....	<i>21</i>
<i>Support for Pentium 4 and dual CPUs</i> .....	<i>21</i>
<i>Enhanced navigation</i> .....	<i>22</i>
<i>DVD/VCD authoring</i> .....	<i>22</i>

## Tutorials

<b>Tutorial 1: Video Capture</b> .....	<b>25</b>
<i>Setting up the DV device control</i> .....	<i>26</i>
<b>Tutorial 2: Video Editor</b> .....	<b>27</b>
<b>The basics</b> .....	<b>28</b>
<i>Creating your first video project</i> .....	<i>28</i>
<i>Adding clips to your project</i> .....	<i>29</i>

<i>Working with clips</i>	30
<i>Applying transition effects</i>	31
<i>Previewing your work</i>	31
<b>Artistic and creative techniques</b>	<b>33</b>
<i>Applying a video filter</i>	33
<i>Creating a moving path</i>	34
<i>Changing the audio level of an audio track</i>	35
<i>Advanced techniques</i>	36
<i>Customizing a transition effect</i>	36
<i>Using Moving Paths</i>	37
<i>Synchronizing audio to video</i>	38
<i>Auto Slideshow</i>	39
<i>Pixel aspect ratio management</i>	40
<i>Recording back to a DV device from the Timeline</i>	41
<b>Tutorial 3: Video Paint</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Getting to know Video Paint</b>	<b>44</b>
<i>Creating your first project</i>	44
<i>Working with images in an edit window</i>	45
<i>Customizing your brushes</i>	46
<i>Working over multiple frames</i>	47
<b>Common techniques</b>	<b>49</b>
<i>Applying a video filter</i>	49
<i>Cloning an image</i>	50
<i>Creating a video matte</i>	51
<b>Advanced techniques</b>	<b>52</b>
<i>Performing an erase effect</i>	52
<b>Performing an advanced power duplication</b>	<b>53</b>
<i>Creating background sets</i>	54
<i>Retouching images</i>	56
<i>Advanced macros: Creating a laser beam effect</i>	57
<i>Advanced cloning: Disappearing act</i>	58
<b>Tutorial 4: CG Infinity</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Common techniques</b>	<b>60</b>
<i>Drawing regular shapes</i>	60
<i>Creating and distorting text objects</i>	61
<i>Applying gradients to your objects</i>	62
<i>Manipulating objects</i>	63
<i>Creating a corporate logo</i>	64
<i>Animating objects</i>	65

<b>Advanced techniques</b> .....	<b>66</b>
<i>Creating mattes</i> .....	66
<i>Creating a corporate logo (advanced)</i> .....	67
<i>Controlling the timing of multiple objects</i> .....	68
<i>Performing fades and distortions over time</i> .....	69

## Video Capture

<b>Chapter 1: Getting started</b> .....	<b>73</b>
<b>Understanding the basics</b> .....	<b>74</b>
<b>Preparing video for display</b> .....	<b>76</b>
<i>Capture Plug and Play</i> .....	76
<i>Connecting to an analog video source</i> .....	76
<i>Previewing video from your video source</i> .....	77
<i>Setting preview options</i> .....	77
<i>Defining audio input when capturing analog video</i> .....	78
<b>Improving video signal when capturing analog video</b> .....	<b>79</b>
<i>Calibrating your display</i> .....	79
<i>Adjusting color with your video capture board</i> .....	82
<b>Customizing Video Capture</b> .....	<b>83</b>
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>84</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Capturing video</b> .....	<b>85</b>
<b>Tips for capturing good video and audio</b> .....	<b>86</b>
<i>Getting the right hardware</i> .....	86
<i>Using compression</i> .....	87
<i>Techniques for improving your video captures</i> .....	87
<i>Techniques for improving your audio captures</i> .....	88
<b>Capturing videos and images</b> .....	<b>88</b>
<i>Customizing your capture options</i> .....	92
<i>Capturing from a DV camcorder using an IEEE-1394 (FireWire card) interface card</i> .....	93
<i>Seamless DV Capture</i> .....	94
<i>Controlling the DV camcorder</i> .....	95
<i>Direct MPEG capturing from a DV camcorder</i> .....	96
<i>Direct WMV capturing</i> .....	97
<i>Capturing video based on a profile</i> .....	98
<i>Editing and customizing a video profile</i> .....	100
<i>Scanning a DV tape</i> .....	101
<i>Dropped frames</i> .....	103

<i>Capturing single frames</i> .....	103
<i>Capturing a sequence of still frames</i> .....	104
<i>Capture history</i> .....	105
<b>Capturing a color palette when capturing analog video</b> .....	<b>106</b>
<i>Changing a file's properties</i> .....	107
<b>Marking video sequences for capturing</b> .....	<b>109</b>
<i>Viewing and editing a batch list</i> .....	110
<i>Capturing marked video sequences</i> .....	111
<b>Capture plug-ins</b> .....	<b>111</b>
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>112</b>

## Video Editor

<b>Chapter 1: Getting started</b> .....	<b>115</b>
<b>Understanding the workplace</b> .....	<b>116</b>
<i>Standard toolbar</i> .....	117
<i>Timeline toolbar</i> .....	117
<b>Working with video projects</b> .....	<b>118</b>
<i>Creating a new video project</i> .....	118
<i>Customizing a video project</i> .....	119
<i>Project settings</i> .....	120
<i>4:3 and 16:9 display management</i> .....	121
<i>Saving a project as a template</i> .....	121
<i>Saving a video project</i> .....	122
<i>Packaging a video project</i> .....	122
<i>Smart Relink</i> .....	122
<i>Saving the layout</i> .....	122
<b>Using the Production Library</b> .....	<b>123</b>
<i>Placing clips into the Production Library</i> .....	123
<i>Using the Storyboard</i> .....	124
<i>Working with folders</i> .....	125
<i>Drag and drop</i> .....	125
<i>Viewing Production Library thumbnails</i> .....	126
<i>Adding effects to the Production Library</i> .....	127
<b>Working with the Timeline</b> .....	<b>127</b>
<i>Inserting clips</i> .....	127
<i>Inserting video, audio and image clips</i> .....	128
<i>Voice Over</i> .....	129
<i>Extracting extra audio tracks</i> .....	130

<i>Push Away insertion</i>	131
<i>Inserting title, color, and silence clips</i>	132
<i>Working with tracks</i>	133
<i>Determining the visibility of clips</i>	134
<i>Displaying clips on the Timeline</i>	134
<i>Zooming in/out on the Timeline</i>	135
<i>General Timeline and Summary Timeline</i>	136
<i>Using the Quick Command Panel</i>	138
<i>Inserting Ulead video file types</i>	139
<i>Inserting UIS files</i>	139
<b>Converting files</b>	<b>140</b>
<i>Smart Check &amp; Convert</i>	140
<i>Batch Convert</i>	141
<b>Customizing Video Editor</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>The chapter in review</b>	<b>148</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Editing clips</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>Making selections in the Timeline</b>	<b>150</b>
<i>Using the Clip Selection tool</i>	150
<i>Using the Time Selection tool</i>	151
<i>Using the Track Selection tool</i>	152
<i>Using the Track buttons</i>	152
<i>Grouping clips</i>	153
<b>Working with clips</b>	<b>153</b>
<i>Pasting attributes</i>	154
<i>Snapping to clips</i>	155
<i>Splitting the audio from video clips</i>	155
<i>Changing the speed of clips</i>	155
<i>Reversing the frames of a clip</i>	156
<i>Relinking clips</i>	156
<i>Calibrating video clips</i>	156
<i>Freezing a frame</i>	157
<i>Setting field options for video clips</i>	158
<i>Using A/B Roll Editing mode</i>	159
<b>Working with cues</b>	<b>160</b>
<i>Placing project cues</i>	160
<i>Placing clip cues</i>	161
<b>Locating clips</b>	<b>162</b>
<i>Locating an empty time slot</i>	163
<b>Trimming clips</b>	<b>163</b>
<i>Trimming in the Source window</i>	164

<i>Using the Trim window</i> .....	165
<i>Using the Scissors tool to trim clips</i> .....	165
<i>Defining trim options</i> .....	166
<i>Smart Trim</i> .....	166
<b>Ripple Editing</b> .....	<b>167</b>
<b>Ripple Editing examples</b> .....	<b>168</b>
<i>Automatically trimming an inserted clip (No Ripple)</i> .....	168
<i>Inserting a clip into a full Timeline (Ripple)</i> .....	168
<i>Inserting clips into the middle of an existing clip</i> .....	169
<b>Using the Source window</b> .....	<b>170</b>
<b>Previewing your work</b> .....	<b>174</b>
<i>Previewing</i> .....	175
<i>Instant Play</i> .....	175
<i>Using DV SmartPlay</i> .....	177
<i>Performing scrub previews</i> .....	178
<i>Previewing on an external device</i> .....	179
<i>Managing preview files</i> .....	179
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>180</b>
<b>Chapter 3: Using effects</b> .....	<b>181</b>
<b>Using transition effects</b> .....	<b>182</b>
<i>Transition effects basics</i> .....	182
<i>Customizing a transition</i> .....	184
<i>Fade to black</i> .....	185
<i>Audio transitions</i> .....	187
<b>Using key frame controls</b> .....	<b>188</b>
<b>Video overlay effects</b> .....	<b>190</b>
<i>Overlay key types</i> .....	192
<i>Understanding Alpha Channels</i> .....	193
<i>Using Gamma correction</i> .....	194
<b>Working with mattes</b> .....	<b>195</b>
<i>Creating image and video mattes</i> .....	195
<i>Using Grayscale mattes</i> .....	196
<b>Applying video filters</b> .....	<b>197</b>
<i>Video filter samples</i> .....	198
<i>Global filters</i> .....	198
<i>Applying a regional matte to a video filter</i> .....	200
<b>Creating a moving path</b> .....	<b>202</b>
<i>Creating 3D moving paths</i> .....	206

<i>Managing key frames on a moving path</i> .....	207
<i>Inserting an image with moving path attributes</i> .....	208
<b>Applying audio filters</b> .....	<b>209</b>
<i>Changing the audio level of an audio clip</i> .....	210
<i>Adding a soundtrack</i> .....	210
<b>Creating titles</b> .....	<b>212</b>
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>216</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Creating and outputting your files</b> .....	<b>217</b>
<b>Creating a movie</b> .....	<b>218</b>
<i>Determining your video save options</i> .....	219
<i>Cropping video files</i> .....	222
<i>Performing a batch video creation</i> .....	224
<b>Analyzing a video file's data rate</b> .....	<b>225</b>
<b>Creating an audio file</b> .....	<b>227</b>
<i>Audio Mixing Panel</i> .....	228
<i>Grouping audio tracks</i> .....	232
<i>Modifying volume controls in real time</i> .....	233
<i>Frame by Frame Audio Preview</i> .....	234
<b>Creating an image sequence</b> .....	<b>235</b>
<b>Creating an Edit Decision List (EDL) file</b> .....	<b>236</b>
<i>Posting timecode</i> .....	237
<b>Outputting to analog video tape</b> .....	<b>238</b>
<b>Creating a VCD</b> .....	<b>240</b>
<b>Creating an SVCD</b> .....	<b>241</b>
<b>Creating a DVD</b> .....	<b>241</b>
<b>Creating MPEG-2 files</b> .....	<b>242</b>
<b>Creating WMV/ QuickTime streaming file</b> .....	<b>243</b>
<b>Exporting to Ulead DVD MovieFactory</b> .....	<b>245</b>
<b>Exporting to Ulead DVD-VR Wizard</b> .....	<b>245</b>
<b>Working with a Digital Video camcorder</b> .....	<b>246</b>
<i>External preview plug-in architecture</i> .....	247
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>248</b>

# Video Paint

<b>Chapter 1: Getting started</b> .....	<b>251</b>
<b>Understanding the basics</b> .....	<b>252</b>
<i>Working with the Filmstrip panel</i> .....	254
<i>Working with edit windows</i> .....	255
<i>Saving your work</i> .....	255
<i>Opening files into Video Paint</i> .....	256
<i>Starting a new Video Paint project</i> .....	257
<i>Creating a video or image file</i> .....	258
<i>Performing Cut and Copy operations</i> .....	259
<i>Performing a paste operation</i> .....	259
<i>Duplicating changes over frames</i> .....	260
<i>Placing cues</i> .....	262
<b>Viewing edit windows</b> .....	<b>263</b>
<i>Zooming on an image</i> .....	263
<i>Using the Global Viewer</i> .....	264
<i>Fitting an image in the edit window</i> .....	265
<b>Working with frames in a project</b> .....	<b>265</b>
<i>Inserting frames</i> .....	266
<i>Duplicating frames</i> .....	267
<i>Deleting frames</i> .....	267
<i>Replacing frames</i> .....	267
<b>Customizing Video Paint</b> .....	<b>269</b>
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>274</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Painting</b> .....	<b>275</b>
<b>Working in different display modes</b> .....	<b>276</b>
<i>Normal mode</i> .....	276
<i>Ruby Mask mode</i> .....	276
<i>Onionskin mode</i> .....	278
<i>No Source Video mode</i> .....	279
<b>Making selections</b> .....	<b>280</b>
<i>Understanding the selection marquee</i> .....	280
<i>Selecting in the Composite and Paint Layer modes</i> .....	281
<i>Selecting regularly shaped areas</i> .....	281
<i>Selecting irregularly shaped areas</i> .....	282
<i>Selecting an area containing similar colors</i> .....	283
<i>Adding to or subtracting from a selection area</i> .....	284

<i>Moving a selection area marquee (mask)</i> .....	285
<b>Working with color</b> .....	<b>285</b>
<i>Using the Color palette</i> .....	286
<i>Selecting colors from the Color Picker pop-up menu</i> .....	287
<i>Selecting colors with the Eyedropper tool</i> .....	288
<i>Loading and saving color tables</i> .....	288
<b>Using the Painting tools</b> .....	<b>289</b>
<i>Specifying Brush panel attributes</i> .....	290
<i>Filling an area with color</i> .....	294
<b>Transforming selections</b> .....	<b>294</b>
<b>Using the Clone tool</b> .....	<b>295</b>
<b>Using the Retouch tool</b> .....	<b>296</b>
<b>Recording macros</b> .....	<b>298</b>
<b>Applying filters</b> .....	<b>301</b>
<b>Previewing your work</b> .....	<b>302</b>
<i>Performing a flick preview</i> .....	302
<i>Performing a preview</i> .....	303
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>304</b>

## CG Infinity

<b>Chapter 1: Getting started</b> .....	<b>307</b>
<b>Understanding the basics</b> .....	<b>308</b>
<i>Understanding objects</i> .....	310
<i>Starting a new CG Infinity project</i> .....	310
<i>Changing the background of an edit window</i> .....	311
<i>Changing the view of an edit window</i> .....	312
<i>Viewing objects</i> .....	312
<i>Saving your work</i> .....	313
<i>Creating video and image files</i> .....	313
<i>Performing Cut and Copy operations</i> .....	313
<i>Performing a paste operation</i> .....	314
<b>Controlling the alignment of objects</b> .....	<b>315</b>
<i>Displaying rulers</i> .....	315
<i>Displaying grid and guides</i> .....	315
<i>Aligning objects</i> .....	316
<b>Customizing CG Infinity</b> .....	<b>317</b>
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>318</b>

<b>Chapter 2: Working with objects</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>Defining an object's style</b>	<b>320</b>
<i>Setting your default object style</i>	323
<b>Creating text and shape objects</b>	<b>323</b>
<i>Using the Text tool</i>	324
<i>Using the Shape tool</i>	325
<i>Using the Freehand tool</i>	326
<i>Using the Path tool</i>	327
<b>Selecting and transforming objects</b>	<b>328</b>
<i>Selecting multiple objects</i>	329
<i>Grouping objects</i>	329
<i>Layering objects</i>	329
<i>Moving objects</i>	330
<i>Transforming objects</i>	330
<i>Using the Envelope tool</i>	331
<b>Adjusting shapes</b>	<b>332</b>
<b>Creating a moving path</b>	<b>334</b>
<i>Changing the shape of a moving path</i>	335
<i>Changing the size and style of an object over time</i>	336
<i>Changing the speed of an object</i>	337
<i>Timing the movement of objects</i>	338
<b>The chapter in review</b>	<b>340</b>

## Audio Editor

<b>Chapter 1: Getting started</b>	<b>343</b>
<b>Understanding the basics</b>	<b>344</b>
<i>Playing audio files</i>	346
<i>Creating a new edit window</i>	346
<i>Saving files</i>	347
<i>Converting files</i>	348
<i>Viewing waveforms</i>	348
<i>Dragging-and-dropping to Video Editor</i>	350
<b>Recording sound</b>	<b>350</b>
<i>Tips for determining audio quality</i>	352
<b>Customizing Audio Editor</b>	<b>353</b>
<b>The chapter in review</b>	<b>354</b>

<b>Chapter 2: Editing audio files</b> .....	<b>355</b>
<b>Creating selection areas</b> .....	<b>356</b>
<i>Creating precise selections</i> .....	357
<b>Working with cues</b> .....	<b>357</b>
<i>Managing cues</i> .....	358
<i>Clearing audio data</i> .....	359
<i>Inserting audio data</i> .....	360
<b>Sound sweetening</b> .....	<b>361</b>
<i>Changing the audio level</i> .....	361
<i>Changing pitch</i> .....	362
<i>Quantizing a waveform</i> .....	363
<i>Working with silence</i> .....	363
<i>Removing background noise</i> .....	364
<i>Calibrating files recorded from different sources</i> .....	365
<b>Mixing tracks</b> .....	<b>365</b>
<i>Removing a mixed track</i> .....	366
<b>Applying special effects</b> .....	<b>367</b>
<i>Performing a fade</i> .....	367
<i>Changing speed</i> .....	368
<i>Performing a stereo pan</i> .....	369
<i>Reversing a file</i> .....	369
<i>Performing an echo</i> .....	370
<i>Performing a cross fade</i> .....	371
<i>Using DirectX Audio and DMO Audio Effect plug-ins</i> .....	371
<b>The chapter in review</b> .....	<b>372</b>

## More Programs

<b>Ulead DVD MovieFactory</b> .....	<b>376</b>
<b>Getting around Ulead DVD MovieFactory</b> .....	<b>376</b>
<b>Which task should you choose?</b> .....	<b>377</b>
<b>Working on a project</b> .....	<b>378</b>
<i>Add videos or slideshows</i> .....	378
<i>Capture settings</i> .....	379
<i>Trim a video</i> .....	382
<i>Edit video or slideshow</i> .....	383
<i>Extract video</i> .....	384
<i>Replace audio</i> .....	385
<i>Split a video</i> .....	385

<i>Add/Edit chapters</i> .....	385
<i>Setup menus</i> .....	387
<i>Preview your movie</i> .....	388
<i>Output your movie</i> .....	389

**Ulead DVD-VR Wizard ..... 390**

<i>Step 1: Select a file to export</i> .....	390
<i>Step 2: Add Program</i> .....	391
<i>Step 3: Select Playlist</i> .....	391
<i>Step 4: Edit Playlist (All)</i> .....	392
<i>Step 5: Edit Playlist</i> .....	392
<i>Step 6: Playback Simulation and Output</i> .....	392

**Appendix**

**Background information ..... 395**

**The world of analog video ..... 396**

<i>Inside the video signal</i> .....	396
<i>How analog video is displayed</i> .....	397

**The world of digital video ..... 397**

<i>Inside digital video</i> .....	398
<i>Working with the data rate</i> .....	398
<i>Understanding the frame rate</i> .....	399
<i>Understanding the frame size</i> .....	399
<i>Understanding data types</i> .....	399
<i>Understanding video compression</i> .....	400
<i>Aspect Ratio</i> .....	401
<i>Frame type</i> .....	402
<i>DV Type-1</i> .....	402
<i>DV Type-2</i> .....	402
<i>WMV</i> .....	402
<i>On USB and IEEE-1394 (Firewire) capture cards</i> .....	403
<i>System Tweaks</i> .....	403

**Shortcuts ..... 407**

**Index ..... 423**

# Welcome to MediaStudio Pro

*Congratulations on purchasing Ulead MediaStudio Pro, the ultimate video editing solution for desktop professionals and digital video enthusiasts. Built around a powerful suite of versatile and high performance programs, MediaStudio Pro is the first choice for anyone wanting to work with video. MediaStudio Pro offers Realtime MPEG Capture, Realtime Preview and Realtime Output. With intuitive controls and seamless integration, creating video has never been easier or more accessible.*

### ***In this introduction you will learn about:***

- *Using the MediaStudio Pro documentation ..... p.16*
- *Installing MediaStudio Pro on your system ..... p.17*
- *Running MediaStudio Pro programs ..... p.18*
- *What's new in MediaStudio Pro ..... p.19*

## Getting started

---

MediaStudio Pro is a high caliber, professional level video editing software suite. More than just a simple video editor, it is truly a complete digital studio, encompassing computer graphics effects, rotoscope animation, and other amazing filters and effects. Acclaimed by industry experts as being the most intuitive and easy to use video editing software around, it is a powerful program that needs ample time to master. Our best advice to you is to begin first by browsing through this manual, then reading the sections you are interested in. Now, you are ready to fire up the program and give it a try. We strongly recommend working through the Tutorials section of this manual and checking out the sample projects found in the Samples folder of MediaStudio Pro before really digging into the advanced stuff. Once the basics are covered, you should be able to begin editing your own movies in just half a day.



## Help!

---

As you work, you will certainly have many questions that can be quickly answered by accessing the extensive online **Help**. Hold your mouse over an object in the program that you have a question about and press **[F1]** on the keyboard. Every item has a help topic associated with it, so this is a surefire way to get instant answers. You can also look at the bottom of these topics (which are usually just simple definitions of the item) and find links to **Related Topics**. Check the **Index** of both the Help and the manual to get to topics quickly.

## The manual

---

We consider the Online Help to be a definitive reference for instant and comprehensive information about every aspect of MediaStudio Pro. It is not meant to be read through as a complete document. The manual, on the other hand, is much more readable but is meant as an introduction and is limited in scope. It contains a broad overview of all of the program modules with detailed step-by-step instructions covering all of the basic functions, clearly outlining the most commonly used tasks.

## More info

---

Once you've played with the program a little and can already edit clips, apply transitions, and add a title or two, you might want to return to the manual for tips, tricks, and ideas. The companion CD has hundreds of samples and additional tutorials. The MediaStudio Pro Web site ([www.ulead.com/msp/runme.htm](http://www.ulead.com/msp/runme.htm)) also has a number of additional resources.

There are also a few private Web sites that have great tutorials and sample projects. One of the best is the MediaStudio User's Group, or MUG, at [www.mugcentral.com](http://www.mugcentral.com). This is the home base for the MUG mailing list, which you can subscribe to at this site. Everyday, dozens of users, including quite a few video professionals, ask and answer questions in an amazingly useful forum.

## Installation

---

The MediaStudio Pro installation program runs from within Windows and contains complete instructions to take you through the installation process.

### *To install MediaStudio Pro:*

1. Read the license agreement that comes with the MediaStudio Pro package. The license agreement contains important legal requirements that you need to be aware of. If you agree to abide by it, continue with the installation.

**Note:** Please take a moment to fill out the registration card during installation. Becoming a registered user entitles you to product updates and upgrade information, as well as technical support. You can also instantly register online (electronically) after installing the program.

2. Insert the MediaStudio Pro CD into your CD-ROM drive. Windows should detect the CD and then automatically run the installation program. If the automatic detection feature is turned off, use Windows Explorer to run the **SETUP.EXE** program directly from your CD-ROM drive.

## Installing Acrobat Reader

An electronic copy of this user guide is also available in the Adobe Acrobat format (**PORTABLE DOCUMENT FORMAT - PDF**). To view this, first run the **AR500ENU.EXE** file (in the **DRIVERS** folder of the first MediaStudio Pro CD) and follow the installation instructions. After successfully installing the Reader program, run the program and click **File: Open** to open the file **MSPMANUAL.PDF**. You can then view the user guide online.

## Running the programs

To run the MediaStudio Pro programs, click on the appropriate command in the **Start: Programs: Ulead MediaStudio Pro 7** submenu. This submenu may differ depending on the choices you made during installation. If you are already working in any of these programs, the easiest method to run another MediaStudio Pro program is by using the **Switch** menu, located on the right of the Menu bar.

## Read Me

In the fast paced world of software, change occurs almost daily. While we have tried to keep this manual as up-to-date as possible, there will inevitably be some things that did not make it into the book by press time. Please browse through the **Read Me** file installed in the MediaStudio Pro directory to find out about the latest notes, drivers, and troubleshooting tips.

## What's new?

Capture, edit and create videos like a professional by using the all-improved MediaStudio Pro 7. A comprehensive tool designed to help you create your videos with ease and flexibility. Through its enhanced and added features, you can make movies like those done by professionals.

### Real-time software preview capability in Video Editor

Play back a project in real-time, without waiting to render preview files. Video Editor can render and play back up to five layers of video, filters and transitions in real-time, allowing the user to immediately see the result of an edit, without having to wait for a render. Realtime performance however, depends on the processor's speed and available memory.

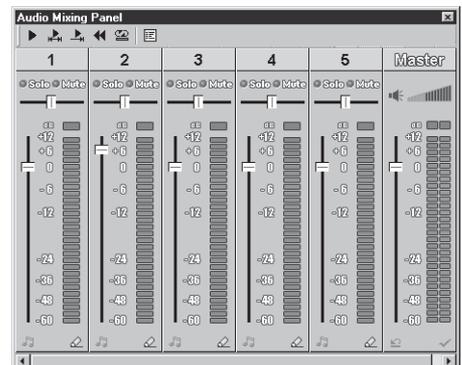


### MPEG-1, MPEG-2 and Windows Media Format native editing

DVD and SVCD parameters can be difficult to set manually. Using presets, users can quickly and easily create DVD and SVCD compliant files. There are also options for RealMedia and Windows Media Format files for streaming on the Web, and users can create and save their own encoding template for future use. The variety of formats allows the user to deliver to virtually any output device without having to go through intermediate and time consuming transcoding processes.

### Audio enhancement and mixing control

Audio mixing panel allows user to adjust and pan audio volume in real time, while frame by frame audio preview allows much greater and more intuitive control.



## Realtime output

Output directly from the timeline, either to DV Camcorder, or to TV/VCR with appropriate TV out display card. You don't need to wait for projects to render!

## Rich title feature

The title dialogue box has been made clearer, and special title effects and animations have been added. Together with new coding to improve the image quality of titles, users now have more professional, as well as more eye catching title options at their disposal.



## Video capture enhancement

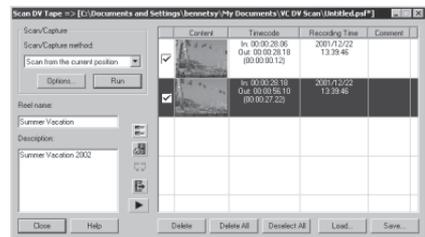
MediaStudio Pro allows Realtime capture, via FireWire, of a variety of formats such as Native DV, MPEG-1, MPEG-2 and Windows Media Format.

## 16:9 Widescreen format

Capture, edit, and output in the increasingly popular 16:9 Widescreen format.

## Scene detection enhancement

Scene Detection makes clip preparation and management much faster and easier. Scan an entire DV tape in 5 minutes. Scene detection identifies individual clips and provides a thumbnail list of the entire tape contents. Save as a DV Album which provides a log of the entire tape for future reference.

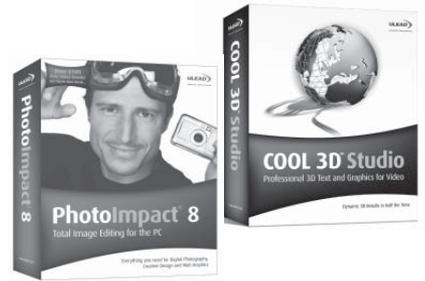


## Support Dolby AC-3 encoding and decoding

Encode and decode Dolby AC-3 audio. Allows users to create sound tracks, especially useful in the creation of DVDs.

## Improved integration

Enhanced titling options include support for Flash animations, integration with Ulead PhotoImpact 8 and Ulead's improved vector based COOL 3D Studio, for the widest range of texture, 3D and movement options in titles and graphic objects. This offers greatly enhanced creativity and usability, especially for 3D titles and objects, filters and effects, and Internet output.



*These products are not included in MediaStudio Pro*

## Sony MICROMV support

Sony's super-small MICROMV camcorders use a proprietary MPEG-2 codec, which MediaStudio Pro allows users to capture, edit, and convert to DVD-ready MPEG-2.

MICROMV users have so far had very limited options with editing and output of their video material. MediaStudio Pro is the first full-featured video editor to offer support for this format.

## Support for Pentium 4 and dual CPUs

Media Studio Pro's scaleable architecture takes full advantage of high-speed Pentium 4 and dual CPUs, resulting in significant performance boosts.

## Enhanced navigation

Summary Timeline tool lets user see entire production at a glance, making it much easier for the user to locate a particular clip or position in the project. This is especially useful for long-form projects.

## DVD/VCD authoring

Ulead DVD MovieFactory LE is included and integrated. This is a complete VCD/DVD authoring package, with templates for backgrounds, menus, etc., including a Runtime player that the user can burn on to disc.



# Tutorials



## Video Capture

*Video Capture is where you'll begin. Hook up your camcorder and you're ready to capture video to your computer for professional editing. MediaStudio Pro supports direct Digital Video (DV), native MPEG capturing, and DV device control, giving you more creative freedom.*

***In this tutorial you will learn about:***

- *Setting up the device control ..... p.26*
- *Capturing digital video (DV) ..... p.26*

## Setting up the DV device control

Control your DV device using the program's Control bar.

### *To set up the DV device control:*

1. Connect your DV device using an IEEE-1394 FireWire interface card then turn it ON. Set it to **Play** or **VCR** mode. Refer to your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.
2. Run **Video Capture**. Video Editor will detect your device automatically.
3. To check if Video Editor detected your device correctly, click **Setup: Device Control**.
4. Click the **Current device** list in the **Device Control** dialog box.
5. Select your device. This will vary depending on your hardware (e.g. MS 1394 Device Control).
6. After you have selected your device control, test if you can control your DV device using the Control bar. If you can't control it, go back to the Device Control dialog box and select another device.

### *To capture digital video (DV):*

1. **Connect** your digital capture device (e.g. DV camcorder) to your PC via the IEEE-1394 FireWire interface card.
2. Turn your device ON and set it to **Play** or **VCR** mode.
3. Run **Video Capture**.
4. Click **Setup: Switch Capture Plug-in**. In the dialog box select a capture plug-in to use from the Current capture plug-in list (e.g. **Ulead DirectShow Capture Plug-in**).
5. Click **Setup: Device Control** and set up your device control. (See To set up the DV device control procedure).
6. Click **Capture: Video**. In the dialog box, select the capture options you want then click **OK**. To select the capture DV type, click **Properties**.
7. A dialog box will prompt you to start capturing, click **OK** when you are ready to capture.
8. Depending on the options you selected in the Capture Video dialog box, you may need to press [ESC] or click the mouse to stop capturing.

# Video Editor

*Video Editor is where you combine all the elements from the other MediaStudio Pro programs to create a final video production. Here you can insert your files and then arrange them into their playing sequence, adding impressive transition effects, overlays and moving paths as you go.*

### ***In this tutorial you will learn about:***

- *Creating video projects ..... p.28*
- *Working with clips ..... p.30*
- *Adding special effects ..... p.33*

## The basics

---

Video Editor is a rich, professional editing tool. As such, it can take some time to truly master. We're going to try, however, to walk you through the complete process of creating a finished movie as quickly and professionally as possible.

### Creating your first video project

The critical first step to making movies is to create a project. A **project** is simply a small file that collects and controls the details of your movie. It is not a finished movie, but rather is the workspace where you build your movie. You can save changes to a project and make as many edits as you want without affecting your source material.

*To create a new project:*

1. Run Video Editor. Click **File: New**.
2. In the **New** dialog box, select an **Existing project template**. (You can also open this dialog box at any time by clicking the **New** button).
3. Click **OK**.

When you save your project, you will save it as a **\*.DVP** file, which can be opened only in MediaStudio Pro. Selecting a project type is a one time event, but it can be a complicated process that depends on what country you are in (PAL or NTSC) and your eventual final movie format (e.g. Streaming Internet Video or DV). If needed, click the **Create** button in the New dialog box (or **File: Project Settings**) to customize these settings and save them as a new project template. Please refer to your capture board's manual for specific advice and see pages 118 and 217 for additional information. You can then save this customized information (from any project) as a template by clicking **File: Save Project Template**.

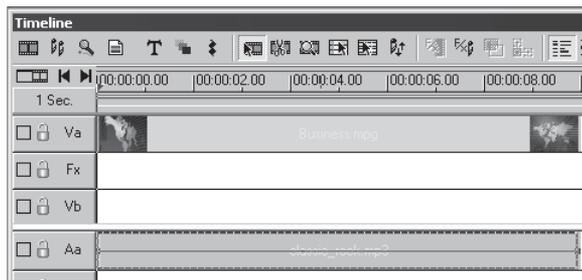
## Adding clips to your project

The **Timeline** is the heart of Video Editor. This is where you put video, audio, and other media files that will make up your movie. Daunting at first glance, it is amazingly easy to use. You can also see how long each video/audio segment is and how it relates to other parts of your project.

### *To insert files into the Timeline:*



1. Click the **Insert Video** button on the Timeline toolbar to open the Insert Video File dialog box.
2. Browse for a video file (clip). There are a number of sample files on the MediaStudio Pro CD or use a file you have previously captured.
3. Click **Open**.
4. Move your cursor to the beginning of the **Va** track and click.



*How your Timeline should look*

Try repeating the above procedure with another video clip, this time inserting it into the Vb track just below the first clip. Any material placed in lower tracks appears over, or on top of, clips placed in the higher tracks. Therefore, if you make the clip in Vb overlap Va, the material on the Va track will be partly or totally hidden. This is an important concept, because clips will often overlap to create overlays, titles, and transition effects.

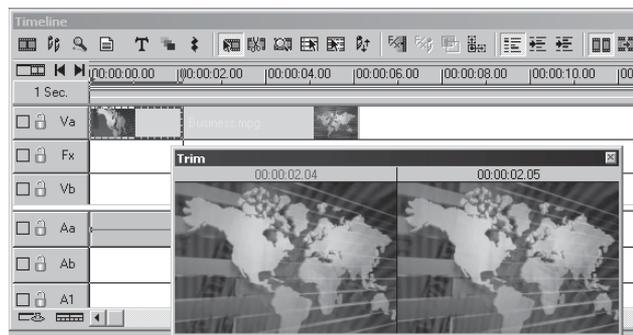
## Working with clips

Any media file in a project is referred to as a **clip**. Clips can be images, videos, sound files, titles or colors. Changing the order of clips or positioning clips on the Timeline is a natural and intuitive process: just drag-and-drop. The power of editing video on your computer comes in part from the ability to edit with frame accuracy. Although there are a number of techniques you can use, the following is one of the easiest.

### *To trim a video clip:*

1. Select a video clip on the **Timeline** by clicking on it.
2. Move the cursor to the very right edge of the clip. The cursor should change to a double arrow.
3. Click and drag the edge to the left to trim it.

This will shorten the clip in the project and on the Timeline, but will not alter the original source clip in any way. You can use the "-" and "+" keys to zoom in and out for more precise trimming. The Trim window (click **Window menu: Trim window**) is also an ideal way to accurately trim clips.



*Trimming a clip using the Trim window*

## Applying transition effects

**Transition effects** between scenes in a movie are a ubiquitous part of any video production. Whether you stick with a simple cross-fade or go for any one of the hundred or so fancier special effects, this is sure to be one of the more fun parts of editing.

### *To create a transition effect:*

1. Insert one clip into **Va** and another into **Vb**. Make sure the clip in Vb overlaps the one in Va by about a second.
2. Go to the **Transition Effect** folder in the Production Library. (Click **Window: Production Library** if it is not already visible.)
3. Browse for the transition effect thumbnail you want to use.
4. Drag the effect to the **Fx** track where the two clips overlap.
5. In the dialog box that opens, set up the details of your effect. In most cases, you may not have to change anything.
6. Click **OK**.



*Performing a Flow transition effect between two clips*



## Previewing your work

**Previews** are an important aspect of any video project as they allow you to see how your work is developing. The process of creating a movie or a preview is called **rendering** and, depending on the speed of your computer, this can take some time. MediaStudio Pro is a sophisticated piece of engineering, and by previewing often, you can actually speed up the rendering process. The details of the preview are determined by your **Project settings**, so it is important to make sure those are set up correctly.

Previewing takes place in the **Preview window**. You can use the controls there to play, rewind, fast-forward or step through your movie. It is often the case that you will only want to preview a small portion of your movie,

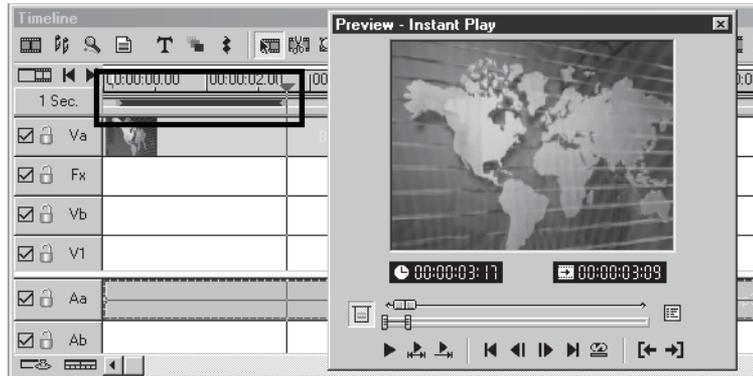
like the transition effect you just added on the previous page. MediaStudio Pro allows you to view your work without rendering with **Instant Playback**. When enabled, you can preview the contents of your Timeline in real-time through an external monitor or a DV camcorder, the same time it is playing on your computer monitor.

*To perform a partial preview:*

1. Click **Window: Preview Window** if the Preview window is not already open.
2. Click on the **Trim bar**. Then, drag the handles on either side of the **Trim bar** to set the duration of the preview.
3. Click the **Play the Preview Range** button.

*To perform Instant Playback:*

1. Select a clip on the **Timeline**.
2. Click the **Preview Window Menu** on the bottom right side of the preview window then select **Instant Play**.
3. Click **Play** to preview the clip, along with your modifications (i.e. applied video filters, transition effects, etc.) without rendering.



*Performing a partial preview. Notice that the preview range is represented as a blue line both within the Preview window and at the top of the Timeline.*

## Artistic and creative techniques

Beyond the everyday work discussed in the previous section, Video Editor also contains a host of remarkable tools you can use either to clean up your video or to create special creative touches.

### Applying a video filter

**Video filters** are effects which you can apply to clips in order to change their appearance or style. You can improve the color balance of a clip (or remove the color all together) or make the video look like a painting. Filters are applied over each frame in a clip. By specifying different start and end values, you can control the intensity and speed of a filter as it moves from the first frame to the last.

#### *To apply a video filter:*



1. Select the **Video Filter: 2D Mapping** gallery from the **Production Library** and drag-and-drop the **Ripple** filter onto a clip in the video track of the Timeline. The Ripple dialog box opens.
2. In the **Direction** group box, select the **From center** option and in the **Frequency** group box, select the **Medium** option.
3. Set the **Level** slider to 20. (This controls how much of a ripple effect appears at the first frame of the clip.)
4. Click the **End key frame** and select a level of 360. (This controls how much of a ripple effect appears at the last frame of the clip.)



**Note:** Click the **Lock** button so you can preview the clip with or without the effect applied to it.

5. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the filter.



Applying a Ripple filter to a video clip

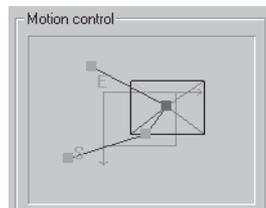
## Creating a moving path

During your video editing work, you will often make use of moving paths to enable video clips to move over another in the background clip. These clips can move in any number of different directions, changing shape and size, and even rotating in three dimensions.

### *To create a moving path:*



1. **Insert** a clip into one of the overlay tracks (V1-V99).
2. From the **Production Library**, select the **Moving Path: 2D Basic** gallery.
3. Drag-and-drop the **2D Basic** thumbnail onto a clip in a video overlay track of the Timeline. The 2D Basic Moving Path dialog box opens.
4. Adjust the path in the Motion control box.
5. Click the **Play** button to preview the path.
6. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the moving path.



*Drag the control points to the position where you want the moving clip to enter (S) and exit (E) the scene.*



*Preview the path animation by clicking the Play button.*



*Performing a 2D Basic moving path*

## Changing the audio level of an audio track

In Video Editor, you can change an audio track's audio level directly from the Timeline by adjusting its baseline. By changing the audio level of an audio clip from the Timeline, you can quickly perform fade in and out effects as well as temporarily adjust audio levels as you work.

### *To change the audio level of an audio clip:*

1. Select the audio clip whose audio level you want to change.
2. Click on the **baseline** of the clip. A control point is placed on the baseline at the cursor position.
3. Drag the **control point** upward to increase audio level; downward to decrease it. Place additional control points to determine where to start and end your changes. (To remove a control point, drag it off the top or bottom edge of the clip.)



**Note:** Hold down the [SHIFT] key while dragging a control point to view a precise volume indication as a percentage (%) and in decibels (dB).



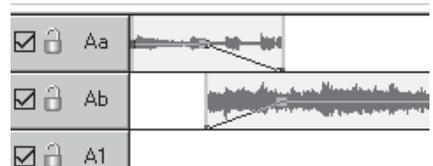
*Changing the audio level of an audio clip from the Timeline*

While you can manually fade clips in and out with the above method, you can automatically cross-fade the audio between two overlapping clips with just three clicks.

### *To cross-fade the audio:*



1. Click the **Audio Cross-fade** button.
2. Click on one of the two overlapping audio clips.
3. Click on the other clip.



*Two clips with audio cross-fade*

## Advanced techniques

Many effects in MediaStudio Pro can be precisely controlled and animated using **key frames**. You can set the degree of the effect from the start to the end frame of your clips. MediaStudio Pro then interpolates the effect between the key frames.

### Customizing a transition effect

You can control the transition from one clip to another by adjusting the key frame settings. This allows you to create effects such as wipe, peel, or split screen. Below is an example of how to create a split screen.

#### *To create a split screen effect:*

1. Insert a clip into **Va** and another into **Vb**.
2. From the **Transition Effect** gallery, click the **Slide** folder. Then, drag the **Side** thumbnail to the **Fx** track.
3. Set the **Transition degree** to 50% for the **Start** key frame.
4. Click the **End key frame** and set the Transition degree to the same value as the Start key frame. Since the key frame settings are the same, there is no animation interpolated between them.
5. Select **From Vb to Va**.
6. Click **OK** to apply the effect.



*Transition effect locked at 50% for the first and last key frames, creating a split screen effect*

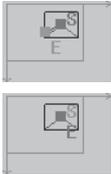
## Using Moving Paths

**Moving Paths** are invisible lines that an overlay clip can follow during an animation. In the simplest case, a clip can move from a starting key frame position to an ending one. More complex Moving paths can rotate and zoom clips in three dimensions.

### *To create a Picture-in-Picture:*



1. Place a clip for the background on the Va track, and the clip to appear as the foreground directly over it in an overlay track (V1).
2. From the Production Library, drag-and-drop the **Right Upper** thumbnail from the Picture in Picture folder onto the clip in the overlay track. The 2D Basic Moving Path dialog box opens.
3. Click the **Keep aspect ratio** option and enter a new width value of one-third the size of the original in the **Width** spin box for both the start and end key frames.
4. Drag the **Start control point** to the location where you want the overlay video to appear.
5. Click on the **End control point**. Manually enter the X and Y positions to match the Start control point. Since the key frame settings are the same, there is no animation interpolated between them.
6. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the path.



*Creating a video window using a moving path*

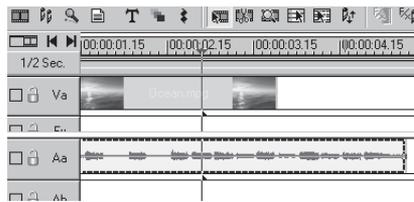
Moving paths can be applied to a video clip. This tool can also be used on image and title clips.

## Synchronizing audio to video

One essential aspect of audio editing is synchronizing actions and events with sound, such as matching subtitles to dialogue or the crackle of burning wood with a fire.

### *To synchronize audio to video:*

1. Click the **Display Mode** button to open the Timeline Display Mode dialog box. Select the **Show cue bar** options in both the Video and Audio group boxes and click **OK**.
2. Insert both the audio and video clips you want to synchronize into the Timeline.
3. Double-click on the audio clip to open it in the Source window. Play back the clip and when you hear the sound you wish to synchronize the video clip to, press [**F5**]. This places a cue on the cue bar above the waveform. Click the **Apply** button and then close the Source window.
4. Repeat this procedure to add a cue in the video clip.
5. Click the **Next Edit Point** button (or press [**PAGE DOWN**]) repeatedly until the Vertical preview line is lined up with the audio cue.
6. Move the video clip and align the video cue with the audio cue. Click **View: Ruler Unit** and change the time measurement to have a larger view of the Timeline for easier and more precise lining up of the video and audio cues.



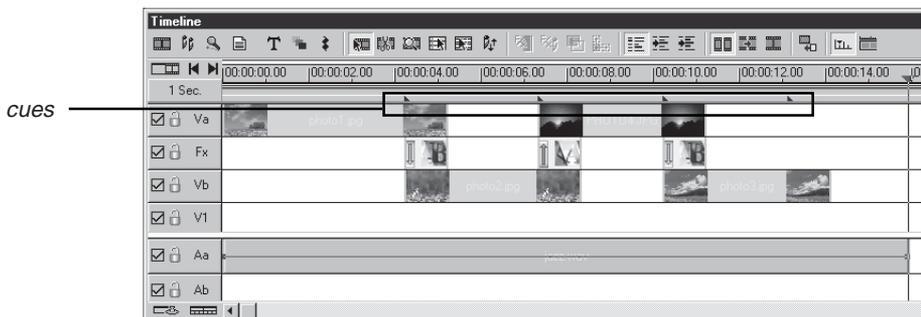
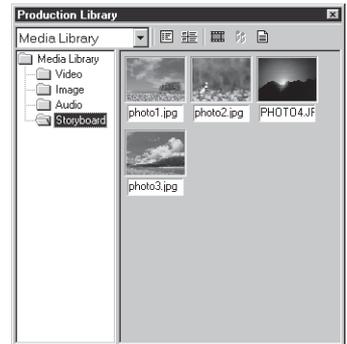
*Synchronizing audio to video*

## Auto Slideshow

MediaStudio Pro allows you to use your images in creating a slideshow. You can easily create a mini-presentation using your favorite pictures to appear in sync with your chosen background music.

*To automatically create a slideshow:*

1. Click **Import Image File** to import images into the **Production Library**.
2. Load your preferred audio track in the **Production Library** then drag-and-drop it into the timeline.
3. Click **Play** in the Preview window to listen to the music. Press **[F5]** to create cues. Doing this will indicate when you want a particular image to appear, in sync with your chosen audio track.
4. Click **Production Library: Media Library: Storyboard**. Click **Import Image File** to import the image files you want to use for your slideshow.
5. Right-click on an image in the **Storyboard** then select **Add A/B Roll**. The **Add to A/B Roll** dialog box appears.
6. In **Add to A/B Roll**, click **Overlap** then enter the overlap duration in seconds. Check the **Use default transition effect** option then click **Select** to invoke the **Transition Effect** dialog box.
7. Choose your transition effect then click **OK**.
8. Select **Synchronize with cues** in the **Add to A/B Roll** dialog box.
9. Click **OK**. The slideshow is automatically placed in the Timeline.



*Notice that the images are placed in sync with the cues that you have created.*

## Pixel aspect ratio management

A **pixel** (picture element) is one point in an image, composed of three dots: red, blue, and green. Monitors display an image by dividing it into thousands/ millions of pixels arranged in rows or columns. They are so close together, they seem to form a single shape. The image's display quality is then dependent on its resolution and the maximum number of pixels it can display.

The **aspect ratio** is the relative horizontal and vertical sizes of an object. If an object has an aspect ratio of **2:1** then it is wider than it is tall. This term also refers to an image's display resolution. For instance, an image with a **800x600** resolution has an aspect ratio of **4:3**. The standard aspect ratio for traditional television sets and computer monitors is **4:3** while the aspect ratio for high-definition, wide-screen digital systems is **16:9**.

### *To convert 16:9 aspect ratio videos to 4:3 aspect ratio:*

1. Open the file with the display aspect ratio of **16:9** in the Production Library then place it on the Timeline.
2. Click **File: Project Settings: Edit** to open the **Project Options** dialog box.
3. In the **Video Editor** tab, select **Perform non-square rendering**.
4. In the **General** tab, select **4:3** from the Display aspect ratio drop-down list then click **OK**.

**Note:** *MediaStudio Pro automatically detects the aspect ratio information of your video file if it is available.*

5. Click **OK** to close the **Project Settings** dialog box.
6. Select the clip in the Timeline then click **Clip: Media Source Options**.
7. In the dialog box, set the **Stretch mode** to **Keep aspect ratio**. Then Click **OK**.

**Note:** *To learn what the options inside the Stretch mode list mean, consult the online help.*

8. Preview your file in the Preview window to see how the converted video looks like then select **File: Create - Video** to create the video file.



The left image represents a video with the Stretch mode set to **Stretch** while the image on the right represents a video with the Stretch mode set to **Keep aspect ratio**. The video on the left was stretched to fit the screen causing the video to be distorted. The video on the right is using the correct aspect ratio and therefore it is not distorted.

## Recording back to a DV device from the Timeline

MediaStudio Pro allows you to record back to a DV device from the Timeline. This means that you can export the contents of your Timeline directly to a tape using the appropriate output device. In this tutorial, we'll use a DV camcorder.

### *To record back to a DV device from the Timeline:*

1. Click **File: Project Settings - Edit** to open the **Project Options** dialog box.
2. Select the type of compression you'd like to use from the **Compression** drop-down list in the **AVI** tab.
3. Specify the type of data track from the drop-down list under the **General** tab. If it's just a sound track, select the **Audio Only** option. If it's all video, select the **Video Only** option. If it's a combination of both, select the **Video and Audio** option.
4. Specify the frame type, the frame size, and the display aspect ratio (whether it be **4:3** or **16:9**) in the **General** tab.
5. Specify the TV standard and the number of overlay tracks in the **Video Editor** tab.

6. Set the options according to your preferences (e.g., set the audio format to DV Audio-NTSC/PAL in the Audio Format dropdown list in the **AVI** tab, etc.) then click **OK**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Project Settings** dialog box.
8. Connect your DV camcorder to your computer then turn it on.
9. Click **File: Select Device Control** to make sure that the proper device is connected. Select the appropriate DV device then click **OK**.
10. Click **File: Print to Tape - Timeline** then choose whether you'd like to print the entire project or the selected preview range.
11. Click **OK** to begin recording the contents of your Timeline to your tape. MediaStudio Pro will automatically render your project.
12. When the rendering process is finished, click **Record** on your DV camcorder. When the program goes through playback, the video will be exported to your DV device.

## Video Paint

*Video Paint is the program where you add all the effects of your animation and rotoscope individual frames of a video project. With it, you can create such effects as laser blasts, background mattes, and cloned actors and props.*

***In this tutorial you will learn about:***

- *Getting to know Video Paint* ..... p.44
- *Common techniques* ..... p.49
- *Advanced techniques* ..... p.52

## Getting to know Video Paint

Video Paint is a special effects animation program that allows you to paint (**rotoscope**) over the frames in a video. These animations can range from the simple, such as signing your name across an opening title sequence, to the complex, such as painting background sets and removing video noise.

### Creating your first project

In Video Paint, you can create a project from scratch, such as building background sets, or opening an existing video or image file to work on. When opening a video file, you can choose which frames in the sequence to open, rather than having to open several hundreds at one time. This ability to partially edit video can be a great time saver and allows you to perform edits quickly without draining system resources.

#### *To open a video file for editing:*



1. Click the **Open Video File** button on the Standard toolbar to open the Open Video File dialog box and select any video file from the Samples folder of your MediaStudio CD.
2. Click the **Duration** button to open the Duration dialog box.
3. Drag the **Preview slider** to locate the first frame of the sequence you want to open and click the **Mark-In** button. Now find the last frame and click the **Mark-Out** button. (At first, it is best to open just one or two seconds of video until you are more comfortable with how Video Paint works.) When happy with your selection, click **OK** to return to the Open Video File dialog box.
4. Click **Open** to open the video as a clip in Video Paint. Each frame of the clip appears in the Filmstrip panel, with the first frame displayed as an image in an edit window.



*Filmstrip panel*

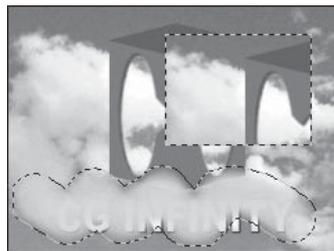
## Working with images in an edit window

The edit window displays the image of the currently selected frame in a Video Paint project. Once displayed, you can begin working on the image by selecting or painting over parts of it. At any given time, you will be working in one of two modes: **Composite** or **Paint Layer**. Which mode you choose depends on the type of work you are doing as well as the type of effect you want to create.

### *To work on an image in an edit window:*



1. Click the **Paint tool** on the Tool panel and start painting over an image in an edit window.
2. Switch to the **Shape Selection tool** and then drag over part of the image to select it. As you drag, a selection marquee appears outlining the area included in the selection. When finished, move the selection to a new location on the image. (This selection is now referred to as a floating selection and appears in the Paint Layer.)
3. To better see the Paint Layer, click the **No Source Video** button on the Standard toolbar. The image disappears from view, leaving only the background film color plus your edits.
4. Click the **Normal** button on the Standard toolbar to return the image into view and then click the **Paint Layer Mode** button on the Standard toolbar.
5. Create another selection area, making sure that it includes your edits, and then click the **Shrink Mode** button on the Attribute toolbar. The selection marquee changes to select only your edits, leaving the underlying image untouched.



*Creating a selection in Composite Mode (left) and Paint Layer Mode (right)*

## Customizing your brushes

Most of your work in Video Paint will be done with the paint, clone, and retouch tools. Each of these tools has various attributes which determine the way they work as well as how they apply paint. These attributes are specified in the **Brush panel** and a number of presets can also be selected from various galleries in the Production Library.

### *To create a felt-tip pen brush:*



1. Click the **Paint tool** on the Tool panel and then select the **Marker** brush from the Attribute toolbar. (If the brush panel does not automatically appear, click the **Show/Hide Brush Panel** button in the Attribute toolbar.)
2. In the Shape tab of the Brush panel, click the **Lock** button and then adjust either the vertical or horizontal slider tabs until the **Height** and **Width** spin boxes read 7. Once completed, set the **Brush Angle** to 0 and the **Soft Edge** to 34.
3. In the Options tab, set the **Application** method to **Pigment**, and then click the **Freehand** button. (Also set the **Transparency** and the **Wet Control** both to 0, if not already set.)
4. In the Color tab, right-click the color square and select a color from the available palette or from a color picker.
5. In the Advanced tab, set a **Spacing** of 5 and then click the **Fade Out** button and set the fade to 0.

The Marker brush has now been customized as a felt-tip pen.



6. Click the **Save Options** button on the Attribute toolbar and assign a name and Production Library folder to store the new brush. To use the brush again, or any other preset, find its corresponding thumbnail in the Production Library folder and then double-click it.



*Painting with a customized brush*

## Working over multiple frames

One of Video Paint's strengths is its ability to allow you to copy edits over multiple frames. For example, you can paint a line and then have that line appear in the same position and at the same size over all frames in the project, or have it progressively appear over each successive frame. The two operations you will use most often to perform these tasks are power duplication and macro recording.

### *To perform a power duplication:*

1. Paint over an image in an edit window.
2. Click **Edit: Power Duplicate** to open the Power Duplicate dialog box.
3. Select the **Paint Layer** option in the Source group box and the **Apply after current frame** option in the Apply group box. In the same group box, set the duration to cover the number of frames you want your edits to appear over. (The default is the maximum number of frames in your project.)
4. Click **OK** to apply your edits over the specified number of frames. (If the number of frames exceeds the value specified in the **Clear undo history for multiple frame actions** option in the Preferences dialog box, a message box appears indicating that if you continue, all undo history will be discarded to help improve performance.)



*Duplicating an edit over multiple frames*

### *To perform and apply a macro:*

1. Click the **Paint tool** on the Tool panel. Select the brush to paint with from the Attribute toolbar and then specify the brush's attributes in the Brush panel.

**Note:** You can only perform macro recording using the *Paint* and *Retouch* tools.



2. Click the **Recording** button on the Attribute toolbar. The edit window is centered in the workspace and a message box appears preparing for recording.



3. Click **OK** and start painting over an image. When finished, click the **Recording** button again to end the recording. The Add To Library dialog box opens prompting you to specify the folder and location to store your macro. (You can also give it a name and description.)
4. Click **OK**. The macro is saved to the proper location and the edits are removed from the edit window.

**Note:** To have the macro play back automatically, select the **Play macro after recording** option in the Preferences dialog box.



5. Click the **Production Library** button on the Standard toolbar and locate the folder you saved the macro to.
6. Double-click the thumbnail of the macro to apply it to the active edit window. The Macro Playing Options dialog box opens.
7. Specify the number of frames to apply the macro over in the **Number of frames** spin box.
8. Click the **Progressive** option in the **Playing method** group box to have the macro play back progressively over the specified number of frames.
9. Click **OK**. The macro plays back over the specified number of frames.



*Applying a macro progressively over multiple frames*

## Common techniques

Now that you have the essentials of Video Paint out of the way, let's take a look at some of the more common techniques used to add special effects to a video production. These techniques are the stepping stones to creating Hollywood-style illusions and effects.

### Applying a video filter

The video filters you can apply in Video Paint are the same as those in Video Editor. The difference lies in how you apply them and how to determine which frames within the project are affected.

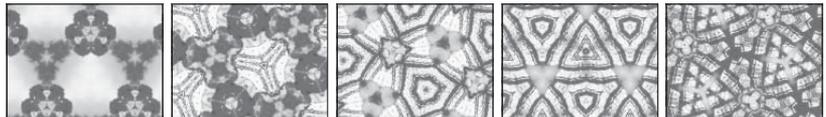
#### *To apply a video filter:*



1. Drag over the **Preview bar** in the Filmstrip panel to select the frames you want to apply the filter to. (If you want to apply the filter to the entire clip, make no selection.)
2. Select the **Video Filter: Camera Lens** gallery from the Production Library and drag-and-drop the **Kaleidoscope** filter onto the edit window containing the image you want to apply the effect to. The Kaleidoscope dialog box opens.
3. Drag the **View circle** on the **Original preview image** and place it where you want the effect to start.
4. Click on the **End key frame** and drag the **View circle** to where you want the effect to end. (You can have the view move over the image in a number of different directions by placing additional key frames and adjusting the view circle's position accordingly.)

**Note:** Click the **Lock** button to automatically update the Preview window when you change frames in the Original window.

5. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and place the filter.



Applying the Kaleidoscope video filter

## Cloning an image

Cloning is a great way to quickly duplicate an object or feature in one frame and replicate it over other frames in the sequence. For example, you could remove an annoying object by cloning over it with parts of the background, or create the impression of more stars in a night scene by cloning additional stars into the background.

### *To clone an image:*



1. Click the **Clone tool** on the Tool panel and select a brush from the Attribute toolbar. Then, specify the brush's attributes in the Brush panel. (In the Options tab of the Brush panel, click the **Absolute** button, if it is not already selected.)
2. Move to the image you want to clone. Then while holding down the **[SHIFT]** key, click over the object or feature you want to clone. A **crosshair pointer** appears indicating the area to be cloned.
3. Start painting where you want the object or feature to appear. As you paint, a brush head marquee appears around the crosshair pointer indicating the portions of the image being cloned.
4. Move to another area of the image and click again to clone the same object or feature. Keep repeating this until you have cloned as many objects or features as you want. When finished, click **Edit: Power Duplicate** to apply the exact same edits over other frames in the project.



*Cloning an image to remove part of the background*

## Creating a video matte

**Mattes** are a useful part of video editing and are used primarily with the overlay and video filter effects of Video Editor. In Video Paint, you can create single image mattes or video mattes. **Image mattes** require you to simply paint over one frame in an edit window and then save it as an image file or as a single frame in a Video Paint file. **Video mattes** are created in the same way, except that you can paint over multiple frames and then save your edits as a video file or a Video Paint file.

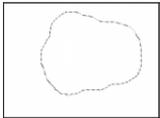
### *To create a video matte:*



1. Click the **New** button on the Standard toolbar to open the New dialog box.
2. Set the duration, frame rate and frame size to that of the video you want to apply the matte to and click **OK**. The dialog box closes and a new project is created. (Use the default settings if you do not yet have a Video Editor project to work with.)



3. Click the **Lasso tool** on the Tool panel and then click the **Anti-alias** button on the Attribute toolbar.



4. Create a selection area with the size you want for your matte, and then right-click and choose the **Soft Edge** command from the pop-up menu. In the dialog box that appears, enter a value of 15 for the soft edge and click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the selection changes to incorporate the soft edge.

When you apply the matte in Video Editor, the soft edge is treated as a Grayscale mask, with lighter areas appearing more transparent and darker areas less transparent.

5. Click **Edit: Fill** and select black as the fill color and click **OK**. The fill is applied to the selection area. You can now copy and paste the fill on each successive frame, changing its position slightly to create a moving matte.



*Creating a video matte*

## Advanced techniques

**Advanced techniques** build on the methods and procedures you learned earlier in the lesson. With them, you can create such effects as translucent ghosts, wild virtual background sets, and disappearing people.

### Performing an erase effect

In Video Paint, you can use the painting tools to erase as well as apply paint. **Erasing paint** is useful if you want to remove excess paint from an image or to create certain effects, such as removing a solid fill color to reveal an underlying video.

#### *To perform an erase effect:*

1. Select the frame from where you want the effect to begin and then click **Edit: Fill** to open the Fill dialog box.
2. Select the color you want to use as the fill from the **Color** group box and enter 15 in the **Transparency** spin box.
3. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the fill. (Once applied, duplicate, by using power duplicate, the fill over the number of frames you want to include in the effect.)
4. Click the **Paint tool** on the Tool panel and then select the type of brush you want to use from the Attribute toolbar.
5. Specify the various attributes of the brush in the Brush panel and then, in the **General Shape** tab, click the **Erase** button.

**Note:** *If you are using a WACOM® UltraPen, you can erase by simply turning the pen upside down when you draw.*

6. Start painting on the image. As you paint, the fill is removed revealing the underlying image. (If you want the effect to appear progressively on each frame, perform a macro recording.)



*Performing an erase effect*



## Performing an advanced power duplication

**Power duplication** is not just useful for copying the paint layer or an image across hundreds of frames. You can also create special effects. With the **Transparency feature** of Power Duplication, you can paste an image over an entire video and give it the appearance of fading in or fading out. This is useful for creating “ghosts” and other similar effects.

### *To perform an advanced duplication:*

1. Select the edit window which contains the edits you want to duplicate and then click **Edit: Power Duplicate** to open the Power Duplicate dialog box.
2. Select the **Paint Layer** option in the **Source** group box.
3. Select the **After current frame** option in the **Apply** group box. In the **Duration** spin box, enter the number of frames on which the edits will appear. (The default number represents all frames in the project.)
4. Move to the **Start** tab and enter a value of 50 in the **Transparency** spin box, then click the **End** tab and enter the same transparency. Enter a value of 99 in the **X** spin box to move the edits horizontally. (To move the edits vertically, change the **Y** value.)
5. Click **OK** to apply the duplication.



*Performing an advanced duplication*

## Creating background sets

While Video Paint allows you to paint over and enhance the frames of a video, you can also use it to create background sets. These background sets are then placed into Video Editor as the underlying clip for any blue screen clips you may have. You can create background sets by painting over an original video or by using some of the animation filters available in Video Paint.

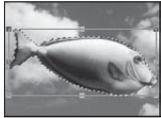
### *To create an animated background set [1]:*

1. Create a new project and then select half of the frames by dragging over the **Preview bar** in the Filmstrip panel.
2. Drag-and-drop the **Animation Texture** thumbnail from the **Video Filter: Special** folder in the Production Library to the edit window of your new project. The Animation Texture dialog box opens displaying various options for controlling the display and movement of a texture.
 
3. Select **thumbnail 11** from the Pattern group box and then click on the **End key frame** in the Key frame controller to jump to the last frame in the sequence. (Click the **Lock** button so that the Preview image changes.)
 
4. Select **thumbnail 11** from the Pattern group box again and then click the **Palette ramp image** to open the Palette Ramp Editor dialog box. Select the **CMYK thumbnail** and click **OK** to return to the Animation Texture dialog box.
 
5. Enter a value of -1.5 in the **Amplitude** slider and click **OK** to apply the filter. (You can experiment with each of the other sliders to see how they affect the texture.) Once applied, repeat the procedure, but this time, select the remaining frames in the sequence and reverse the order of the texture so that it appears to be repeating itself.

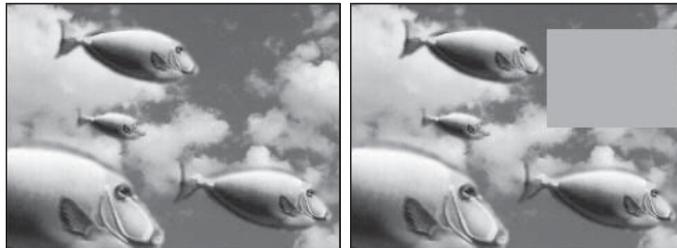


*Creating an animated texture background*

*To create a background set [2]:*



1. Click the **Open** button on the Standard toolbar and select the file FISH.TIF from the SAMPLES\TUTORIAL folder of the MediaStudio Pro CD. Once it is displayed in the workspace, open the SKY.TIF file from the same location.
2. Click the **Magic Wand tool** and in the **Similarity** spin box on the Attribute toolbar, enter in a value of 25.
3. Select the edit window containing the image of the fish, and then drag over the fish to create a selection, starting from the tail and moving toward the head. If you have more sea than fish selected, try again, or decrease the **Similarity range**.
4. Switch to the **Lasso tool** and, holding down the [s] key, draw around the areas of the sea which are included in the selection. Double-clicking then deselects these areas. Keep doing this until all areas of the sea are no longer part of the selection. (If you need to add areas of the sea to the selection area, hold down the [A] key.) When finished, copy and paste the fish into the edit window containing the image of the sky.
5. Switch to the **Transformation tool** and click the **Resize** button on the Attribute toolbar. A bounding box appears around the fish. Holding down the [SHIFT] key, drag one of the handles of the bounding box and resize the fish so that it appears larger.
6. Switch to the **Shape Selection tool** and position the fish to the bottom left of the edit window. Now, paste in another three fish and resize them, each one slightly smaller than the other, and position them over the image in the edit window. You can also create a video window for later use as an overlay clip in Video Editor by creating a selection area and filling it with a solid color.



*Creating a background set (left) with video window (right)*

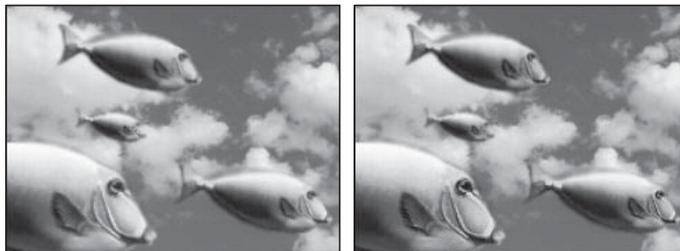
## Retouching images

The **Retouch tool** is a powerful tool that allows you to ‘touch-up’ areas of an image to improve its appearance or to create a particular effect. For example, you could enhance the color of someone's eye, blur jagged edges an object may have, or adjust the highlights and midtones of an image to improve its color.

### *To retouch an image:*



1. Click the **Open** button on the Standard toolbar and select the **BACKGRD.TIF** file from the **SAMPLES\TUTORIAL** folder of the MediaStudio Pro CD.
2. Click the **Retouch tool** and select the **Blur** brush from the Attribute toolbar.
3. In the **Shape** tab of the Brush panel, specify a small brush size with no soft edge, and in the **Options** tab set the blur value to one.
4. Zoom in on the edit window containing the background image and begin painting over the edges of the largest fish. As you paint, notice how the jagged edges are blended into the background. Once finished, move to the other fish and retouch them where necessary.
5. Switch to the **Saturation** brush and in the Options tab of the Brush panel, set the saturation value at 60.
6. Drag over the head of the largest fish to increase the saturation of the colors and make them more vivid. Once you're done, move on to the others and adjust them accordingly.



*The background image (left) enhanced with the Retouch tool (right)*

## Advanced macros: Creating a laser beam effect

One of the coolest effects you can create in Video Paint is the laser beam effect. Using the built-in macro recording capabilities, you can paint the laser beam, record it, and then apply it progressively across an entire range of frames. Once you've recorded a macro, you can save it to the Production Library for later use.

### *To create a laser beam effect:*

1. Open the video you want to apply the laser beam effect to. In the Filmstrip panel, click the frame where you want to start creating the laser beam.
2. Select the **Paint tool** you want to use to create the laser beam. In the **Options** tab of the Brush panel, click the **Straight Line** button. Set the laser's color in the **Color** tab and the brush's height and width in the **Shape** tab.
3. Click the **Recording** button and then click **OK**. The edit window is centered in the workspace.
4. In the edit window, draw the laser beam from the starting reference point to the ending reference point.
5. Click the **Recording** button again to stop recording. The Add To Library dialog box appears. Enter the name and annotation for your laser beam macro, select the **Custom** folder, and click **OK**.
6. In the Production Library, select the **Macro: Custom** folder and find your new macro. Drag-and-drop it into the edit window. The Macro Playing Options dialog box opens.
7. Enter the number of frames you want to apply the macro to. Select the **Progressive Playing method** and click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the macro is applied to the clip.



*An example of a laser beam effect*

## Advanced cloning: Disappearing act

You can combine the Cloning (see page 50), Power Duplicating (see page 53), and the Macro Recording (see page 57) capabilities of Video Paint to create the effect of a person disappearing. Before you try this though, you have to know information about blue screens (see page 192). You also need a suitable background for the video to play against. For best results, you should probably use a still image for the background.



### *To create a disappearing act:*

1. In Video Editor, overlay your blue screen video on top of a background image and render the clip as a new video file with no compression.
2. In Video Paint, click the **Open Video File** button on the Standard toolbar to open the clip you just created (video window). Then, open the original background in a second edit window (background window).
3. Click the **Clone tool** on the Tool panel. In the **Options** tab of the Brush Panel, click the **Frame** button and with the [SHIFT] key, click anywhere on the background window.
4. In the video window, paint over the person you want to disappear.
5. Next, duplicate, by using power duplicate, the paint layer of the video window you just cloned across every frame of the video.
6. Click the **Painting tool** on the Tool panel and select **Paint Brush**.
7. In the **Shape** tab of the Brush panel, click the **Eraser mode** button and then the **Recording** button.
8. When the **Macro Recording** begins, erase the paint layer you just cloned in.
9. Click the **Recording** button again and save the macro to the **Macro: Custom** folder.
10. To apply the macro to your video, drag-and-drop its thumbnail from the Production Library into the edit window and define its application properties in the Macro Playing Options dialog box.



*An example of a disappearing act*

## CG Infinity

*CG Infinity is where you create dazzling title sequences and exciting graphics animation. With CG Infinity's tools, you can send text and objects flying into the third dimension. This tutorial is designed to give you everything you need to get started at creating your own CG sequences.*

***In this tutorial you will learn about:***

- *Common techniques ..... p.60*
- *Advanced techniques ..... p.66*

## Common techniques

---

This section includes some of the more common techniques you will perform using CG Infinity. Many of these lessons assume you are starting with a new edit window in CG Infinity.

### Drawing regular shapes

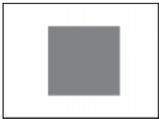
The quickest way to get started in CG Infinity is to begin creating simple shapes. While simple in design, you can easily create impressive results by combining shapes and changing their styles to produce different colors and effects.

#### *To draw a logo using regular shapes:*



1. Click the **Shape tool** and select or deselect the following buttons on the Attribute toolbar:

- Rectangle (select)
- Draw From Center (deselect)
- Equal Sides (deselect)



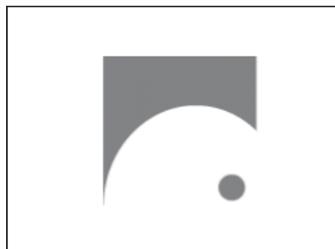
2. In Preview mode, draw a rectangular path within the frame of the edit window and in the Object Style Panel, set the fill color to blue with no line color or shadow.

3. Switch to the **Ellipse** option on the Attribute toolbar and create a long elliptical path.



4. Using the **Object tool**, position the new path so that its middle starts at the bottom left corner of the rectangular path and, if necessary, resize it so that it is wide enough to go over to the right side of the rectangular path. (Set the fill color to white with no line color or shadow.)

5. Switch back to the **Ellipse tool** and click the 1:1 button on the Attribute toolbar and create a small circle path at the lower right corner of the rectangular path.



*Creating a logo using regular shapes*

## Creating and distorting text objects

One of the more powerful aspects of CG Infinity is its ability to create impressive titles for use as images or in video projects. Once a title is created, you can distort it in a variety of ways and apply various colors and gradients to give it a more polished look and feel.

### *To create and distort a text object:*



1. Select the **Text tool** and click anywhere in the edit window.
2. Enter the text of your title. (Add a new line by pressing the [ENTER] key.) To change the text alignment, font or any other characteristics, select the text and then choose the appropriate options from the Attribute toolbar.



3. Switch to the **Envelope tool**. A red border appears around the text as well as nodes on the corners and edges of the border.
4. Drag the nodes to adjust the envelope. Each time you select a node, two control handles appear which you can adjust independently. Keep adjusting the nodes and handles until you are happy with the result. If you are not sure about the type of distortion you want to create, select a preset from the **Envelope** gallery in the Production Library and drop it onto the text. The text automatically distorts itself to the path of the envelope.



*Creating and distorting a text object*

## Applying gradients to your objects

In CG Infinity, you can apply gradients to any fill or line color, producing a variety of lighting and shading effects. These gradients are created in the Magic Gradient dialog box, which is found in many of the MediaStudio Pro programs, and are extremely versatile.

*To apply a gradient to an object:*



1. Select the object or objects you wish to apply the gradient to and click the **Gradient** button in the Color tab of the Object Style panel.



2. Click the **Gradient** square to open the Magic Gradient dialog box.



3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Palette ramp** group box to open the Palette Ramp Editor dialog box and select the **CD** thumbnail and then click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the color ring in the Magic Gradient dialog box changes to reflect the new palette.



4. Drag on the **Hue shift** to change the hue of the color ring and then click the **eighth** button in the **Mode** group box to select the style of the gradient. (When you click a button, its number is displayed next to the title of the group box.)



5. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the gradient.



*Applying a gradient to an object*

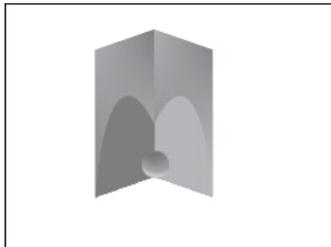
## Manipulating objects

CG Infinity allows you to alter an object's intrinsic shape to make it more dynamic. It also gives you more flexibility to make your titles and graphic objects really stand out. Both text objects and graphic objects can be warped and changed, but if you change a text object too much, you may not be able to edit the text later.



*To manipulate objects:*

1. Open the file LOGO1.UCG file from SAMPLES/TUTORIAL folder on the MediaStudio Pro CD.
2. Click the **Object tool** and select the rectangular object. Then click the **Perspective** button on the Attribute toolbar.
3. Drag the top right-hand side node upwards to about one-third of the original size, towards the direction of the left-hand node to change the object's perspective.
4. Duplicate the object and then click the **Resize** button on the Attribute toolbar and drag the left side of the object to the right, flipping it. (To make sure it is the same size as the original, enter its width in the **Width** spin box on the Attribute toolbar.)
5. Switch to the **Shape tool** and create a rectangular shape the size of the original object, filling it with a solid dark blue color. Switch back to the **Object tool** and click the **Slant** button on the Attribute toolbar and then drag upward on one of the right side nodes to match the angle of the object with the original.
6. Click the **Send to Back** button on the Standard toolbar to place the object behind the others. Repeat step 5 on the left side node for the mirrored object, except fill it with a solid light blue color.
7. Finish the effect by positioning the ball object in the center of the other objects.

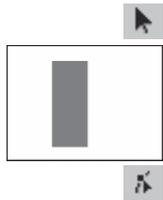


*Manipulating objects*

## Creating a corporate logo

CG Infinity is ideal for creating corporate logos, which you can use in your video projects or for other purposes, such as presentations, CD-ROMs, and Web pages. In this lesson, we will create a ‘head’ logo for a fictional company called “Interface Designs.”

### *To create a corporate logo:*



1. Select the **Shape tool** and create a rectangular shape with a red fill color and no line color or shadow.
2. Switch to the **Adjust tool** and select the **Add Node** button on the Attribute toolbar and click in the center of the **left side path segment** as well as the center of the **bottom path segment** to place additional nodes.



3. Click the **Remove Node** button on the Attribute toolbar and click on the bottom left corner node. The node is removed from the path and the object changes shape.



4. Click **Edit: Duplicate** to make a copy of the current object, giving it a yellow fill color with no line color. Then switch to the **Object tool** and drag the left side over to the right, flipping the object. (To get the same width, enter its original value in the **Width** spin box.) When finished, place both objects side by side.



5. Add four more rectangular objects (for the cap, left eye, left nose, and left mouth). Give each a yellow fill color (no line color) and then place accordingly on the background object. (For the nose object, remove the top right corner node to create the appropriate angle as in step 3.)



6. Duplicate each of the objects (except the cap line) and drag them to the other side of the face, changing their fill color to red. (For the nose object, you will have to flip it as in step 4.)



7. Create another rectangular object for the cap. Then switch to the **Object tool** and click the **Slant** button on the Attribute toolbar to angle the cap off to the side and then add text with a shadow to finish off the project.



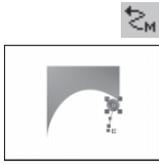
## Animating objects

A central component to working with objects is being able to animate them. You do this with the **Moving Path tool** and you can animate objects linearly or have them follow any path you set.

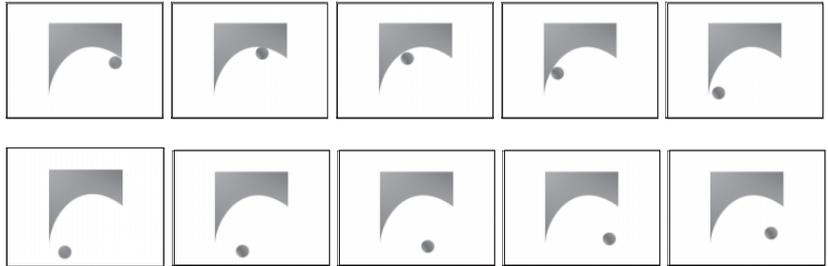


*To animate objects:*

1. Select the object you want to animate and then position it where you want to start its movement.
2. Select the **Moving Path tool**. **Start** and **End** control points appear at the center of the object. Then, drag on the center of the object. As you drag, the **End control point** follows the path of your mouse. Releasing your mouse then creates the moving path.
3. Click the **Play** button on the Time Control panel to see how your animation looks.



If you want to change the position of the control points, click the **Adjust Moving Path** button on the Attribute toolbar and click on the point concerned. (You may need to click twice before moving a control point depending on the type of path created.) To create a curved path, click the **Curve Segment** button on the Attribute toolbar and then drag on a control point. (For greater control, you may need to add more nodes by clicking on the path with the **Add Node** option selected from the Attribute toolbar.)



*Animating an object*

## Advanced techniques

---

After you have mastered the basics of CG Infinity, you are ready to move on to the more advanced methods and techniques. Using the procedures in this section will give you a deeper understanding of how CG Infinity works and allow you to expand and enhance your work even more.

### Creating mattes

In CG Infinity, you can create two types of mattes: **solid color** and **gradient**. **Solid color mattes** are the easiest and simply require you to draw a shape and then fill the shape with a different color from the background. **Gradient mattes** require a little more work.

#### *To create a gradient matte:*

1. Select the tool you wish to create the path with and draw the shape of the matte in the edit window.



2. Select the **Gradient Transparency** button in the **General** tab of the Object Style panel and click on the **Gradient** square to open the Gradient Transparency dialog box.



3. Move the **Start** and **End** sliders to determine the number of grays. To change the direction of the gradient, drag on the sample preview. The angle you drag at determines the angle of the gradient. (White is fully transparent, black is fully opaque and grays are in between.)
4. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the gradient. (The default fill color should be set to black.)

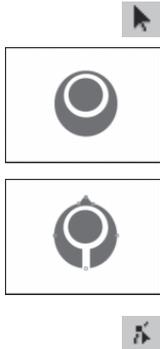


*Grayscale gradient matte*

## Creating a corporate logo (advanced)

This is an advanced technique for creating a complex corporate logo. It is slightly more complicated than the technique presented on page 64. If you have not looked at the previous tutorial on making a corporate logo, then do that first, and then return to this lesson.

*To create a more complex corporate logo:*



1. Select the **Shape tool** and create a circular path in the center of the edit window (fill with red and no line color or shadow). Duplicate the object and resize it so that it is slightly larger than the original, filling this object with white. Repeat the process, this time making a circle which is approximately twice the size of the original and placing it at the back, with the bottom lower than the other two.

2. Create a rectangular object that is the same color as the smaller circle and place it over the bottom of the large circle, creating a break.

3. Switch to the **Adjust tool** and add two nodes to the left and right of the top node on the larger circle. Click the **Adjust Path** button on the Attribute toolbar and drag the center node upward.

4. Click the **Cusp node** button on the Attribute toolbar and drag the left control handle downward to increase the angle of the curve. When happy with the angle, do the same to the right control handle.

5. Switch to the **Object tool** and select the **Gradient** button for the Fill color in the Object Style panel. Click on the **Gradient** square to open the Magic Gradient dialog box.



6. Click the **Edit** button and select the **CD** thumbnail and change the hue value to 314. Click **Add** to place the new style as a new thumbnail in the Palette Ramp dialog box.

7. Click **OK** and click the **fifteenth** button in the **Mode** group box to select the style of the gradient. Move to the **Sample window** and drag on the sample image to reposition the focus to the left of the window. Once finished, click **OK** to close the dialog box.



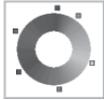
8. Duplicate the object, and set it to have a line color with no fill color. (Make the line color different from the others for better contrast.) Once changed, resize the object slightly so that it fits just inside the

outline of the larger circle. (For this, it is best to use the **Width** and **Height** spin boxes on the Attribute toolbar with the **Keep Aspect Ratio** button pressed.)



9. Change the **Line color** to a Gradient and select the palette ramp thumbnail you previously added.

10. Repeat steps 5 through 9 for the inner circle.



11. To finish, add text and place it in the center circle. Give it the same gradient as the others, except this time in the Palette Ramp Editor dialog box, remove several of the color nodes that appear around the color circle in the Palette ramp sample window. (Do this by right-clicking over a node and selecting **Delete**.) Remove the darker ones first and then drag the remaining nodes so that the darker colors appear to the left of the circle and the lighter ones to the right. When finished, click **OK** and then select the **fifteenth** button in the **Mode** group box and drag on the image in the sample window to have the light source appear from the top right. Also, change the **slope** value to 200 degrees in the bottom Slope dial. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the fill.

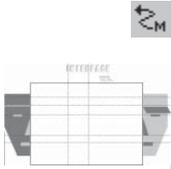


*Creating a more complex corporate logo*

## Controlling the timing of multiple objects

Sometimes you'll want to create a title or animation clip that contains multiple objects moving independently of each other. To accomplish this, you can take advantage of the Motion Tool and the Time Control panel.

1. Open the LOGO2.UCG file from SAMPLES/TUTORIAL folder on the MediaStudio Pro CD.



2. Select the **Moving Path tool** and click the object on the left side, then drag the **End control point** to the center of the screen. (Show your **Rulers** and **Guides** to use guidelines to help you align the object.)

**Note:** All moving path actions must be done with the Moving Path tool selected. Do not switch tools during this procedure.

3. Move the **Time control slider** to the last frame and click the **Add Key frame control point** button.
4. Drag the **key frame** back to the 1 second mark. This makes the object finish its movement at the 1 second mark.
5. Repeat the same procedure with the object on the right side, dragging the **End control point** so that the two sides of the face touch.
6. Click the white line on the left and drag its **End control point** to the center of the edit window.
7. Move the slider to the 1 second mark and add a **key frame**. (This is the time you want the object to commence its movement.) Place your pointer on the object in the edit window and drag it back so that it is in the same place as the **Start point**. Move the slider to the last frame in the Time Control panel and add a **key frame** and then move this **key frame** back to the 2 second mark. (This is where the object ends its movement.)
8. Repeat the same technique for the text at the top of the frame, starting the movement at the 2 second mark and ending at the 3 second mark.



Controlling the timing of multiple objects

## Performing fades and distortions over time

The Motion tool and Time Control panel allow you to control an object's transparency and size over time. This lets you create text or objects that come flying in from the distance or fading in out of nothing.

### *To perform a fade and distortion over time:*

1. Open the LOGO3.UCG file from SAMPLES/TUTORIAL folder on the MediaStudio Pro CD.



2. Select the **main logo** and click the **Moving Path tool**. (It is best to do these procedures in **Wireframe mode** to speed up the editing process.)

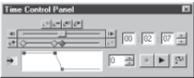


**Note:** All moving path actions must be done with the Moving Path tool selected. Do not switch tools during this procedure.

3. Select the **Start key frame** in the Time Control panel and, clicking the **Resize** button on the Attribute toolbar, enter 580 in the **Width** spin box. (Click the **Keep Aspect Ratio** button to ensure the height changes proportionally.) After resizing, drag on the object to position the letter CG in the middle of the edit window frame.



4. Go to the last frame and click the **Add Key frame** button and then drag the key frame back to the 2 second mark.
5. Click the **Resize** button on the Attribute toolbar and enter 68 in the **Width** spin box. (Click the **Keep Aspect Ratio** button to ensure the height changes proportionally.) After resizing, position the object in the center of the edit window frame.



6. Click on the letter **A** and then click on the **Start key frame** in the Time Control panel.
7. Drag the **transparency control point** to the top of the transparency graph and then move the slider to the 2 second mark and add another key frame. Then, at 7 frame mark, add another key frame. For this key frame, set the **transparency** to 0% by dragging the transparency point to the bottom of the transparency graph.
8. Repeat the same process for the title text, except start the fade in at the 3 second mark, finish at the 4 second mark.
9. Select the text at the bottom of the logo and set it to appear at the 00:04:07 (without a fade effect). To do this, place a key frame at the 00:04:06 mark, and then another at the 00:04:07 mark and then change the transparency accordingly.



*Performing a fade and distortion over time*

# Video Capture



# Getting started

*Video Capture is the program where many of your video creations begin. Here you can view and capture 'live' video from a variety of different sources such as VCRs, TVs, DVDs or DV camcorders. Once captured, you can then play back those files or take them into Video Editor to start constructing your own video project.*

### ***In this chapter you will learn about:***

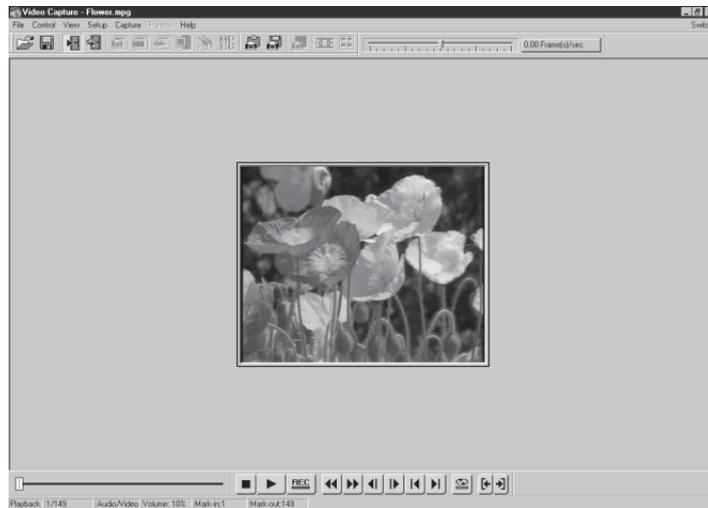
- *Understanding the basics ..... p.74*
- *Preparing video for display ..... p.76*
- *Improving your video signal ..... p.79*
- *Customizing Video Capture ..... p.83*

## Understanding the basics

---

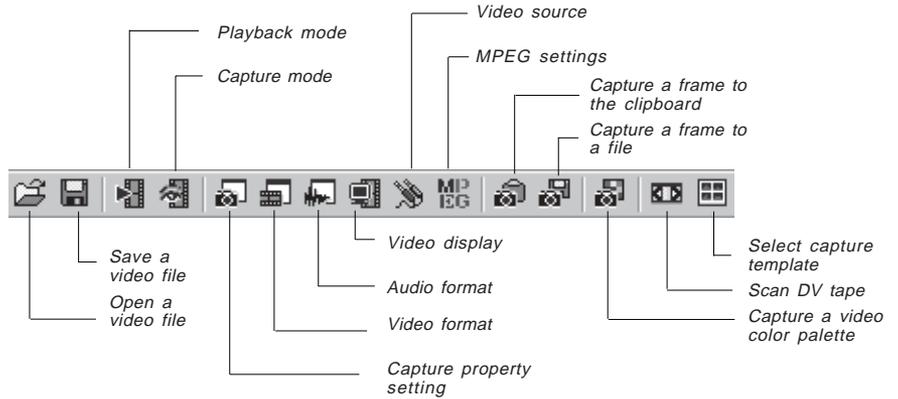
Video Capture is designed to work in conjunction with an installed video source. This can be an external video device connected to your PC using an analog capture board, digital video interface card (e.g. IEEE-1394) or USB port. If you do not have a video source installed, you can still use Video Capture to play back existing video files.

Once you have your video source connected and playing, the video automatically appears in the Video Capture video window. Otherwise, the video window displays a color bar test pattern instead.

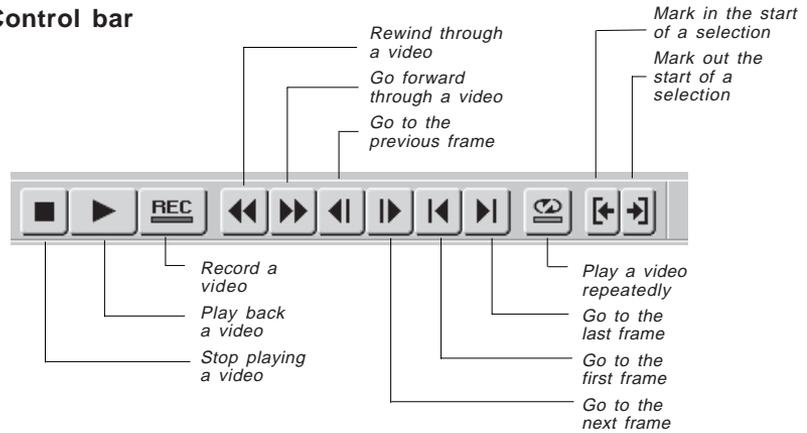


*Video Capture's program window*

**Standard toolbar**



**Control bar**



**Video window**



**Note:** Depending on the video source connection used, some commands and buttons in Video Capture may not be applicable and may be grayed out.

## Preparing video for display

---

The first step on your way to displaying video is getting your video source to communicate with your PC. This involves connecting the source to the PC via analog capture board, digital video interface card, or USB port, and adjusting Video Capture so that it is ‘tuned in’ using the correct settings. The following sections describe how to do this, along with ways to improve video display and audio characteristics.

### Capture Plug and Play

Video Capture automatically detects any Plug and Play video devices (such as a DV camcorder via IEEE-1394 FireWire capture card or a USB PC camera) connected to the computer. The moment the device is switched on, Video Capture prompts a message asking if you want to use the new device.



### Connecting to an analog video source

If your video capture board is correctly installed, running pictures should immediately appear in the video window of Video Capture. If this does not happen, then you need to tune Video Capture to your video source. To do this, click **Setup: Video Source**. The Video Source dialog box opens with various options that allow you to connect to a video channel and specify the type of video source you have, as well as the television standard it operates on (these options may differ depending on your video capture board). In general, you should at least be able to select your video source, such as Composite or S-video and a broadcast signal, such as NTSC, PAL or SECAM.

**Note:** *If you are unsure about any of these options, or how they work, refer to your video capture board's instruction manual.*



## Previewing video from your video source

Preview your video in your video device before capturing them into your PC. To preview the video in your camcorder, switch to **Capture** mode. You can do this by clicking the Capture icon on the Standard toolbar or selecting **View: Capture**.

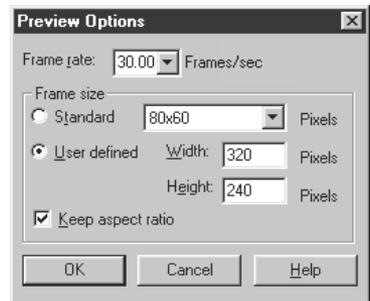
For DV devices connected to the PC via an IEEE-1394 FireWire card, make sure that you set the proper **Device Control** and **Capture Plug-in** for you to be able to control your DV device using the Control bar and for you to also display the video in your DV camcorder on your monitor.

To view existing or captured video, simply switch to **Playback** mode by clicking the Playback icon on the Standard toolbar or selecting **View: Playback**.

**Note:** If you are only viewing video (not necessarily capturing), you may want to hide certain features, such as the toolbars, for a cleaner look and feel. To hide these, or show them once hidden, select the appropriate option in the **Toolbars & Panels** dialog box, opened by clicking **View: Toolbars & Panels** or by right-clicking on any displayed toolbar or panel.

## Setting preview options

When previewing video in Capture mode, Video Capture allows you to control the frame rate and frame size with the Preview Options dialog box (opened by clicking **View: Preview Options**). When changing the frame size, keep in mind the aspect ratio (16:9 or 4:3) of the video source. The aspect ratio is important so that the video can be displayed without any distortion.



Preview Options dialog box

### ***Resizing the program window***

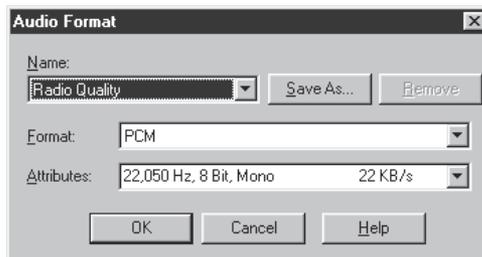
Whenever you change the frame size in Video Capture, the video window resizes itself accordingly. To resize the program window for optimum viewing, drag its borders to widen or lengthen it, or maximize to take full advantage of your monitor's screen size. You can also click **View: Center** to resize the program window to fit snugly around the video window or center it on your screen.

### **Defining audio input when capturing analog video**

If your video source has a soundtrack, it too can be captured with the video. Once captured, it will play back in synchronization with the video. Exactly how sound is captured depends on a combination of factors, namely: the video source, the video capture board, and the sound card installed in your computer. In general, the video capture board handles the capturing of video frames while your sound card captures the audio portion. Video Capture then merges this information into the resulting video file.

#### ***To define audio input:***

1. Click the **Audio Format** button on the Standard toolbar or **Setup: Audio Format** to open the Audio Format dialog box. (This command is disabled when your PC has no sound card and your video capture board does not support audio.)



*Audio Format dialog box*

2. In the **Name** combo box, select an option for the audio data. The attributes of the option are displayed in the **Attributes** combo box. (You can also select a new combination of audio attributes directly from this combo box.)

If you define new attributes and wish to save them for later use, click the **Save As** button. The Save As dialog box opens allowing you to assign a name to the attributes. Clicking **OK** saves the attributes and the specified name appears in the **Name** combo box.

3. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the audio attributes are now set for your next capture.

**Note:** Any sound you hear over your speakers is not affected by the selections made with this command. To hear the changes, you need to have a sound mixer utility that provides a monitor function. If you have a mixer, you can mix your own soundtrack by combining the output from MIDI, WAVE, CD-ROM, and other external sources (such as your VCR).

## Improving video signal when capturing analog video

---

The job of your video capture board is to convert an incoming analog video signal into a digitized format that your computer can read. Once your video is displayed, you may find that the colors do not appear as vibrant or are darker than you expected. Such examples indicate that your video capture board and the video source are not properly adjusted or calibrated. By having a well calibrated display, you can capture and see video (particularly color) as it was originally recorded.

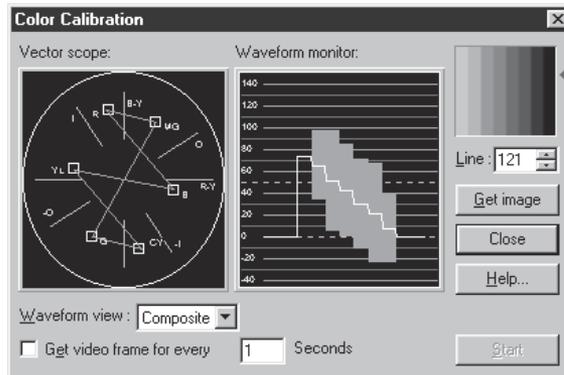
### Calibrating your display

To get the best possible calibration, your video source needs to be able to generate a color test pattern. These are often found in more expensive and professional video cameras which allow videographers to record the pattern onto video tape before they start recording a particular event. Later, they can then match this pattern to another display device to ensure that the colors recorded by the camera can be faithfully reproduced on that device, such as a computer monitor or a television set. If your video source does not have test pattern generation capability, then you will be unable to accurately calibrate your display. You can, however, adjust the colors using your video capture board's own controls (see page 80).

**Note:** Color calibration is not necessary if you are using a DV capture card and DV source.

*To calibrate your display:*

1. Make sure that the test pattern recorded on the video source appears in the video window of Video Capture and click **Setup: Color Calibration**. This opens the Color Calibration dialog box displaying two color meters: a **Vectorscope** and a **Waveform monitor**. A preview window displaying the current frame of the video source appears in the upper right hand corner. (It is a good idea to pause your video playback at this stage.)



*Color Calibration dialog box*

The **Vectorscope** indicates the hue and saturation values of the colors in the test pattern. The **Waveform monitor** displays the video source's color signal broken down into its component parts: **Composite**, **Chroma**, **Luma**, and **Parade**. **Composite** displays all the component parts combined, **Chroma** (shown in green) the color values and **Luma** (shown in white) the brightness values. **Parade** uses a different method from the others and is applicable for video capture boards which have support for the parade method. The preview window is a small representation of the current frame in the video window. The red slider tab indicates the horizontal scan line from which the colors evaluated in the test pattern are taken.

**Note:** See page 82 for a chart outlining typical color values of a well calibrated display.

2. Move the red slider next to the preview window so that it intersects each distinct color in the test pattern. (If you have a vertical pattern then there is no need to change it.)

3. Click the **Get Image** button. The vectorscope and waveform monitor redraw indicating the various color values at the point indicated by the scan line.

In a well calibrated display, the green lines on the vectorscope should touch the white squares and the graph in the waveform monitor should display a staircase pattern (see page 80 for a typical example). If they do not, then you need to adjust the settings using the software supplied with your video capture board.

4. Leaving the Color Calibration dialog box open, click **Setup: Video Display** to open the Display dialog box. This dialog box allows you to adjust various color values such as hue, saturation, brightness, and contrast.

It is important to keep both dialog boxes open so that any changes in the Setup dialog box can be reflected in the Color Calibration dialog box. To view these changes, you need to make sure that the preview test pattern in the Color Calibration dialog box redraws itself regularly. To do this, set the **Get video frame for every** option in the Color Calibration dialog box to 1 second. This ensures that at every second the preview test pattern refreshes itself, thereby reflecting any adjustments you make. (If the test pattern only appears for a short time, click the **Get Image** button after each adjustment to refresh the preview window.)

5. Adjust the various color values in the Video Display dialog box and look at the Color Calibration dialog box to see how your changes affect the preview test pattern. Once the vectorscope and waveform monitor show a properly calibrated display, close both dialog boxes and prepare for capturing.

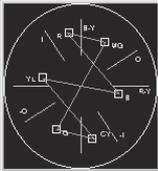
When adjusting color values, keep in mind the following:

- Changing hue rotates the green lines on the vectorscope clockwise or counterclockwise (depending on the degree of change)
- Changing saturation affects the depth of the lines, with low saturation appearing closer to the center and high saturation closer to the edges
- Changing brightness and contrast affects the waveform in different ways depending on your choice of options in the Video Display dialog box.

**Note:** If you cannot satisfactorily calibrate your hardware, you can still artificially readjust the video clip (after it's been successfully captured) using the **Color Calibration** command in Video Editor (see page 156).

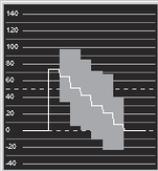
### Typical calibration settings

At 75% amplitude, with 100% saturated RGB color bars, your color values should resemble the following:



	White	Yellow	Cyan	Green	Magenta	Red	Blue	Black
Red	191	191	0	0	191	191	0	0
Green	191	191	191	191	0	0	0	0
Blue	191	0	191	0	191	0	191	0

When looking at a composite waveform in the waveform monitor, the typical settings are about:



White	Yellow	Cyan	Green	Magenta	Red	Blue	Black
100	65	50	50	30	20	20	0

**Note:** White and black should always be 100 and 0 respectively, though the other colors may vary slightly.



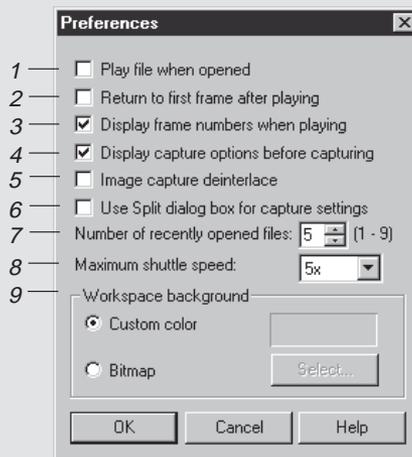
### Adjusting color with your video capture board

If you cannot use color calibration, your video capture board should still provide controls that allow you to adjust the contrast, color, and position of any video displayed from an external video source. The **Video Display** button on the Standard toolbar and the **Setup: Video Display** or **Setup: Video Source** command (depending on your video capture board) give you access to these controls. If you are not sure how to use them, refer to the documentation that accompanied your video capture board.

## Customizing Video Capture

You can customize the way you work in Video Capture using the Preferences dialog box, opened by double-clicking the **Status bar** or by clicking **File: Preferences [F6]**. Control various aspects of Video Capture's behavior, such as playing files whenever opened, specifying the shuttle speed, or defining the background color of the workspace.

### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX



1. **Play file when opened** plays a video file immediately upon opening in the workspace. When clear, the file opens on the first frame.
2. **Return to first frame after playing** resets the video sequence to the first frame once the clip finishes playing. When clear, the video stops on the last frame.
3. **Display frame numbers when playing** shows each frame number in the Status bar as it is being displayed. When clear, only the starting frame number is shown.
4. **Display capture options before capturing** opens the Capture Video Dialog box every time you click the **Record** button. When clear, Video Capture begins recording immediately.
5. **Image capture deinterlace** downsamples captured images to minimize the file size.
6. **Use Split dialog box for capture settings** centralizes the capture properties with settings derived from different dialog boxes (e.g., Input Source).
7. **Number of recently opened files** specifies how many file names are stored in the Recent History list found in the File menu.
8. **Maximum shuttle speed** sets the maximum speed possible when shuttling through a video file. In general, set a higher speed for longer files and a lower speed for shorter files.
9. **Workspace background** sets a background color or a bitmap image (BMP) as the background in the Video Capture workspace.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- Preview your video directly from its video source by clicking **Capture** on the **Standard toolbar** (see page 77).
- When viewing in Preview mode, set the frame size and frame rate of the video in the **Preview Options** dialog box (see page 77).
- **Calibrate** Video Capture to your video source before capturing (see page 79).
- Use the **File: Preferences** command to customize the Video Capture working environment (see page 83).

## Capturing video

*The first step in creating your own video production is capturing the source material. This can be made up of several minutes of video or simply individual frames that you want to incorporate into the other projects you are working on.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Tips for capturing good video and audio* ..... p.86
- *Capturing video and images* ..... p.88
- *Capturing from a DV camcorder* ..... p.93
- *Seamless DV capture* ..... p.94
- *Controlling the DV camcorder* ..... p.95
- *Scanning a DV tape* ..... p.101
- *Capturing a color palette* ..... p.106

## Tips for capturing good video and audio

---

Capturing video utilizes a huge chunk of the computer's memory and it puts your system resources to the test. The better your system is, the better the results will be. Below are some guidelines for the type of system setup that works best for video capturing. Reading this will help you optimize your machine's potential and create the best captured videos possible.

### Getting the right hardware

There are three key components to capturing video that account for much of the demand on a system's resources. They are the **video capture board/card**, the **CPU**, and the **hard drive**. Each is equally important and a bottleneck in any one will adversely affect the performance of the others.

The **video capture board** converts the original analog video source into digital data. In general, the faster this board is, the faster video can be digitized and then used by your computer. While the video capture board handles video input, it is the **CPU** which handles the delivery. The faster the CPU is, the more video (as data) can be processed and thus the better captured video file.

If you have a DV camcorder, you will need to use an IEEE-1394 (FireWire) interface card. DV capture cards provide device control over the source and complete transfer of video data between the tape and your hard drive.

Once the video has been processed by the **CPU**, it is written on your **hard drive**. If you try capturing a full frame with full motion video, your hard drive may not be able to keep up. As a result, your computer will end up either dropping or skipping frames. It is recommended that you use at least a 7200 RPM IDE drive. If necessary, use a RAID (Redundant Array of Independent disks) hard drive system.

## Using compression

As previously mentioned, a second of video requires a lot of disk space (30MB of disk space). No conventional hard drive can transfer that much data with sufficient speed, and it is only through compression that desktop systems can manage to work with video. All in all, there are two types of compression one can use in capturing video: **hardware-based** and **software-based**.

**Hardware-based** compression (e.g. MJPEG or MPEG) relies on the additional memory of the video capture board to compress video. This provides the smallest file sizes with the best quality. The only disadvantage of using this type of compression is that the video you've captured can only be played back in machines with a similar setup.

**Software-based** compression (e.g. Cinepak and Indeo) is handled by your system, which has to share the job of compressing with anything else running. While software-based compression is unable to match the compression ratios of hardware-based compression, this type of compression is device-independent and therefore compatible on a variety of machines. You can play back the captured video on most computers. This makes software-based compression the ideal choice for video intended for distribution on other machines via CD-ROM or the Internet.

## Techniques for improving your video captures

Even if you don't have the ideal system for capturing video, you can still achieve good results by working around the limitations of what you have. For example, you can:

- Close all other programs that may be running in the background to free up as much CPU resources as possible.
- Regularly defragment your hard drive with a utility such as Windows Disk Defragmenter from the Systems Tools menu. (Fragmented drives force the hard drive to slow down as it has to seek available free space to save a file.)

- Dedicate a separate hard drive for your video captures, or a separate partition on an existing hard drive.
- Capture at the best quality possible and then resample down if necessary. Resampling up creates (interpolates) new data which results in lower quality than the original.

Apart from controlling how your system performs, you can also set up Video Capture to optimize your captures using the **Advanced tab** of the Capture Video dialog box. Here you will find several options dedicated to enhancing capture performance, such as allocating additional memory buffers, specifying chunk granularity (data pack size), freeing up RAM and synchronizing video to audio.

For more video capturing tips, please refer to the appendix (see page 403).

## Techniques for improving your audio captures

When capturing audio there are three areas that you can control which determine the size and quality of the audio file. They are the sampling rate, sample size, and the number of channels. CD quality audio has a sampling rate of **44KHz**, a **16-bit** sample size, and two channels (or stereo). If you intend to play back your video over low quality speakers, then capturing at this level is not necessary. You may find a mono, **11KHz 8-bit** file more practical. Also, if you are capturing background music, then it may not be necessary to capture it at the same time you are capturing the video – you can always add it later as an audio track in Video Editor. (For speech, this is possible but it will require more effort later in Video Editor to synchronize the audio with the video.)

## Capturing videos and images

---

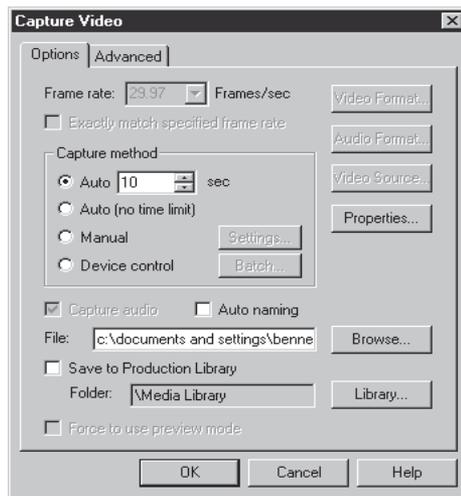
Once you have set up the video window to display your desired video or image, you are ready to capture. Before doing so, it is suggested that you

shut down all other programs running in the background or defragment your hard drive to achieve optimum results.

*To capture a video sequence or an image from an analog source:*

1. With Video Capture open, start playing the video from your video source. (The video should appear in the video window of Video Capture. If it does not, check the connection to your video source and your video capture board setup.)
2. Click the **Record** button on the Control bar or **Capture: Video [F5]** to open the Capture Video dialog box.

If the **Display capture options before capturing** option is cleared in the Preferences dialog box, Video Capture begins capturing immediately using your current settings.



*Capture Video dialog box*

3. Specify the desired frame rate in the **Frame rate** spin box. (If capturing full motion video from a drop-frame NTSC device, specify the fractional frame rate of **29.97**.)

Remember that the higher the frame rate, the more demand on your resources and the greater the size of the resulting video file. As a

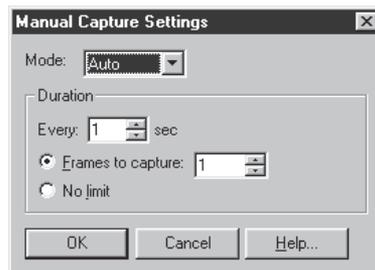
guideline, **15** frames per second for NTSC devices is a good place to start and **12** frames per second for PAL devices. If your video has a lot of movement and panning, then you may need a higher frame rate to avoid any jerkiness. 'Talking head' shots and video with little movement can often get away with a much lower frame rate.

4. Select the **Exactly match the specified frame rate** option to ensure that the capture maintains the frame rate (essential if you are capturing drop-frame video). Leave this option clear for general or non-time critical captures.

The actual captured frame rate may differ from the specified frame rate due to rounding or synchronization errors. While this is not detrimental in most cases, you may find that it slightly affects the timing of larger video sequences.

5. In the **Capture Method** group box, select the appropriate method for capturing. **Auto** captures video according to the time specified in the Auto spin box while **Auto with no time limit** continues capturing until you press the [ESC] key. If you want to perform single frame captures, then select the **Manual** option. If you have a controllable device, select the **Device control** option. (For more on capturing with a controllable device, see page 95)

If you select the **Manual** option, you can define aspects of the capture by clicking on the **Settings** button. This opens the Manual Capture Settings dialog box from which you can choose between two capturing modes: **Auto** and **Manual**. **Auto** allows you to specify the duration between captures while **Manual** allows you to control the timing of the capture directly. If you select the Auto option, the **Duration** group box is enabled with further options for defining how many frames are to be captured in total. If you want to capture continually, select the **No limit** option.



*Manual Capture Settings dialog box*

6. Select the **Capture audio** option to capture audio along with your video. (This is disabled if you do not have a sound card, your video capture board does not have sound capabilities, or you are performing a manual capture.)

**Note:** *If you want to change the current audio and video characteristics, click the respective **Audio** and **Video** buttons.*

7. Select the **Auto-naming** option to save each capture as consecutively numbered files. This file takes its name from the file name in the following File entry box, replacing the last four characters with sequential numbers. For example, if the file name you specify is called "VID", captured files will be called, **VID0001**, **VID0002**, and so on.
8. Enter the name to save the file to in the **File** entry box.
9. Select the **Save to library** option to save the captured file to a library in Video Editor.

If you save a file to the library, you can then go straight to Video Editor and drag-and-drop the file into a video project. This is also useful for batch captures as the library creates an icon for each captured file which you can then use to storyboard and arrange before placing your work into a video project.

10. Click **OK**. Video Capture begins capturing according to your settings. If you chose to capture manually, the Manual Capture dialog box opens displaying two buttons, **Next** and **Cancel**. Click **Next** to capture a single frame: **Cancel** to end capturing.

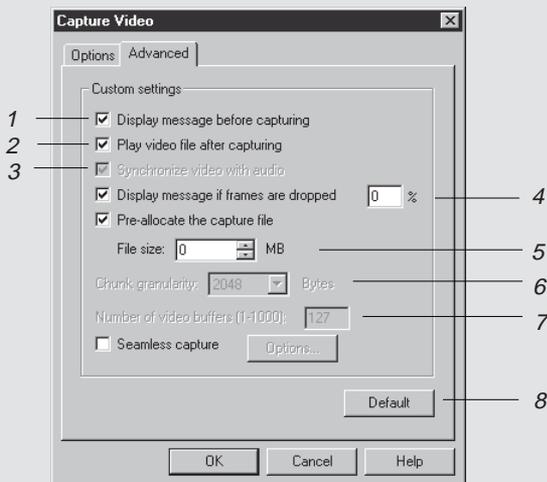
**Notes:**

- *When you click **OK** to start capturing, there may be a slight delay before any capture takes place. This is because many machines first clear all available memory. For best results, start your capture a few seconds before the video you want to record appears in the video window.*
- *If you are in Preview mode when capturing the displayed video, the video may freeze. If this happens, click **Capture: Display When Capturing**. This allows the video to continue displaying while capturing. (This may, however, adversely affect the performance of your capture as it requires additional resources and as such frames may be dropped.)*

## Customizing your capture options

In the Capture Video dialog box, the **Advanced tab** contains options that allow you to customize the way that each capture is performed. By carefully selecting these options to match your system's performance, you can significantly improve overall capture results.

CAPTURE VIDEO DIALOG BOX: ADVANCED TAB



1. **Display message box before capturing** displays a confirmation message dialog box after you have clicked **OK**. (This is useful if you want to wait before capturing.) When clear, capturing starts immediately after clicking **OK**. (This option has no effect when the selected capture method is Manual or Device Control.)
2. **Play video file after capturing** plays back each file after capturing. Leave this clear if you want to continue viewing your video source after capturing.
3. **Synchronize video with audio** ensures that during capture, the video portion maintains correct timing with the audio portion. When clear, both captures are done independently by your system, which may result in bad synchronization between audio and video data, particularly if the audio is a 'talking head'. If the audio is background music, then selecting this option has little effect.
4. **Display message if dropped frames exceed** displays a report after capturing whenever the specified dropped frame threshold has been met. For general capturing, specify 10%. (If you frequently get dropped frames, try capturing at a lower quality.) Set this to 100% if you do not mind dropped frames or are only capturing low resolution files.

5. **Preallocate the capture file** creates a temporary file to place your captured video sequences in. This improves performance as the hard drive does not have to search for free space to store video data. (This size should match or exceed your estimated capture size.)
6. **Chunk granularity** matches the size of each data chunk to be captured with your target hard drive's cluster size. Matching sizes ensures more efficient data transfer and thus improves capture performance. (In most cases, use the default unless you have a reason not to.)
7. **Number of video buffers (1-1000)** sets aside additional buffer memory to help improve captures. (In most cases, use the default unless you know how much buffer space you can afford.)
8. **Default** lets Video Capture automatically determine the best settings for your system. Click this when you do not know what options to specify or are unsure about your system's setup.

## Capturing from a DV camcorder using an IEEE-1394 (FireWire card) interface card

MediaStudio Pro allows you to save your files in a DV file format of your choice. There are two types DV file format: Type **1** and Type **2**. Now, you can pick which type of format you want your project to have by clicking the appropriate selection in **Options**.

Microsoft defines two methods of storing DV video data in AVI files, type **1** and type **2**. Accordingly, Video Editor fully supports both DirectShow and VFW codec for DV type **1** and type **2** format. For OHCI compliant **IEEE-1394** capture cards, select the DV Video Encoder type **1** codec in the Compression tab in the Video Save Options dialog box.

### *To capture from a DV camcorder with an IEEE-1394 interface card*

1. Connect your DV camcorder to the **IEEE-1394 interface card**. Follow the instructions of your capture card.
2. Turn your camcorder on and set it to **Play** mode (or VTR/VCR mode).
3. Run **Video Capture**.
4. Click **Capture: Video** or click Record to display the Capture Video dialog box.

5. Select the method to use in capturing:
  - Select **Device Control** to automatically control the entire capturing process from Video Capture.
  - Click **Batch** to mark the clips you want to capture and specify a file name for each clip. Refer to the “Capturing video by batch” procedure for details.
  - Select **Auto** or **Auto with no time limit** to capture a clip starting from the current frame.

**Note:** When **Auto with no time limit** is selected, you have the option to select **Seamless Capture** under **Advanced** tab, to help you save a video into another video file once it reached a size of 4GB, since that is the maximum size under the FAT32 file system in your hard drive.

6. Type a file name in the **File** entry box, or click **Browse** to find other files or folders. You can also set the type of AVI you want to produce after capturing. Click **Properties** and select **DV Type-1** or **Type-2**. Click **OK**.
7. Click **OK** to start capturing. Press [ESC] to stop capturing anytime. Video Capture should have automatic control (“device control”) of your camcorder and should play your tape. The output from the camcorder should be visible in the Preview window on your computer.

**Note:** Sometimes, Video Capture can lose its connection with your camcorder if it is turned off or disconnected. When this happens, the IEEE-1394 Firewire (interface card) resets. You may have to close Video Capture and open it again to re-establish a connection.

## Seamless DV Capture

When using the DirectShow driver, the maximum file size is 4GB under the FAT 32 file system in your hard drive. Yet, you can go beyond this limitation when using Windows 2000, Windows NT and Windows XP with a NTFS formatted hard drive partition that allows a file size to exceed 4GB.

**Seamless capture** gets around this 4GB file size limitation. Once a DV AVI file reaches 4GB, the remaining video is automatically saved as an another file. The capturing process remains uninterrupted no matter how long the video footage is.

### *To enable Seamless Capture:*

1. Make sure the DirectShow capture plug-in is selected and a DV driver is used.
2. Select **Seamless capture** in the **Advanced** page of the **Capture video** dialog box then click the **Options** button.
3. In the **Seamless Capture Options** dialog box, specify the desired maximum video file size in the **Cut file when file size reaches** box.
4. Select the **Cut when scene is detected** option and select the desired method.
  - **Always** Cuts the file whenever there is a scene change.
  - **At file size limitation** Cuts the file when the size reaches the value in the **Cut file when file size reaches** box.
  - **At first scene after** Cuts the file when the captured video file size exceeds the value entered in the box.
5. Click **OK**.

### **Controlling the DV camcorder**

MediaStudio Pro allows you to play, stop, or pause the DV tape by using the **Control bar** or the keyboard **hotkeys**. Other play controls such as forward, rewind, and go to the next or previous frame are also available.

You can also preview the DV camcorder tape at different speeds through the use of the **Shuttle Control**. Choose between **1/10**, **1/5**, **x1** (normal), and **x2** (fast) speed options.



*Shuttle Control*

### *To control your DV camcorder using the Control bar:*

1. Make sure your DV camcorder is connected to your system and that the proper Device control and Capture plug-in have been set.
2. Click the appropriate button on the **Control bar** to control your DV camcorder within MediaStudio Pro:
  - **Fast Rewind**  to quickly go to the frame(s) near the beginning of the video.
  - **Fast Forward**  to quickly go to the frame(s) near the end of the video.
  - **Previous Frame**  to go to the frame prior to the current one.
  - **Next Frame**  to go to the frame following the current one.
  - **Start**  to go to the first frame of the video.
  - **End**  to go to the last frame of the video.
  - **Repeat**  to play the video in a continuous loop.
  - **Mark-in**  to set the current frame as the starting point of a video selection.
  - **Mark-out**  to set the current frame as the ending point of a video selection.

### **Direct MPEG capturing from a DV camcorder**

You can directly capture MPEG files from your DV camcorder by switching your capture plug-in to **Ulead DSW MPEG Plug-in**. This makes MPEG capturing easier and hassle-free.

#### *To directly capture to MPEG format:*

1. Connect your DV camcorder to your **IEEE-1394 interface card**.

**Note:** When acquiring video from an analog source, be sure that the analog capture card you are using supports RGB or YUV capture.

2. Turn your camcorder on and set it to **Play mode** (or VTR/VCR mode).

3. Run **Video Capture** and click **Setup: Switch Capture Plug-in**.
4. Select **Ulead DSW MPEG Capture Plug-in**.
5. To begin capturing, click **Record** on the Control Bar, or click **Capture: Video** when working in **Capture** mode.
6. Specify the **Capture method** and click **Properties** to define the video and audio capture settings of the MPEG file. Click **OK** to return to the Capture Video dialog box.
7. Enter a file name for the video. Click **Browse** to locate the target directory.
8. Click **OK** to start capturing. If you want to start capturing immediately after pressing **Record**, clear **Display capture options before capturing** in **Preferences** dialog box.
9. To stop capturing, press [ESC]. If you have specified the length of capturing under **Capture Method**, MediaStudio Pro automatically stops the capturing process for you.

### Direct WMV capturing

Now you can capture directly from an analog source or DV camcorder straight to **Windows Media Video (WMV)**. WMV is an extensible file format that handles synchronized multimedia data and supports “live content” transmission over a wide array of networks. Selecting this will automatically convert your video to a WMV file. Note that when you click **Setup: Video Capture Property Settings**, you will see **Select** (available only when the WMV plug-in is selected) instead of **Advanced** at the bottom of the dialog box.

#### *To directly capture to WMV format:*

1. Connect your DV camcorder to your **IEEE-1394** interface card.

**Note:** When acquiring video from an analog source, be sure that the analog capture card you are using supports RGB or YUV capture

2. Turn on your camcorder and set it to **Play mode** (or VTR/VCR mode).

3. Run **Video Capture** and click **Setup: Switch Capture Plug-in**.
4. In Current capture plug-in, select **Windows Media Format Capture Plug-in**.
5. To begin capturing, click **Record** on the Control Bar, or click **Capture: Video** when working in **Capture** mode.
6. Specify the **Capture method** to use and click **Properties** to define the video and audio capture settings of the WMV file. After that, click **OK** to return to the Capture Video dialog box.
7. Enter a file name for the video. Click **Browse** to locate the target directory. You also have the option to select a different profile to generate the WMV file.

**Note:** *If you want to use another profile in capturing a DV video straight to WMV format, click Setup: Video Capture Property Setting. In the dialog box, click Select Profile to select from the list of available profiles installed in your computer.*

8. Click **OK** to start capturing. If you want to start capturing immediately after pressing the Record button, clear **Display capture options before capturing** in **Preferences** dialog box.
9. To stop capturing, press **[Esc]**. If you have specified the length of capturing under **Capture Method**, MediaStudio Pro automatically stops the capturing process for you.

### **Capturing video based on a profile**

The quality of a WMV file depends on the profile it is using. A **Profile** covers various attributes for a Windows Media Format file such as bit rate, number and type of streams, compression quality, frame size and so on. When capturing a video directly to WMV format, MediaStudio Pro uses the default profile to complete the capturing process. You also have the option to select other profiles to attain preferred captured file quality.

*To capture video based on a profile:*

1. Connect your DV camcorder to your **IEEE-1394** interface card.

**Note:** When acquiring video from an analog source, be sure that the analog capture card you are using supports RGB or YUV capture.

2. Turn your camcorder on and set it to **Play mode**.
3. Run Video Capture and click **Setup: Switch Capture Plug-in**.
4. In Current capture plug-in, select **Windows Media Format Capture Plug-in**.
5. Click **Setup: Video Capture Property Settings**. In the dialog box, click **Select** to open **Select Profile**.
6. Select the profile you want to use for capturing. The generated WMV file will depend on the profile that you pick. Click **OK**.
7. To begin capturing, click **Record** on the Control Bar, or click **Capture: Video** when working in Capture mode.
8. Specify the Capture method then click **Properties** to define the video and audio capture settings of the WMV file. Click **OK** to return to the Capture Video dialog box.
9. Enter a file name for the video. Click **Browse** to locate the target directory. You also have the option to select a different profile to generate the WMV file.

**Note:** If you want to use another profile in capturing a DV video straight to WMV format, click **Setup: Video Capture Property Settings**. In the dialog box, click **Select Profile** to select from the list of available profiles installed in your computer.

10. Click **OK** to start capturing. If you want to start capturing immediately after pressing **Record**, clear **Display capture options** before capturing in Preferences dialog box.
11. To stop capturing, press [Esc]. If you have specified the length of capturing under Capture Method, MediaStudio Pro automatically stops the capturing process for you.

## Editing and customizing a video profile

**Profile Selection** lists all the profiles available in your system. You can use the **Manage Profile** to edit, create, remove, and duplicate a profile.

**System-defined** profiles cannot be edited. However, You can create a customized one base from it. A Custom profile can be edited by clicking **Edit** and changing specific profile attributes.

You can also create a new profile by clicking **New**. This will launch a task wizard that will guide you in creating your profile.

### *To edit and customize a profile:*

1. Connect your DV camcorder to your **IEEE-1394 interface card**.

**Note:** *When acquiring video from an analog source, be sure that the analog capture card you are using supports RGB or YUV capture.*

2. Turn your camcorder on and set it to **Play mode** (or VTR/VCR mode).
3. Run Video Capture and click **Setup: Switch Capture Plug-in**.
4. In Current capture plug-in, select **Windows Media Format Capture Plug-in**.
5. Click **Setup: Video Capture Property Settings**. In the dialog box, click **Select** to open **Select Profile**.
6. Under **Select Profile**, click **Customize**.
7. **Manage Profiles** lists all the available profiles installed in your computer. The profiles are categorized into two types: **System defined profiles** and **Custom profiles**. Simply click **Edit** to modify attributes of a Custom profile.

**Note:** *System-defined profiles cannot be edited directly. You must create a copy before editing the corresponding attributes. To do this, select a system defined profile and then click **Copy**. Select the created copy of the profile and then click **Edit** to modify the attributes. Clicking **Edit** invokes **Edit Profile**. It will guide you in specifying your preferred attributes.*

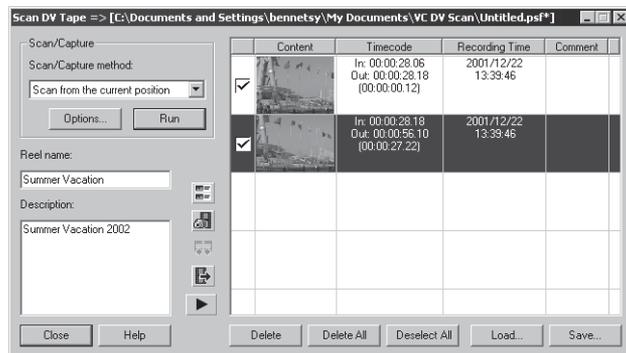
8. Under **General Information**, specify a reference name for the created or edited profile in **Name of Profile**.
9. Select the media types supported by the profile in **Source types**.

10. Under **Output**, you may choose to allow the profile to compress the video file or not. Enter a brief description of the profile under **Description**. Click **Next**.

### Scanning a DV tape

Scanning the DV tape identifies individual clips and provides a thumbnail list of the entire tape contents. Save the scan as a DV Album (PSF file) which provides a log of the entire tape for future reference.

The **Scan** menu item and toolbar button are enabled when the DV camcorder is on and the device control and capture plug-in have been initialized. When you press the Scan button, Video Capture opens the **Scan DV Tape** dialog box.



Scan DV Tape dialog box

**Note:** The dialog box should not contain any data under **List view control** when it is opened.

### To scan a DV tape:

1. Connect your DV camcorder to your **IEEE-1394 interface card**.
2. Turn your camcorder on and set it to **Play mode** (or VTR/VCR mode).
3. Run **Video Capture**. Click **Capture: Scan DV Tape**.

4. Select your preferred Scan/Capture method from the selection in the dialog box . You may choose one of the following:
  - **Scan from beginning** Rewinds the tape to the beginning of the tape and start to scan. This method can be used to scan a new tape.
  - **Scan from current position** Scans the tape from the current position. This method can be used to scan a tape that has scanned before and now will just want scan the newly recorded scenes.
  - **Scan from beginning and capture** Scans the tape from the beginning and capture all the scenes. If you want to scan the whole tape and capture all the scenes, you can select this method to do it.
5. Enter a reference name for the DV tape in **Reel name**. You may also enter brief information about the tape under **Description**.

**Note:** Under **Scan DV tape**, you can edit or modify the reel name and description of the DV tape. If you didn't edit the name and description before closing the DV, Vide Capture will prompt a warning message to notify you. We recommend that you do so.

6. Press **Run** to execute your preferences.
7. Select the scenes you want to capture then click **Capture**.

**Note:** Scanned scenes can be combined and treated as one before capturing. To do this, select the scenes that you want to combine and then click **Join**. To undo this action, select the combined scenes and click **Split**.

8. After scanning, you can see the result in the list view control. There are 6 columns in the list view control when you press **Thumbnail view**. They are: **Check**, **Contents**, **Time Code**, **Rec Time**, **Comment**, and **File Name**. Pressing **Normal view** gives you 6 columns: **Check**, **Mark-in**, **Mark-out**, **Rec Time**, **Comment** and **File Name**.
9. Select either: **Select all**, **Join**, **Split**, **Play** or **Go To**, depending on which one you prefer to do.
  - **Select all** selects all the scenes.
  - **Join** combines continuous scenes to one scene.
  - **Play** to preview the selected scene.
  - **Go To** to control the device seeking a selected mark-in position.
10. Click **Save** to store the result into a destination drive in PSF file format.

## Dropped frames

If your PC and video capture board have difficulty supporting a specified frame rate, a message box may appear after capturing detailing how many frames were captured and, of those, how many were ‘dropped’ frames. (This message box is controlled in the Advanced tab of the Video Capture dialog box, see above.) Dropped frames are ‘phantom’ frames which are created to ensure that the frame rate is maintained. Whenever Video Capture or some other device encounters a dropped frame on playback, it keeps displaying the previous frame until the dropped frame or frames have passed. If a video has dropped a large number of frames, then the playback will look very choppy. To reduce the occurrence of dropped frames, you can lower the quality settings for your video. For example, try a smaller frame size, higher compression, or a lower frame rate.

## Capturing single frames

Capturing a single frame does not require you to specify as much information as when capturing a video sequence. This is because the single frame adopts the currently displayed video frame size and data type, and is passed directly to your chosen destination – to the clipboard or to disk. You can capture single frames from either an existing video file or directly from a video source. In the program, a camera shutter beep is available as a reminder. Also, there are **three** output destinations: **Production Library**, **Image File**, and **Clipboard**. Also, a **Jog bar** is also available to make capturing a single frame easier for you.

### *To capture a single frame:*

1. Connect your DV camcorder to your **IEEE-1394 interface card**.

**Note:** *When acquiring video from an analog source, be sure that the analog capture card you are using supports RGB or YUV capture.*

2. Turn your camcorder on and set it to **Play mode** (or VTR/VCR mode).
3. Run **Video Capture**.

4. Select the frame you wish to capture.
5. Click **Freeze** on the Control bar (**Pause**, if playing an existing file) or **Control: Freeze** [SPACE] to stop the video on the current frame.
6. Click **Capture: Single Frame** or press [F8]. The frame is sent to the chosen destination. (If you are capturing to a file, the standard Save dialog box opens.)

**Note:** You can capture a single frame without freezing the video source or pausing a video file. However, you cannot be sure which frame you will get.

## Capturing a sequence of still frames

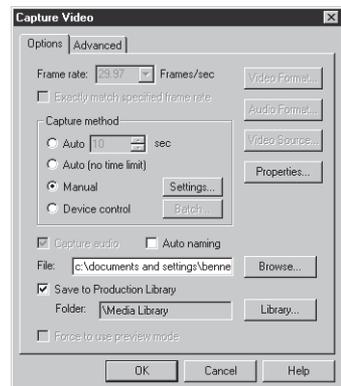
Shooting the entire duration of a flower blooming with a DV camcorder may be three hours in length or longer. You can compress this length by capturing a sequence of still frames at certain intervals from a DV device.

### To capture a sequence of still frames:

1. Connect your DV camcorder to your **IEEE-1394 FireWire interface card**.

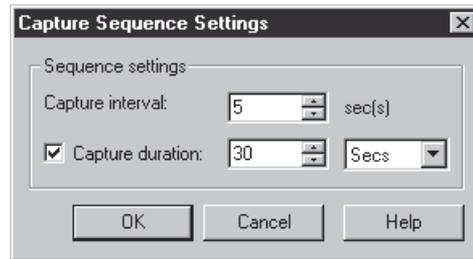
**Note:** When acquiring video from an analog source, be sure that the analog capture card you are using supports RGB or YUV capture.

2. Turn your camcorder on and set it to **Play mode** (or VTR/VCR mode).
3. Run **Video Capture**.
4. Click **View: Capture** to see the video on your screen. Click **Capture: Video** to open the **Capture Video** dialog box. Select **Manual** as the capture method then click **Settings**.
5. Under **Capture Sequence Settings**, set the attribute for the capturing work. Set the capture interval time in Sequence settings. The capture engine will capture a frame based on the set interval time. Select **Capture duration** and set how long you want the capturing process to



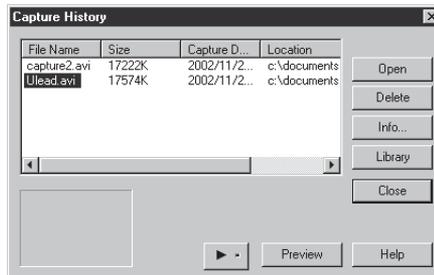
last. Click **OK** to accept the settings and close the dialog box so you can start the capture process.

**Note:** If the Capture duration option is not selected, you have to press [Esc] to stop the capturing process.



## Capture history

MediaStudio Pro provides a capture history dialog box in Video Capture to track the latest captured files. Select **File: Capture History** to invoke the **Capture History** dialog box. The video files can be sorted by file name, file size, or captured date.



Click **Play** to display a preview of a selected file. You can also use Capture History to copy or delete of files to or from the **Production Library** of the Video Editor. Press **Info** to display file properties of a selected file.

## Capturing a color palette when capturing analog video

---

The data type of a video sequence plays an important role in determining the resulting size and display of your captured file. For example, **24-bit True Color** video contains the most colors and generally occupies the most disk space (this is suitable for videos featuring a variety of colors such as outdoor shots). To retain some color while at the same time saving disk space, choose the **8-bit** data type which, depending on your video capture board, is either Grayscale or Indexed-**256 Color**. Indexed-**256 Color** data types use a predefined color palette to show colors and are best suited for low color videos, such as animations, and for video intended to be played back in **256 color** display modes. (True Color video will not display well in **256 color** display mode as it often contains more colors than the monitor is capable of showing.) In Video Capture, you can select which frames in a video to create the color palette from.

### *To capture a color palette:*

1. Click the **Capture Palette** button on the Standard toolbar or **Palette: Capture Palette** to open the Capture Palette dialog box.
2. Specify the number of frames from which you want to create the palette in the **Continuous frames** entry box.

If your video source contains simple images with few significant changes, you only need to specify a low value, such as **5**. If colors change rapidly, specify a higher value. Generally, the more frames you select, the greater the range of colors held in the palette. (You can select from **1** to **100** frames.)

3. Select a capturing option from the **Mode** group box. If you want Video Capture to capture the frames for you, select the **Auto** option and enter a value for the duration between captures. For example, if you specify two seconds, a frame is captured every two seconds. (You can specify an interval from **1** to **100** seconds.) If you want to capture specific frames, select **Manual**.

4. Click **OK**. If you selected **Auto** as your capture option, Video Capture begins capturing frames at the specified rate. If you selected the **Manual** option, the Manual Capture dialog box opens with two buttons, **Next** and **Cancel**. Click **Next** to capture one frame: **Cancel** to end the capturing.

When the capturing process is completed, a palette is generated from the optimum combination of colors based on the captured frames. Once defined, the color palette is stored in memory until you capture a new color palette or close Video Capture. If you wish to save the palette for later use, click **Palette: Save Palette**. To load it back into a video sequence, click **Palette: Load Palette**.

**Note:** You can also copy and paste palettes using the **Palette: Copy Palette** and **Paste Palette** commands. (These commands are disabled if the active video is not Indexed-256 Color or the data on the clipboard is not palette data.)

## Changing a file's properties

Whenever you capture a video sequence, you must first specify a file in which to save the resulting video. There will be times, however, when you wish to save this video again to change its attributes, such as frame rate or the compression scheme. (This is particularly true if you have a hardware compressed file, such as MJPEG or MPEG, and you wish to play it back on another machine which does not have the same hardware setup.)

Being able to accurately pinpoint frames also gives you more flexibility in editing video. For example, you can first capture your video as low resolution files and therefore have them occupy much less disk space. You can then edit them considerably faster in Video Editor and, when ready to compile the final version, you can recapture the exact frames at a higher quality. (You can also import the DVP file from Video Editor, including any edits you have done, and have the device capture the original video based on your edits.)

To capture from a controllable device, you first need to specify the frames you want to capture by marking those frames and creating a batch list. You also need to indicate a file to save the marked sequences to as well as provide a name for your reel or video source. This is especially useful if your batch list contains marked sequences from a number of different tapes or sources. When you perform the capture, Video Capture will prompt you when it is time to insert the next reel.

*To change the attributes of a file:*

1. Click the **Save** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: Save As** [CTRL+S] to open the Save As dialog box.
2. Specify the name and destination for the file.  
You can also append subject information to the file using the **Subject** and **Description** entry boxes and assign a thumbnail image to the file by clicking the **Select** button. If you plan on using the file in Video Editor, click the **Save to library** option to automatically place it in the Production Library for easy retrieval.
3. Click the **Options** button. The Video Save Options dialog box opens with four tabs: **Video Capture**, **General**, **Advanced**, and **Compression**.
4. Select either **Mark in-Mark out selection** or **All frames** in the Video Capture tab. **Mark in-Mark out selection** saves only the frames occurring between a marked in and marked out section of the file, while **All frames** saves all the frames in the file.
5. Specify the desired video attributes in the **General**, **Advanced**, and **Compression** tabs.
6. Click **OK**. The Video Save Options dialog box closes and you return to the Save Video File dialog box.
7. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and Video Capture saves the file accordingly.

## Marking video sequences for capturing

---

If you have a DV device installed (e.g. DV camcorder via IEEE-1394 FireWire interface card), you can control this device directly from Video Capture. For example, clicking **Rewind** on the Control bar rewinds your video tape. The main advantage of a controllable device is that you can accurately specify which frames in a video to capture.

### *To mark video sequences using a DV device:*

1. Click **Setup: Device Control** to open the Device Control dialog box.
2. Specify the type of controllable device you have in the **Current device** combo box. Click **Options** if you need to define more parameters for the selected device control driver. (Visit Ulead's web site to know more about recommended settings for different device control drivers.)
3. Click **Setup: Switch Capture Plug-in** and select the appropriate capture plug-in.
4. Click **Capture: Reel Properties** and in the Reel Properties dialog box, type a name for the source tape in the **Reel name** entry box. (You can assign any name, but be sure to change the name when you change the source tape.)
5. In the **File name** entry box of the Reel Properties dialog box, enter a name for the captured video. Video Capture automatically appends a number for each successive file created. For example, if the file name you specify is called "**VID**", captured files will be called, **VID0001**, **VID0002** and so on.
6. When you are ready to start marking video sequences, click the **Preview** button in the Standard toolbar or **View: Preview**.
7. Use the buttons in the Control bar to roll the source tape to the location where you want to begin marking video clips to capture.
8. Click the **Play** button to play the source tape.

9. Click the **Mark-in** button on the Control bar or **Control: Mark-in** [F3] whenever you see the video you want to select for capture. (The current frame is indicated in the Mark-In box on the Status bar.)
10. Click the **Mark-out** button on the Control bar or **Control: Mark-out** [F4] when you want to end a selection. (The current frame is indicated in the Mark-out box on the Status bar.)

Repeat steps 9 and 10 until you have marked all the sequences of the video that you wish to capture. Each time you mark a section of video, Video Capture records the timecode of the mark in a batch list which you can view or edit at a later stage.
11. Click the **Stop** button after you have finished marking all the video sequences.

### Viewing and editing a batch list

Once you have created a batch list, you can view it before you capture to ensure you have the correct sequences of video. You can also load an existing batch file or even a Video Editor DVP file from which to capture. Using batch lists in this way allows you to capture exactly the same source each time, and is very helpful for creating high resolution files to replace low resolution files you may have been using for editing.

#### *To view or edit a batch list:*

1. Click **Capture: Batch Settings** to open the Batch Settings dialog box. This dialog box displays a list of each marked segment of the video.

To load an existing batch file or Video Editor DVP file, click the **Load** button and choose the appropriate file from the Load dialog box.
2. Click on the segment in the list box that you want to edit and then click the **Preview** button to see the video in the video window of Video Capture.
3. To change the mark-in and mark-out times, either click the respective buttons as the video plays back or enter the values directly into the **Mark-in** and **Mark-out** spin boxes. (After adjusting the mark values, click the **Update** button to reflect the changes in the batch list.)

If you want to use this batch later (for example, to recapture at a higher resolution), click the **Save** button and in the resulting dialog box, save the file as a **batch capture file (BCF)**.

4. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the batch list is updated accordingly.

**Note:** *In the Batch Settings dialog box, you can also change the reel name and file name for any of the marked sequences in the batch list. (This does not affect the defaults in the Reel Properties dialog box.)*

## Capturing marked video sequences

After you've marked the various sequences in a video, you are ready to capture them. To do this, click the **Record** button on the Control bar or **Capture: Video** [F5]. In the Capture Video dialog box that opens, select the **Device control** option in the **Method** group box and click **OK**. Video Capture begins capturing from your device using the settings specified in the batch list. (You can still edit this batch list from the Capture Video dialog box by clicking the **Batch** button next to the Device Control option.)

**Note:** *If there are dropped frames during a capturing process, the Batch Log dialog box appears. Click the **Re-capture** button if you want to try recapturing that marked portion again.*

## Capture plug-ins

---

Video Capture provides different plug-ins for capturing different formats of video, such as AVI, MPEG, and digital video (DV). See the tutorial on Video Capture for details.

Video Capture also comes with a capture plug-in that allows you to capture videos from DVDs that are recorded using the DVD-VR format. To capture from DVDs, change your capture plug-in to **Ulead DVD-VR Plug-in** in the Change Capture Plug-in dialog box.

Using this plug-in will allow you to capture entire or selected contents of your DVD. To learn how to capture using the Ulead DVD-VR Plug-in, please consult the online help of the Ulead DVD-VR Plug-in.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- **Defragment** your hard drive before capturing large sequences (see page 87).
- Preallocate a **capture file** before capturing (see page 93).
- Capture from a DV camcorder with an **IEEE-1394** card (see page 93).
- Control your DV camcorder using the Control bar (see page 96).
- Do direct MPEG capturing using a DV camcorder just by switching your capture plug-in to **Ulead DSW MPEG Capture Plug-in** (see page 96).
- Use direct WMV capturing to allow your file to handle synchronized multimedia data and support "live content" transmission over a wide array of networks (see page 97).
- Capture a file based on its profile (see page 99).
- Edit and customize a video's profile (see page 100).
- Scan a DV tape (see page 101).
- Capture a single frame (see page 103).
- Lower your **quality settings** if you get dropped frames (see page 103).
- Capture a sequence of still images from a DV device (see page 104).
- View your capture history (see page 105).
- For Indexed-Color video, capture a **color palette** (see page 106).
- **Mark** video sequences before capturing them (see page 109).
- Use the **Capture: Batch Settings** command to edit a batch list (see page 110).

# Video Editor



## Getting started

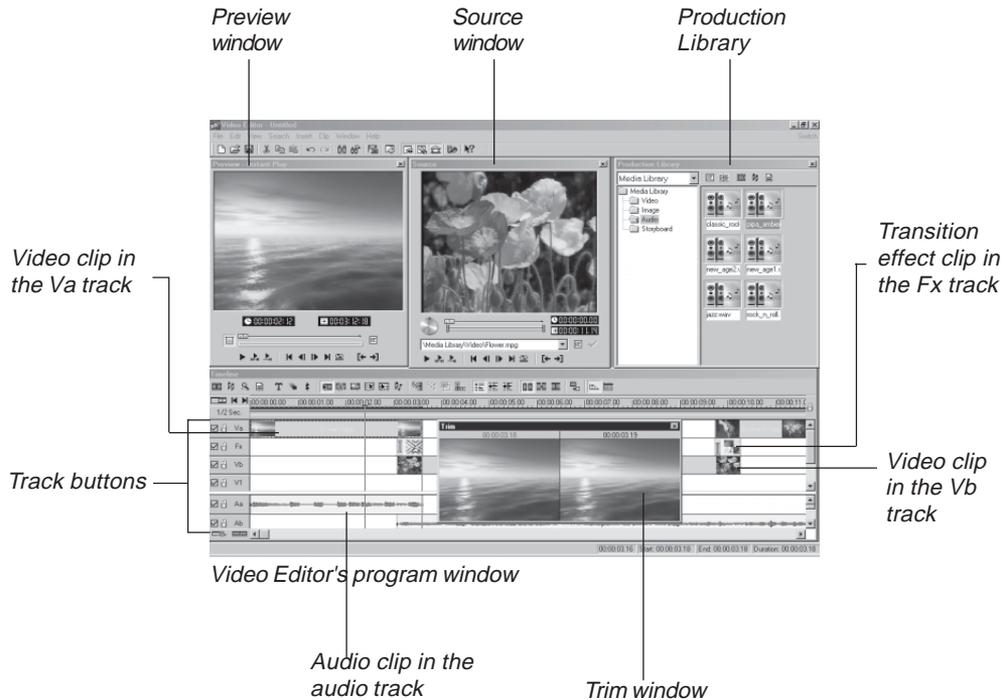
*Video Editor is where you begin to bring together all the different components of a video project – sound, animation, titles, and, of course, the video. Once you have arranged these components and performed any effects and transitions, you are ready to create a video production which can be saved as a file, placed on the Internet, distributed on a CD or DVD, or sent back to video tape.*

### ***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Understanding the workplace* ..... p. 116
- *Working with video projects* ..... p. 118
- *Using the Production Library* ..... p. 123
- *Working with the Timeline* ..... p. 127
- *Converting files* ..... p. 140
- *Customizing Video Editor* ..... p. 142

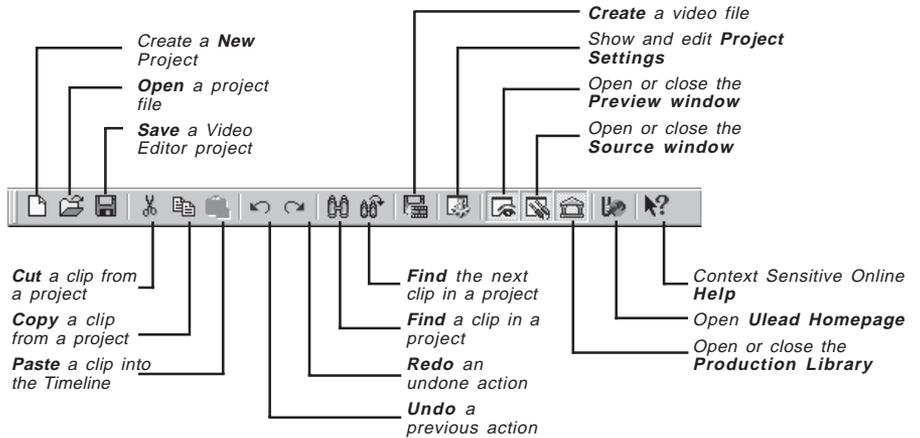
## Understanding the workplace

Video Editor has several different windows which float in the workplace. The Timeline window is the key to working with and managing video on the desktop. As with the timelines found in history books or encyclopedias, it is laid out horizontally and composed of several independent layers or 'tracks.' These tracks hold the many different events that occur over time. In Video Editor, these events are referred to as clips, and they combine together to make up a video project. The other windows in the Video Editor workplace, such as the Production Library and the Preview window are there to help you in the editing process.

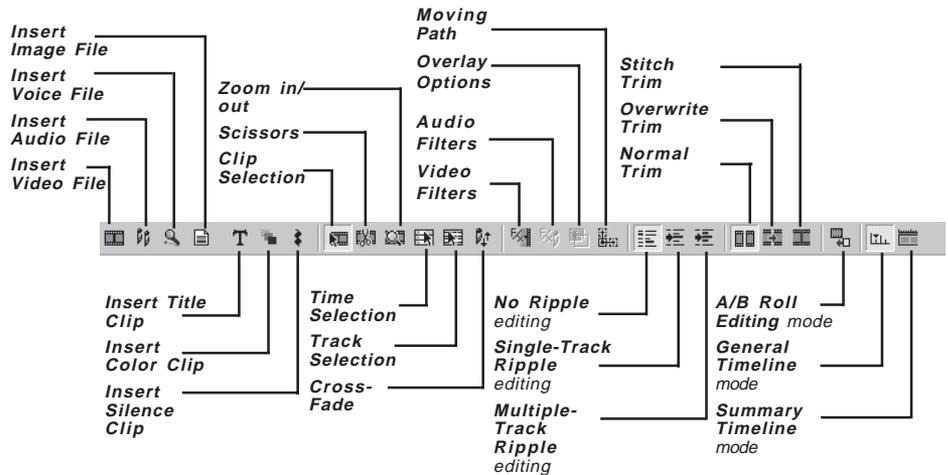


The main buttons in Video Editor are located on the Standard toolbar, which is at the top of the workplace, and the Timeline toolbar, which is in the Timeline window.

### Standard toolbar



### Timeline toolbar



## Working with video projects

---

In Video Editor, the Timeline and its associated clips are referred to as a video project, which is saved as a DVP file (digital video project). When you save a video project, Video Editor only saves the positions and attributes of the clips in the Timeline, not the actual source files themselves. The advantage to this is that the DVP file has a relatively small file size and that any editing done is nondestructive – that is, the editing doesn't affect the original source files on disk. The next time you open a DVP file, Video Editor verifies that your hard disk still contains the source files for the clips in the project and then recreates the clips accordingly.

### Creating a new video project

To get started in Video Editor you first need to create a video project. The video project not only holds the clips that you place into the Timeline, but also defines the properties for the resulting video, such as the television standard and the size of the frames used. Any clips that you place into the project subsequently adopt those properties, regardless of their original attributes.



#### *To create a new video project:*

1. Click the **New** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: New [CTRL+N]**. The **New** dialog box opens displaying a list of project templates.
2. Click on the template you want to use. Its properties, as well as an annotated description, are displayed on the right side of the dialog box.
3. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and a new project is created.

**Note:** When you run Video Editor for the first time, the **New** dialog box opens automatically. If you regularly use the same properties for a video project, you can hide the New dialog box each time you click **New** by clearing the **Always show this dialog box** option (Another way is to clear the **Display New dialog box** option in the **File: Preferences: General** tab.). Any subsequent projects take their properties from the current project.

## Customizing a video project

When you start a new project (**File: New**) you may find that none of the existing templates in the New dialog box contain the exact attributes you want to use. You therefore have the option of creating a custom template to suit your particular needs.

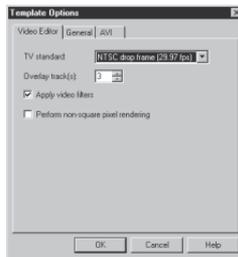
### *To create a template:*

1. In the New dialog box, click the **Create** button. The **Template Options** dialog box opens up.
2. Select and set the attributes for your new template.

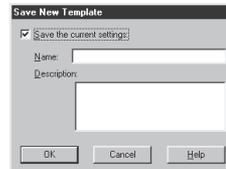
**Note:** For a more detailed explanation of setting up a template see page 108, or refer to Video Editor Help. Also, it is a good idea to consult the manual of your particular video capture board to see the recommended specifications.

3. Click **OK**. The **Save New Template** dialog box opens up.
4. Select **Save the current settings**, and then type in a name and description for your new template.
5. Click **OK**.

Your video project will now have the specified settings, and the next time you open a new project your customized template will be listed in the New dialog box.



Template Options dialog box



Save New Template dialog box

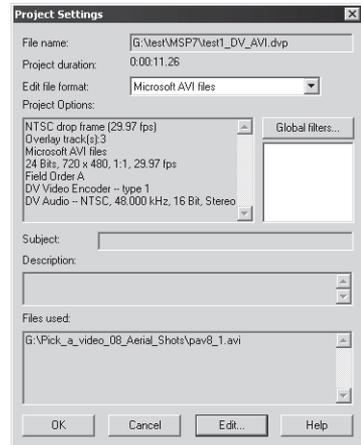
## Project settings

When you create a new project, its properties are determined by the New dialog box settings at the time you create it. These settings are integral to your project and determine not only how your previews are created, but also the format of your final movie. When you want to change these properties and customize a project while you are already inside the project, you can change the Project Settings.

*To view and/or alter your project settings while in the project:*



1. Click the **Project Settings** button at the bottom of the track buttons, or select **File: Project Settings [ALT+ENTER]**. This opens the **Project Settings** dialog box where you can view the properties of your project.
2. To change any of the settings click the **Edit** button to open the **Project Options** dialog box. Click through the various tabs and then specify the television standard you are using, such as NTSC or PAL, the frame rate, and the frame size. You can also control the number of overlay tracks displayed and view the files currently used by the project.

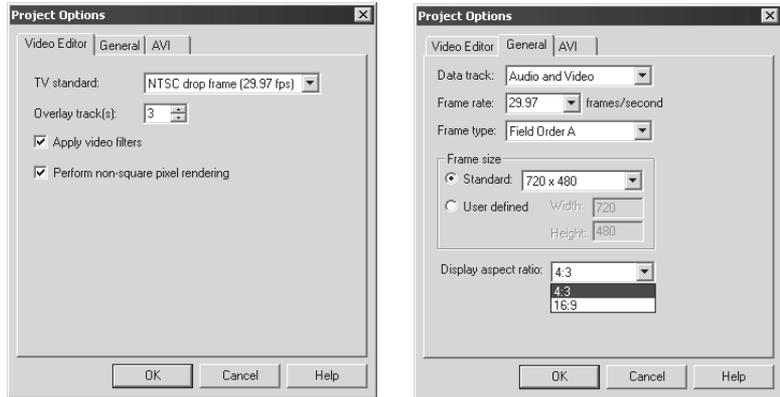


### Notes:

- The number of tabs which appear in the Project Options dialog box depends on which **Edit file format** you have selected in the Project Settings dialog box.
- The **Frame Rate** option determines the number of frames for any resulting video file. The appearance of the clip on the Timeline will not change.
- Changing a project's properties clears the undo/redo history.
- Project settings directly determine the default settings in the Video Save Options dialog box (see page 217) which in turn determines your final video format.

## 4:3 and 16:9 display management

In the **Project Options** dialog box, you can set the size for the display and output screen to 4:3 (for traditional letterbox TVs, computer monitors, or some DV camcorders) or 16:9 (widescreen used in HDTV, theaters, or some DV camcorders). To use the 16:9 display, select **Perform non-square pixel rendering** on the **Video Editor** tab first and choose 16:9 as the display aspect ratio on the **General** tab.



The aspect ratio is also important when dealing with moving paths in a project. The moving path's aspect ratio should be similar to the aspect ratio being used by the project.

**Note:** *Be aware of the aspect ratio of the video files you are using and the display aspect ratio of the intended playback screen for your videos. This will help you determine which display aspect ratio to use in your projects.*

## Saving a project as a template

After you have customized your video project, you can save it as a template by clicking the **File: Save Project Template** command. In the dialog box that opens, you can give the template a name as well as a description. Any existing templates are also displayed in the **Existing template** list box. If you wish to replace one of these templates with the properties of the current video project, select it and then click **OK**.



## Saving a video project

When you save a video project, it is saved as a **DVP** file (Digital Video Project). This is a small file that contains all of the information about your project, like which clips to include, their position on the Timeline, and any transitions that you have used. This file is not a movie and can only be opened in MediaStudio Pro.

## Packaging a video project

Packaging a video project (**File: Package**) is useful if you want to backup your work or transport your files to another computer for editing. If you have a large project, packaging is useful for cleaning up your hard drive as it places all the source files into one folder. You can then go back and remove any excess or temporary files from the old folders.

**Note:** *To transfer a video project file and its source files to another PC, use the same directory structure as the original to ensure the clips are correctly linked.*

## Smart Relink

Since a DVP file contains links to potentially hundreds of files on your computer, it is not uncommon for these files to occasionally get lost. This can happen when you have moved them or maybe edited the files in another program. From the **File** menu, select **Smart - Smart Relink** to locate these files. If you have moved an entire group of files to a new folder or hard drive, Smart Relink will find all of the files after you relink just one, provided the relative directory structure has remained the same.

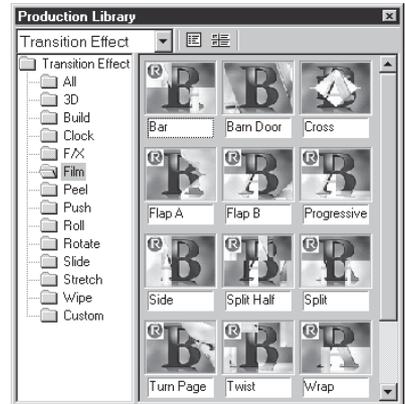
## Saving the layout

Video Editor's user interface is flexible and easy to customize. Move and resize the various windows in any configuration and then click **File: Layout Template - Save**. This creates a template of the current Video Editor layout which you can then use to customize your workplace for other projects by clicking **File: Layout Template - Load**.



## Using the Production Library

MediaStudio Pro's Production Library stores everything you need to create your movie. When you start a project, the Production Library already contains all of the transitions, filters, and other special effects that come with MediaStudio Pro. The rest of the Library is ready to be filled with the various clips that you will use in your movie. Since a typical movie can easily be composed of hundreds of individual clips, organization is critical. By placing your clips into the Production Library, they are categorized by subject and represented by small thumbnail pictures. While this is certainly not the most glamorous part of the movie making process, spending a short period of time at the beginning of your project setting up and populating the Production Library will save you hours later.



*Production Library (Transition Effects Gallery). Effect and filter thumbnails with **R** are the ones that can be played back in real-time.*

## Placing clips into the Production Library

*To place clips into the Production Library:*

1. Click the **Production Library** button on the Standard toolbar to open up the Production Library.
2. Select **Media Library** from the **Change Gallery** list.
3. Select either the **Import Video File**, **Import Audio File**, or **Import Image File** button from the Media Library toolbar.
4. Browse for and select your clip. Click **Open** to import the clip into the Media Library.

**Note:** *If you want to create new folders, right-click on the Media Library folder and select **Create**.*

## Using the Storyboard

The Production Library stores everything needed to create a movie. This includes transitions, filters, and other special effects that come with the program. Captured video clips are also placed here. They are categorized by subject and represented by small thumbnail pictures. Video Editor's Storyboard folder allows you to view, arrange, and overlap video clips from different tracks before inserting them into the Timeline.

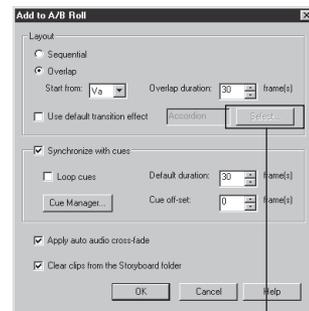
### To use the Storyboard function:

1. Import or copy the video files (from other folders inside the Production Library) you want to use into the Storyboard folder.

**Note:** You can only use the **Add to A/B Roll** function when you are inside the Storyboard folder.

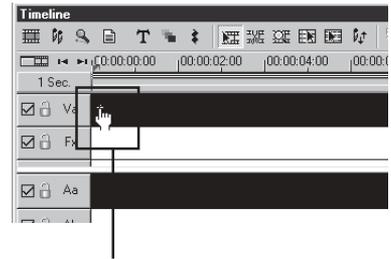
2. Arrange the sequence of the video clips by dragging them to the desired positions.
3. Right-click on a clip and select Add to A/B Roll to open the **Add to A/B Roll** dialog box.
4. In the **Add to A/B Roll** dialog box, determine the layout option for your clips.
5. Set your default transition effect between the clips by selecting **Use default transition effect**. Click **Select** to select the transition effect to use.

**Note:** Select **Clear clips from the Storyboard folder** to remove the movie files from the Storyboard folder after selecting **Add to A/B Roll**.



Select button

6. Click **OK**
7. Place the hand cursor over the Video track position on the Timeline where you want to place the video clips then click the mouse button.



*Hand cursor over the Video track position*

**Note:** Select **File: Preferences - Edit Tab - Apply auto cross fade** to automatically apply a fade in/fade out audio effect between overlapping video clips when using A/B Roll.

## Working with folders

When you view the Production Library, the contents of the currently selected gallery appear on the right side of the Production Library window. To the left are folders which organize the various thumbnails of the particular gallery. You can manage these folders by right-clicking on them and choosing a command from the pop-up menu that appears. This menu offers commands for creating, renaming, deleting and copying folders. You can also save the contents of a folder as well as load the contents from a previously saved file.

**Note:** If you want see all the contents of the folders (including sub folders) in a particular library, click the **All** folder icon in the selected library's folder tree.

## Drag and drop

The mouse is a powerful tool in MediaStudio Pro. You will find that it is effortless to drag-and-drop clips among many parts of the program. Try dragging a clip from Windows Explorer to the Production Library to organize your project. Then drag the clip's thumbnail from the Production Library to the Source window to do a little trimming. Finally, drag the clip from the Source window directly to the Timeline for insertion into your movie.

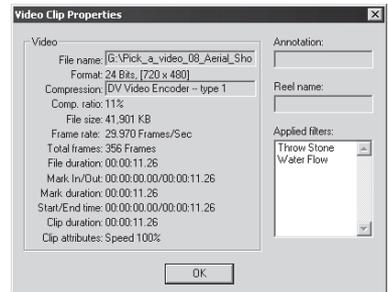
## Viewing Production Library thumbnails



The **Production Library** toolbar has two buttons which allow you to control and organize your clips. Click the **Thumbnail Display Mode** button and select **Description** to view an annotated description or select **Thumbnail** to only see a graphic representation.



The **Menu** button opens a pop-up menu which provides additional commands for viewing the properties of a selected thumbnail, as well as editing, deleting, and customizing the Production Library preferences (this menu can also be accessed by right-clicking on a thumbnail). When customizing the preferences, you can choose to control the size of the thumbnails as well as to display or hide the name below each of the thumbnails. If you want to maximize the space available for displaying thumbnails, click the **Preferences** command and in the dialog box that opens, clear the **Show border** option. The **Search** command allows you to search for particular thumbnails, while the **Sort** command allows you to sort them based on their name, description, or annotation.



## Adding effects to the Production Library

In the Production Library, you can edit any clip or effect without having to first insert it into the Timeline. This is a great way to define and save unique attributes for clips and effects and allows you to expand and customize the Production Library indefinitely.

### *To modify and add an effect:*

1. Select the thumbnail.
2. Right-click the thumbnail and click the **Edit** command found on the pop-up menu.
3. Specify the attributes in the dialog box for that thumbnail.
4. Click the **Add** button.
5. Enter a name below the Thumbnail and click **OK**.

## Working with the Timeline

---

While organizing your media clips in the Production Library is a necessary first step, the real work occurs on the Timeline. As the name implies, the Timeline is a chronological workspace that allows you to visually lay out your clips, transitions, and overlays.

### Inserting clips

Clips are the objects that make up your movie. A clip can be an image, a video, a transition, a title, a background color or an audio file. Following insertion into the Timeline, clips can be trimmed and special effects can be applied without modifying the original source files. This is designed to give you greater confidence in editing your video. To start work on a video project, you need to first insert clips into the Timeline. Once inserted, you can begin to edit and arrange them into your final video production. Clips that have been inserted directly onto the Timeline will also automatically be added to the Production Library's Project gallery.



## Inserting video, audio and image clips

The easiest way to insert a video, audio or image clip into the Timeline is to click the appropriate **Insert** button on the Timeline toolbar. You can also choose its corresponding command from the **Insert** menu or the right-click pop-up menu. A dialog box opens allowing you to select a file that MediaStudio Pro supports. Supported formats include MPEG-1, MPEG-2, MPEG-4, DV type 1 & 2 AVI, as well as QuickTime and Flash files.

If you choose a video file that contains both video and audio data, the clips are placed in both the video (**Va**) and audio tracks (**Aa**): these clips remain connected to maintain synchronicity. (You can separate them by clicking the **Clip: Split** command, see page 155.) Clips already in the Production Library can simply be dragged onto the Timeline. You can also **drag-and-drop** clips directly from Windows Explorer.

You can also insert clips currently displayed in the Source window to another track in the Timeline. Press **[F11]** and select from the pop-up menu in which track you want to insert the clip.

**Note:** *The files you insert should match the properties of your video project to ensure the best possible output results.*



When you insert clips, they are placed at the position of your pointer. How these clips affect any neighboring clips is determined by the **Ripple Editing** mode (see page 167). If you are in Ripple Editing mode, you can insert the clip anywhere you like on a compatible track (even over existing clips) and the clip pushes along any other clips which appear in the same track. If you are not in Ripple Editing mode, you can only insert the clip into an empty clip slot. An empty clip slot starts from the end of one clip and continues to the beginning of the next. A clip that is inserted into a slot shorter in duration than the clip itself will be trimmed to fit the space.

**Note:** You can also insert other DVP files into an existing project by clicking **Insert: Project File**. This places the entire contents of the video project into the Timeline and is particularly helpful if you have broken up larger projects into more manageable portions and are now preparing the final video sequence.

## Voice Over

In the case of documentaries and presentation videos, narration often helps viewers understand and appreciate the movie's content. This is why MediaStudio Pro now offers a voice over function to meet the voice-over requirements of narrated videos. The Voice Over function allows you to incorporate narration and voice overs into your videos using five easy steps.

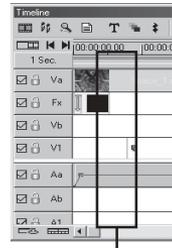
### To insert a voice over:

1. Use the **Preview bar** to determine the section of the video where you want to add your narration.

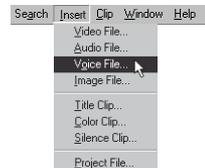
**Note:** Make sure the Project cursor is not over an existing audio clip on the selected Audio track.

2. Select **Insert: Voice File**.
3. In the **Insert Voice File** dialog box, test the sensitivity of the microphone by looking at the level meter.

**Note:** You can adjust the recording level of the microphone by going into the Windows Volume Control.



*Project cursor over a blank area on the selected Audio track*



- Determine the Audio track selection option. Also, click the ellipsis button to locate a file in your computer for use as voice over.

**Tip:** Click **Run Mixer** to adjust the recording volume and other recording options.

- Press **Start** to begin recording your voice. Press [ESC] to stop recording.



Ellipsis button

## Extracting extra audio tracks

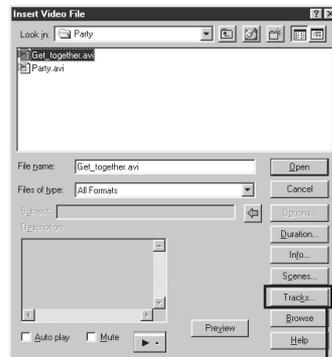
MediaStudio Pro provides users with a way to extract extra audio clips from video files to standalone audio files. Video Editor allows you to use multiple audio clips for your projects. For a video file with multiple audio clips, only the first audio clip can be used. MediaStudio Pro has added a button, **Tracks**, in the **Insert Video File** dialog box that allows you to extract audio files from a video that contains multiple audio clips. With this feature, users can extract any or all the audio clip and insert them on the various audio tracks on the timeline.

### To extract an audio track:

- Select **Insert: Video File**.
- Select the file containing the audio clip for extraction.

**Note:** If the selected file has only one audio track, the **Tracks** button is disabled.

- Click **Tracks**. The Extract Extra Audio Tracks dialog box will appear.

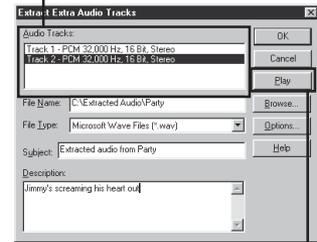


Tracks button

4. A list of all available tracks will appear in the **Audio Tracks** window. Select the file you want to extract by clicking on it.
5. Determine the file name, audio file type, and other options.
6. Click **OK**.

**Tip:** Click the **Play** button to listen to the track you have selected.

*Audio Tracks window*



*Play button*

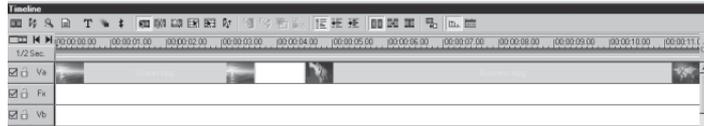
## Push Away insertion

**Push Away** insertion is related to Ripple Editing and controls how inserted clips affect other clips on the Timeline. You must be in **No Ripple** mode for this to work and it only works on a single track. The key to this technique is to press **[SHIFT]** while inserting clips.

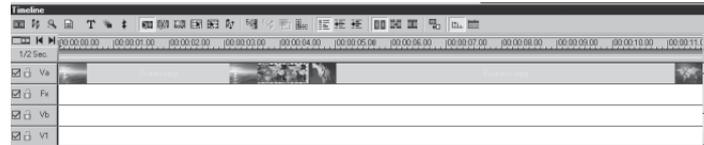
### *To use Push Away insertion:*

1. Click the **No Ripple** button, then click the **Insert Video File** button on the Timeline toolbar.
2. In the Insert Video File dialog box, select a clip (click it once).
3. Click **Open**.
4. While you press (and hold) the **[SHIFT]** key, place your clip in a video track.

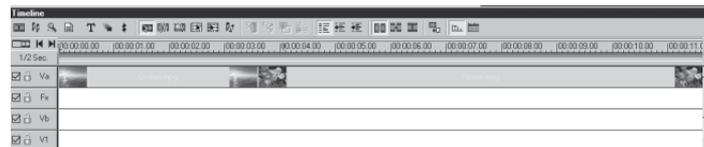
Push Away insertion also works on clips that are being dragged from one location to another or that are being pasted into the Timeline. See illustration on the next page.



*This is the original Timeline*



*Flower.mpg was inserted in No Ripple mode and was trimmed to fit*



*Holding down [SHIFT] while inserting Flower.mpg pushes Business.mpg out of the way*



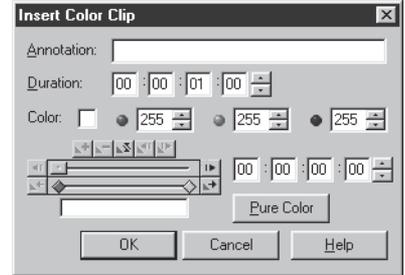
## Inserting title, color, and silence clips

Apart from video, audio, and image clips, you can also insert title, color, and silence clips into the Timeline. Title clips are often used in conjunction with moving path effects (they are described in detail in the special effects section: see page 181). Silence and color clips can be used as placeholder clips which can ‘stand in’ for other clips you want to insert later. For example, you may want to start working on a video project, but you have yet to acquire all your source files or some may still be in the editing stage. You can use a color clip to substitute for an image or video clip and a silence clip for an audio clip that will serve as default clips. When it is time to utilize your finished source files, use the **Clip: Replace With** command to insert these files into the positions that the default clips occupy. Any existing filters, special effects, and/or moving paths are retained by the new clip.

You can also use color clips as a background for other clips in the project, such as when performing fades or to create certain types of effects. You can set key frames to create impressive gradient effects with each frame of the clip gradually shifting from one color to the next.

*To insert a color clip:*

1. Click the **Insert Color Clip** button on the Timeline toolbar (You can also click **Insert: Color Clip** or right-click on a video track and select **Color Clip** from the pop-up menu.)
2. In the **Insert Color Clip** dialog box, specify the duration of the clip in the **Duration** spin box.
3. Choose the color of the clip by clicking the color square or entering RGB values. Click the **Pure Color** button to quickly insert a solid color clip.
4. Click **OK**. Drop the clip into position on a video track.



If you choose different colors for the start and end key frames you can create a gradient effect, such as a fade from black to white. The more key frames you add, the greater the variety of colors you can have. For more on adding key frames see the section on "Using key frame controls" on page 188.

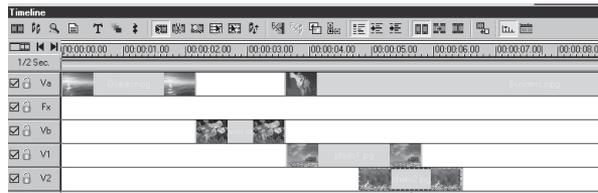
## Working with tracks

Video Editor has three types of tracks you can work with: **video**, **transition**, and **audio**. The video tracks consist of two primary tracks (**Va** and **Vb**) and an additional 99 **overlay tracks (V1...V99)**. Between the primary Va and Vb tracks is the transition (**Fx**) track, which allows you to control how clips in the Vb track merge with clips in the Va track. The overlay tracks are used for performing color keying (blue screening), moving path effects, rolling credits and much more. The audio tracks behave similarly as the video tracks, with the exception that there is no transition track.

**Note:** When you have more tracks available than can fit on the screen at one time, you can use the scroll bars to move up and down through the tracks. To lock both the video and audio tracks when scrolling, click the **Scroll Lock** button at the top of the vertical scroll bar or the **View: Scroll Lock** command. The next time you scroll, both tracks move in unison. Also, to control the number of tracks in the Timeline, click **File: Project Settings**, the **Edit** button, and then enter the number of tracks. For details on the track buttons, see page 152.

## Determining the visibility of clips

Often you will have a number of clips that will be playing at the same time in a project. It is common, for example, to have one main clip in Va and a second clip with titles in V1. Clips that are in the lower tracks in the Timeline (lower physically not numerically) will always play over (on top of) clips located in higher tracks. Since V2 is lower in the Timeline than V1, it will play over V1. This hierarchical structure lets you perform various effects, such as transitions and overlays, with precise control over the transparency or strength of the effect.



The lowest clip plays over all higher clips

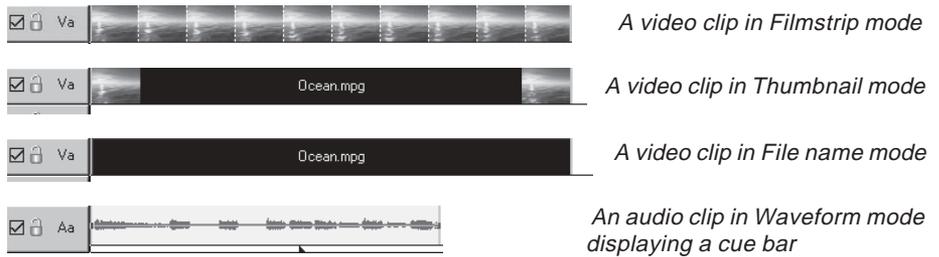


## Displaying clips on the Timeline

Your project could easily be a half an hour long and contain hundreds of clips, some only a few seconds long. Getting around your project quickly and easily is an important skill to master. Click the **Display Mode** button at the top of the track buttons (or click **View: Timeline Display Mode**) to choose how clips are displayed: Filmstrip, Waveform, Thumbnail, or Filename modes. You can also determine the size of the tracks. **Filmstrip** and **Waveform** modes display clips graphically (video clips as frames, audio clips as waveforms) allowing you to see the entire contents of a clip. While

the graphic modes may be easier to work with, it takes time for your computer to redraw clips every time they have been modified. To help improve performance, but still retain some visual cues as to the contents of a clip, select the **Thumbnail** mode (video only). This shows the first and last frames of a video clip separated by the file name of the clip. The last mode, **File name**, represents clips by their file names only with no graphical information. This is the fastest mode as it is the quickest to display but offers no visual reference to the clip's contents.

In the same dialog box, you can also choose to show a cue bar which is useful for marking areas on a clip for future edits as well as for determining the size and height of video and audio clips. Changing the size of clips is especially useful if you are running in a high resolution display mode and find it hard to identify clips and their contents.

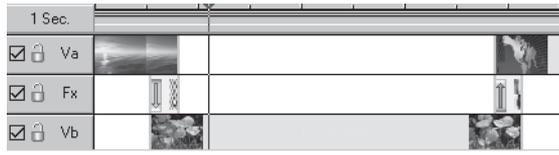
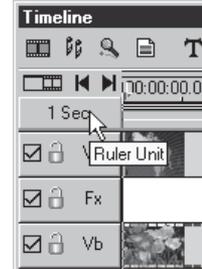


## Zooming in/out on the Timeline

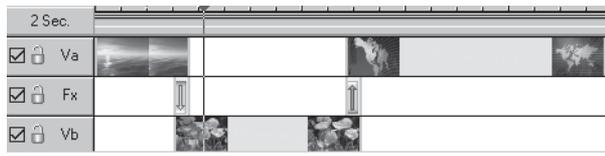
The Timeline can represent your project at any magnification. You can display every frame in a clip or view the entire project on the screen at one time. This zooming is achieved by changing the time measurement unit used in the Timeline. For example, at 1 second (the default) each division on the Timeline represents 30 frames (using the NTSC standard), and at 1 minute each division represents 1,800 frames, and so on. To change the unit of measurement you have two options:



- Click the **Ruler Unit** button to open the pop-up menu and choose the preferred time unit to do your editing. You can also select Zoom In/Out, single Frame, Fit In Window, or Previous Zoom to toggle between the previous zoom ratio and the current one.
- Click the **Zoom** tool and then click on the Timeline. Each mouse click zooms in one ruler unit (toward displaying each frame). Holding down the **[SHIFT]** key as you click zooms out one ruler unit (toward Fit in Window). This method is best if you are zooming in on a particular clip or frame and want it to remain in view at all times. You can also use the "+" and "-" keys found on the keyboard to zoom in and out.



*Clips viewed at one second*



*Clips viewed at two seconds*

**Tip:** Press and hold the **[z]** key on your keyboard to temporarily switch to the Zoom tool. The **[SHIFT+z]** allows you to zoom out.

## General Timeline and Summary Timeline

Ulead MediaStudio Pro provides two types of timeline views: **General Timeline** and **Summary Timeline**.



General Timeline provides the traditional linear style for all timecodes and tracks. This means that your clips are displayed in their real time showing their actual length. This may cause some clips in your project not to be visible in the Timeline window all at the same time. You may need to use the scroll bar to view desired clips. You may also adjust the Ruler Unit while editing in the General Timeline mode to select short clips and to see all the clips in your project.



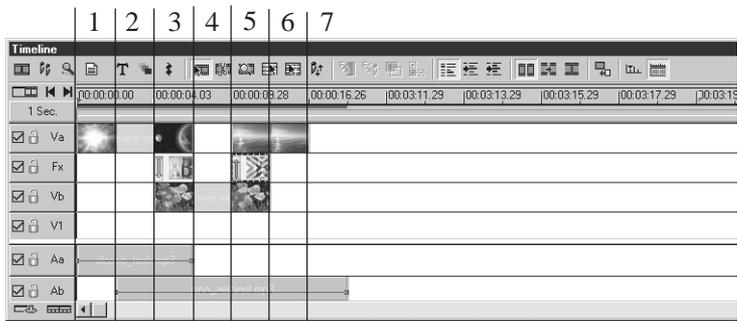
In the Summary Timeline mode, you get an overall picture of the whole project similar to a storyboard. Clips are displayed in similar thumbnail sizes regardless of the clip's actual time length making it easier to select it. The number of thumbnails you will see will depend on the number of segments your project has. The numbers on the illustration below display an example of what segments are in a project Timeline.

You can toggle between these two modes by clicking the corresponding button or selecting the mode from the **Window** menu.

*General and Summary Timeline mode buttons*



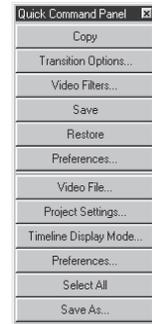
*General Timeline view*



*Summary Timeline view*

## Using the Quick Command Panel

Open the Quick Command Panel by clicking **View: Toolbars & Panels** and selecting the **Quick Command Panel** option. (You can also open it by right-clicking over any toolbar or panel.) The Quick Command Panel's advantage over the Menu bar is that you can select and put frequently used commands on the panel for more convenient access, as well as move and resize the panel so that it is always close at hand.



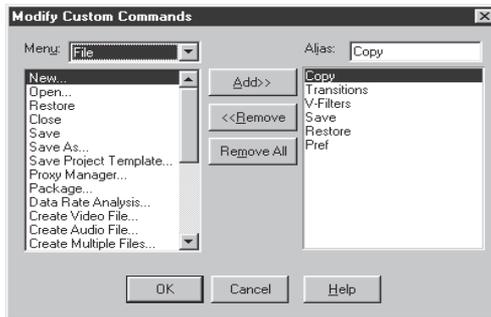
*Quick Command Panel*

To determine how many commands appear in the Quick Command Panel, right-click the title bar of the Quick Command Panel and select the **Layout Options** command. In the dialog box that opens, you can specify the number of commands to appear in custom and cache areas. The custom area displays commands you specifically insert into the panel while the cache area automatically tracks the last commands you have used. Selecting the **Save when program closes** option saves your changes whenever you quit Video Editor. Leave this clear if you want to save the current configuration.

**Note:** *Custom commands appear at the top of the Quick Command Panel: Cache commands at the bottom.*

### *To add commands to the Quick Command panel:*

1. Right-click on the title bar of the **Quick Command Panel**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Select an item from the **Menu** list and then select a specific command from the left hand side. All of the commands associated with that menu appear in the list box below it.
4. Click **Add** to place the command on the Quick Command Panel.
5. Click **OK** to finish.



Modify Custom Commands dialog box

**Note:** You can give a menu command an alias by selecting it and then typing in a new name in the **Alias** entry box. For example, 'Video Editor File Preferences' can be written as 'VE Pref'. This is useful if you resize the Quick Command Panel and find that menu command names are hidden.



## Inserting Ulead video file types

MediaStudio Pro supports a number of proprietary file formats for use with the MediaStudio Pro suite of programs. These are Ulead Image Sequence (\*.UIS), Ulead CG Infinity (\*.UCG) and Ulead Video Paint (\*.UVP). You can insert these files into the Timeline whenever you open the **Insert Video File** dialog box and choose their respective file types from the **Files of type** list. It is always best to insert the actual project files for any projects you have created in one of these other programs as they have not been rendered or compressed in any way and thus maintain the highest quality.

## Inserting UIS files

The UIS file type is a special format that allows you to select a sequence of images to be loaded into a video project with the **Insert Video File** command. These images can be from any source, such as animation target files or even a hand drawn series of images created in a drawing program. The only restriction is that these files must have consecutively numbered file names, such as VID0001.TGA, VID0002.TGA, VID0003.TGA and so on.

**Note:** For details on how to insert a Ulead Image Sequence, see the online Help in Video Editor. Any image sequence can easily be converted to a UIS by using the **File: Convert** command.

## Converting files

---

There are many cases where you might want to convert video files to a different format. You can use Video Editor as a quick conversion tool without even opening a video file into a specific project.

*To convert a video file to another format:*

**1. Click File: Convert: Video File.**

**Note:** You can convert AVI, MOV, MPG and animation files such as FLI, FLC and FLX as well as Ulead's own UCG, UIS, and UVP files.

- 2.** Select the file to convert and click **Open**. The dialog box changes to the **Select Destination Video File** dialog box.
- 3.** Enter a file name, select the file type, and choose a destination for the converted file.
- 4.** Click the **Options** button to set the attributes for the converted file.
- 5.** Click **Save**.

### Smart Check & Convert

**Smart Check & Convert** is related to the above procedure but is specifically designed to bring video files in line with a project's settings. Since your project's settings determine the final movie's format, any clips you have inserted that are different from this final format will need to be re-rendered. This time consuming process will be repeated every time you render your movie. You can save time by converting the source clips early in the project.

*To convert a project:*

- 1.** Click **File: Smart - Smart Check & Convert**. Files that may need to be converted are listed in the **Non-optimized file list**.
- 2.** Select a file to see which of its properties are inconsistent with the project's settings.

3. Select the files you want to convert. Use the [SHIFT] and [CTRL] keys to select multiple files. Click **Convert**.

**Note:** Select **Save in current folder** to automatically overwrite the old files with the newly converted ones.

The process of converting these files could take some time, but it is a one-time render and will save you time in the long run.

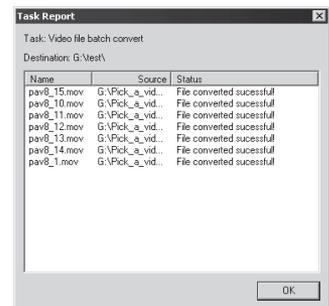
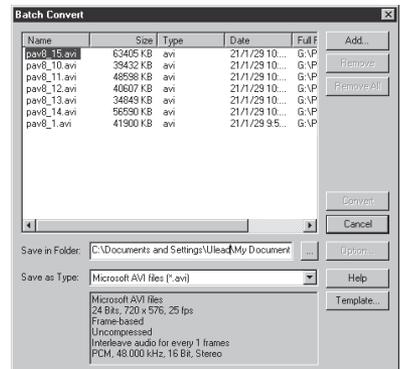
## Batch Convert

Batch Convert allows you to simultaneously convert a large number of files to another format.

### To do Batch Convert:

1. Select **File: Convert - Batch Convert**.
2. Choose the files you want to convert then click **Add**.
3. Select an output folder in **Save in Folder**.
4. Click **Convert**. A window showing the converting progress will appear. Wait until it closes.
5. The result is shown in the **Task Report** dialog box. Click **OK** to finish.

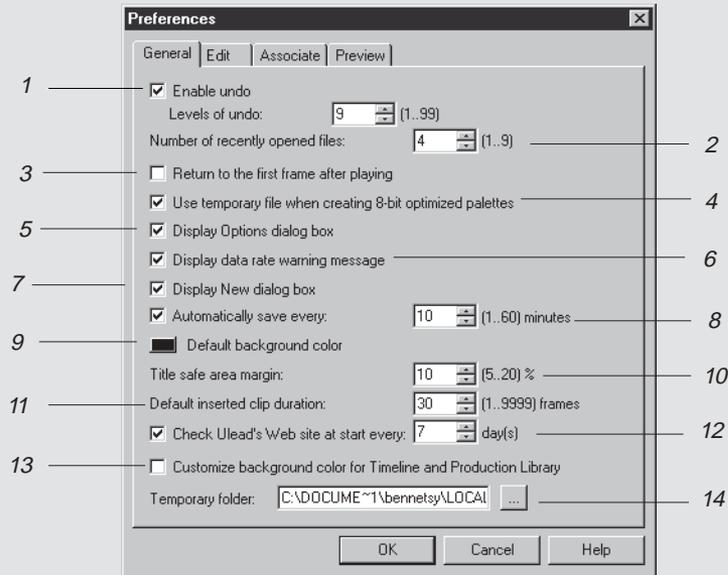
**Tip:** You can save the files you want to convert directly inside the **Production Library**. To save, select **Options** in the **Batch Convert** dialog box then select **Save to Library** in the **Library** tab.



## Customizing Video Editor

The **Preferences** dialog box (double-click the Status bar or click **File: Preferences [F6]**) provides options for customizing certain aspects of Video Editor's behavior. Understanding these options will improve the way you work with Video Editor as well as help optimize Video Editor for each project. The following pages offer explanations for the many options you have in Preferences to customize Video Editor.

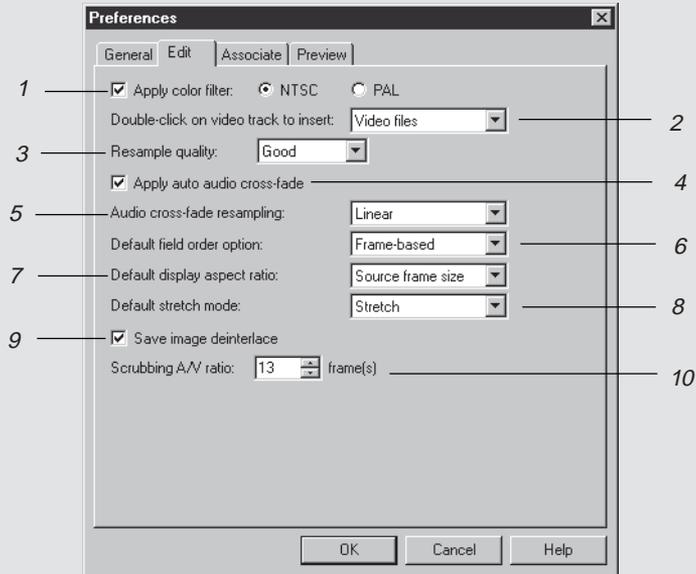
### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: GENERAL TAB



1. **Enable undo** specifies the maximum levels of undo/redo allowed by Video Editor (up to 99). As Video Editor allocates more memory for each level of undo/redo, you may find that too high a level adversely affects performance. In such cases, restrict the level to 3-4 only. You can, of course, choose not to have undo/redo to maximize performance, but any editing done will be final.
2. **Number of recently opened files** specifies how many file names are stored in the Recent History list found on the File menu.
3. **Return to the first frame after playing** returns any sequence in the Source and Preview windows to the first frame after it has been played (like a CD player). When left cleared, the sequence stops on the last frame in the sequence after playing (like coming to the end of a tape in a VCR).
4. **Use temporary file when creating 8-bit optimized palettes** uses a temporary file whenever you create an optimized palette for Indexed-Color video. This option speeds up the creation process significantly and should be selected whenever you plan on creating Indexed-Color video files.
5. **Display Options dialog box** opens the Options dialog box for any video filter, transition effect, audio filter, or moving path dropped directly into the Timeline from the Production Library.
6. **Display data rate warning message** halts the creation process of any video file once it exceeds the specified data rate. Leave this cleared if the data rate is not important or you are creating video files unattended and do not want the creation process to be stopped.
7. **Display New dialog box** opens the New dialog box whenever the New button or File: New command is clicked. If left cleared, any new video project is automatically created based on the attributes of the current Project. If you often create video projects using the same attributes then leave this option clear.
8. **Automatically save every** automatically saves the video project at the time interval specified.
9. **Default background color** sets the default background color for any color clips.
10. **Title safe area margin** specifies the margin percentage for displaying any titles in a video project. This is useful if you intend on sending your video back out to video tape or for broadcasting, as television has a different resolution than a computer monitor, and edges which are viewable on screen may disappear. As a guideline, for NTSC devices choose 12%, for PAL 10%.
11. **Default inserted clip duration** specifies the duration for any clips loaded into the Timeline (such as title clips) which do not have a predefined duration. As a guideline, set this to the number of frames for each second, such as 29.97 or 25 (NTSC, PAL respectively).

- 12. Check Ulead's Web site at start of every \_ day(s)** automatically checks Ulead Web site at a specified number of days interval for product news and updates.
- 13. Customize background color for Timeline and Production Library** makes the background color of the Timeline and Production Library similar to the background color of the Source and Preview windows.
- 14. Temporary folder** defines the folder that Video Editor uses as a temporary workspace for compiling, compressing, or decompressing files. By assigning a temporary folder for these types of operations you prevent Video Editor from using the default hard drive folder. This will minimize the chances of Video Editor interfering with other processes your computer may be running in the background.

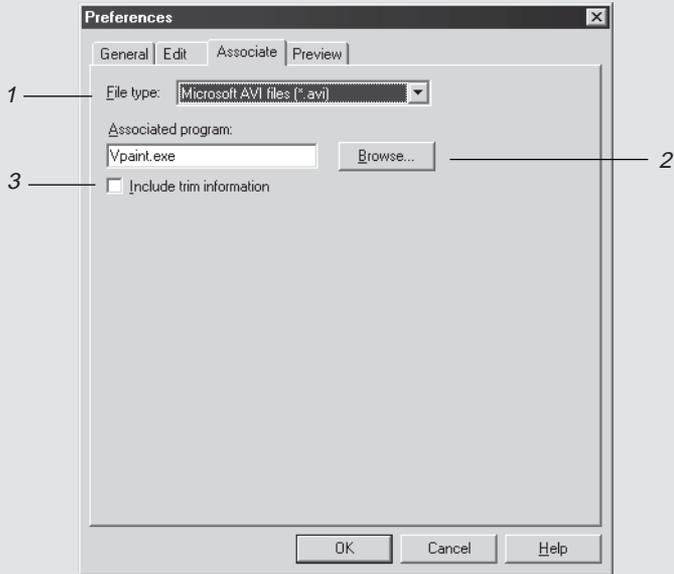
#### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: EDIT TAB



- 1. Apply color filter** allows you to control how colors are displayed in Video Editor, based on the NTSC or PAL color models. Select the appropriate option if you plan on having your video played back over an NTSC or PAL device such as a television. If you are designing for monitor display only, leave this option clear.

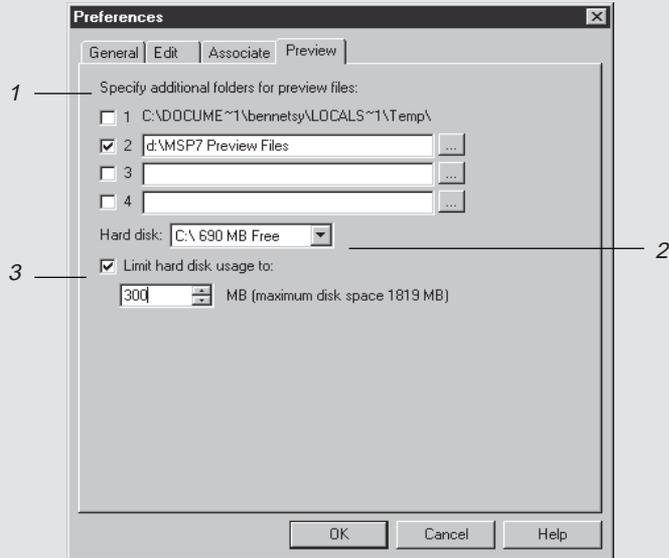
2. **Double-click on video track to insert** determines whether to open the *Insert Video File* dialog box or the *Insert Image File* dialog box whenever you double-click on an empty portion of a video track.
3. **Resample quality** allows you to set the quality of any video data resampling. *Best* quality results in better video reproduction, but takes longer to render. *Good* quality will give you faster previews. If you are preparing for final output and are using the original source files, select *Best*.
4. **Apply auto audio cross-fade** select to automatically apply a fade in/fade out audio effect between overlapping video clips when using *A/B Roll*.
5. **Auto cross-fade resampling** choose the audio fading algorithm to be used for audio cross-fade. *Logarithmic* requires longer processing time but produces smoother audio fading than *Linear*.
6. **Default field order option** choose the default field options for the selected video clips whose field options are unknown. *Field-based* video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, select *Frame-based*.
7. **Default display aspect ratio** choose the default display aspect ratio for the selected video clips whose display aspect ratio is unknown.
8. **Default stretch mode** choose how you want your video to be displayed in the *Preview Window*. Select *Stretch* to extend your video to fill out the entire frame without keeping the aspect ratio. *Keep aspect ratio (with letterbox)* fits the entire video into the *Preview Window* while *Keep aspect ratio (no letterbox)* keeps the video proportioned and crops the areas that exceeds the *Preview Window*.
9. **Save image deinterlace** allows you to save image files and at the same time eliminates the blinking effect from images derived from interlaced video output.
10. **Scrubbing A/V ratio** specify how many audio/video frames will be played per scrub.

## PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: ASSOCIATE TAB



1. **File type** specifies the type of file (such as AVI or WAV) you want to associate with a program.
2. **Associated program** indicates the program to open whenever the *Edit: Open in Associated Program* command is selected.
3. **Include trim information** allows a video clip opened in the associated program to display any marked portions that you have created in Video Editor.

## PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: PREVIEW TAB



1. **Specify additional folders for preview files** indicates which folder Video Editor can use to save preview files. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.
2. **Hard disk** displays how much free space you have left on your hard drive.
3. **Limit hard disk usage to** specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for Video Editor's purposes. If you are only using Video Editor and want to optimize performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to about half. If left clear, Video Editor uses your system's memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- Customize video projects with self-created templates (see page 119).
- Understanding display aspect ratio (see page 121).
- Use the **Production Library** to store regularly used clips as well as access effects and filters (see page 123).
- Place clips into the **Storyboard** folder of the Production Library for storyboarding before inserting into the Timeline (see page 124).
- Edit a **thumbnail** in the **Production Library** (see page 127).
- Insert **video**, **audio**, and **image clips** into the Timeline (see page 127).
- Insert **color**, **title**, and **silence clips** into the Timeline (see page 128).
- Control the display of the clips with **Display Mode** (see page 134).
- Zoom in and out of clips using the **Ruler Unit** button and the **Zoom** button (see page 135).
- Use the **General Timeline mode** to view all clips and corresponding timecodes. Switch to the **Summary Timeline mode** to view all clips in a project, thus giving a general picture of your whole storyboard (see page 137).
- Use the **Quick Command Panel** for frequently used tasks (see page 138)
- **Convert** video files into other formats and make video files consistent with the project settings (see page 140).
- Customize Video Editor and set memory options in the **Preferences** dialog box to increase performance (see page 142).

# Editing clips

*Frame accurate editing and drag-and-drop simplicity is what digital video is all about. This is the heart of MediaStudio Pro, and this chapter is the most important section in this book.*

### ***In this chapter you will learn:***

- *Making selections in the Timeline* ..... p. 150
- *Working with clips* ..... p. 153
- *Working with cues* ..... p. 160
- *Locating clips* ..... p. 162
- *Trimming clips* ..... p. 163
- *Ripple Editing* ..... p. 167
- *Using the Source window* ..... p. 170
- *Previewing your work* ..... p. 174

## Making selections in the Timeline

In order to edit clips, you must first select them. This can be as easy as clicking on a clip, but more advanced techniques can be very useful. There are two types of selections that you can make: **clip-based** and **time-based**. **Clip-based** selections are horizontal, moving left, and right across tracks, whereas **time-based** selections are vertical, encompassing all clips in all tracks within the selected duration. You can make selections in Video Editor using either the **Clip** or **Time Selection** tools.



### Using the Clip Selection tool

The Clip Selection tool allows you to select clips in any of the tracks in the Timeline. You can select individual clips by clicking them. Once you have selected a clip, you can move it or drag on its borders to trim the clip.

To select all the clips in a particular track, click the **Track** button on the left side of the track. If you want to select all the clips in the Timeline, select **Edit: Select: All [CTRL+L]**.



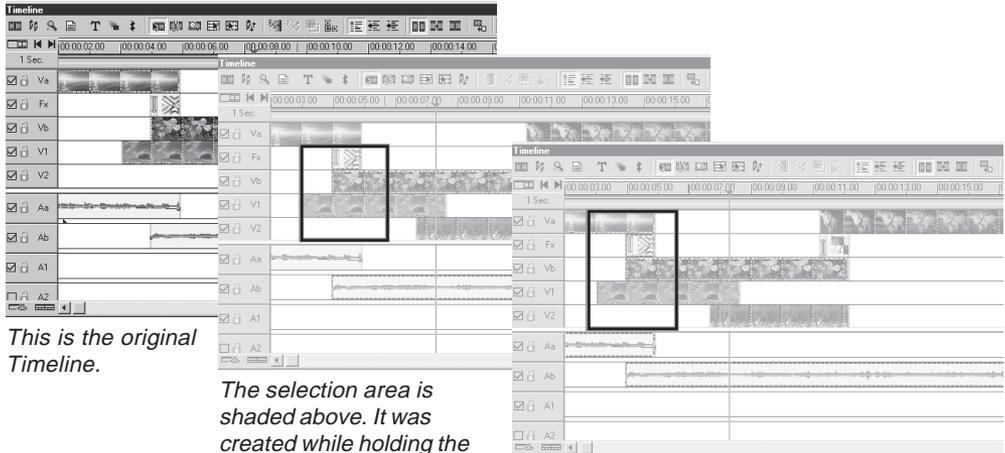
*Select a clip by clicking on it. Select a track by clicking the track button*

#### *To select multiple clips:*

1. Select the **Clip Selection** tool.
2. Press and hold the [SHIFT] key on your keyboard.
3. Click and drag in the **Video** or **Audio** (but not both) Timeline to make a selection.
4. Any clips included (in whole or in part) in the selection area will be selected when you release the mouse button.

#### **Notes:**

- The corresponding audio is automatically selected for video clips that have audio.
- Hold down the [CTRL+SHIFT] keys while creating a selection area to also select any audio clips on the related audio tracks. For example, when selecting a video clip on Va, any audio clip on Aa will also be selected (see the next page).



*This is the original Timeline.*

*The selection area is shaded above. It was created while holding the [CTRL+SHIFT] keys and extends across Fx, Vb, and V1-V2. Note that the audio clip in Aa is not selected.*

*The shaded selection area in this example includes Va and therefore includes the audio in Aa. Also note that if part of the clip is included in the selection area, the entire clip is selected.*

Once you have selected the clips, you can group them together so that they remain as a unit (see page 153).



## Using the Time Selection tool

The Time Selection tool allows you to select a period of time, including any clips (or portions of clips) that occur within that time period.

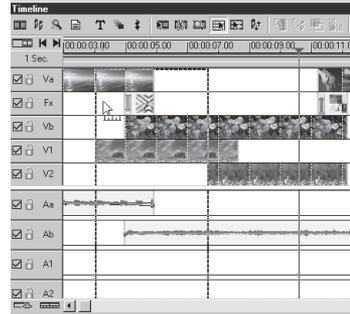
### *To perform a time selection:*



1. Select the **Time Selection** tool. The pointer now has a Timeline icon under it when placed over the Timeline.
2. Drag your mouse over the area of the Timeline you want to select.

If you need to select a period of time more precisely, you can manually enter the exact location by selecting the **Time Selection** tool, and then clicking **Edit: Time Selection**. Choosing this command opens the **Time Selection**

dialog box where you can specify the duration. The **Mark-in** time corresponds to the start of the selection area and the **Mark-out** time the end of the selection area. Click **OK** to automatically create a selection marquee over the specified area of the Timeline.



*Selecting a period of time*

**Note:** *If a time selection includes part of a set of grouped clips, the selection is adjusted to include all the clips in the group.*



## Using the Track Selection tool

The Track Selection tool is useful when you want to select entire tracks or parts of tracks.

*To select a track or part of a track with the Track Selection tool:*

1. Click the **Track Selection** tool on the Timeline toolbar.
2. Click on a clip. The clip, along with the rest of the track to the right of the clip, is selected. Therefore, if you click on the first clip in a track you will then select the entire track.

**Note:** *If you press [SHIFT] while clicking on a clip, you will select all clips in all of the tracks in the Timeline to the right of the clip.*

## Using the Track buttons



### Enable or Disable track button

When this is disabled, the track will not show up in a preview. That is, it is temporarily hidden. By default it is enabled.



### Lock or Unlock track button

When a track is locked, the clips cannot be moved or edited. You can lock individual clips by first selecting a clip and then select **Edit: Lock**.

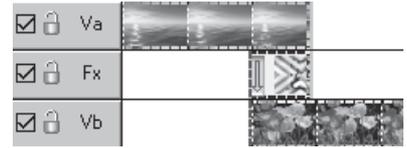


### Track name button

When this button is pressed, all the clips on the track are selected.

## Grouping clips

As your project becomes more and more complex, it may be useful to group some clips together so that they may be moved around as a unit.



*Grouping clips*

### *To group clips:*

1. Select the clips by pressing [**SHIFT**] while dragging over clips to be included (see page 158).
2. Click **Edit: Group** (to ungroup click **Edit: Ungroup**).

Additional clips can be added to the group by selecting the group and then the new clip. Different groups of clips can also be grouped into a higher level group, that is, groups of clips can be grouped together.

**Note:** All actions performed to any grouped clip will affect all of the clips in the group.



## Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master. The next few pages cover the basics: cutting, copying, pasting, and trimming.

### *To cut or copy a selected clip (to the Clipboard):*

- Click either the **Cut** or **Copy** button on the Standard toolbar.
- Select either the **Edit: Cut** or **Copy** command.
- Hold down [**CTRL**] and drag the clip to a different location.
- Use the keyboard shortcuts: **Cut** [**CTRL+X**] or **Copy** [**CTRL+C**].
- Right-click the clip and select **Cut** or **Copy** from the pop-up menu.

**Note:** Cutting a clip removes it from its original location and pasting then transfers it to your designated location. Copying leaves the original clip in place, and pasting then effectively duplicates it. You can use the Cut and Copy commands to transfer a clip to a different project. The Production Library contains copies of your clips. You can drag a clip from the Production Library to the Timeline as many times as you need to.

***To paste a clip (from the Clipboard):***

- Click the **Paste** button.
- From the **Edit** menu, select **Paste [CTRL+V]**.
- Right-click and select **Paste**.

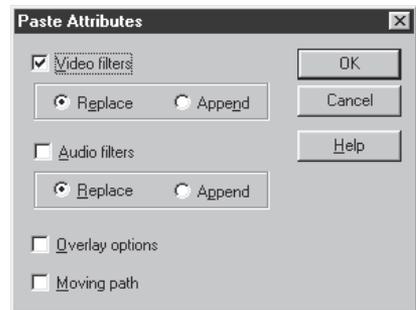
After performing one of the above actions you will have to click on the location where you want to paste the clip.

**Pasting attributes**

Sometimes you may want to paste only the attributes (Video Filters, Audio Filters, Overlay Options, and Moving Paths) of one clip to another. This is a very powerful technique that allows you to maintain perfect consistency between clips.

***To paste the attributes of a clip only:***

1. Select the clip.
2. Right-click the clip (or use the **Edit: Paste Attributes** command).
3. From the drop-down menu, select **Paste Attributes**.



*Paste Attributes dialog box*

This will open the **Paste Attributes** dialog box which allows you to select individual attributes to paste. When pasting filters, there are two additional options: **Append** and **Replace**. **Append** adds the new filters to any existing filters and **Replace** overwrites any existing filters with those from the pasted clip.

***To clear (remove) a clip from the Timeline:***

1. Select a clip (or a period of time) on the Timeline.
2. Click **Edit: Clear [DELETE]** or right-click the selected clip and click **Clear**.

**Notes:**

- *This does not affect the source files in any way.*
- *If clearing a period of time, any clips that are included in the time selection are removed. (Clips partially selected are trimmed to the selection boundary.)*
- *If you do not want to create an empty clip or time slot, make sure that the Single-Track or Multi-Track Ripple Editing button on the Timeline toolbar is selected (see page 167). The next time you use the Clear command any following clips will move backward to the left to occupy the vacated space.*

## Snapping to clips

Snapping helps to place clips together precisely and effortlessly. Select **Edit: Snap** to make clips snap to the edge of other clips, transitions, and even project cues (for more on cues, see page 160).

## Splitting the audio from video clips

Video clips commonly also have audio. On the Timeline, the accompanying audio clip is placed into the corresponding audio track (Va with Aa, Vb with Ab) and the two clips are locked together as a unit. To delete or move either of the clips separately, the two must first be **split**. This is useful when you are creating a music video and the audio track is not needed. You will also need to split the audio from a video clip in order to perform a **freeze frame** effect (see page 157).

### *To split the audio from video clips:*

1. Select the clip.
2. Click **Clip: Split** (or right-click a selected clip and, from the pop-up menu, select **Split**).

**Note:** *To reunite clips select **Unite**. For the two clips to be successfully reunited they need to be of exactly the same duration and in corresponding positions in the Timeline. This command is therefore usually limited to clips that were previously joined and then split.*

## Changing the speed of clips

After splitting the audio from a video clip, click **Clip: Speed** (or right-click the clip and select **Speed**) to alter how fast a video plays back and creates fast and slow motion effects. Increasing the speed of a clip gives it a shorter duration, while decreasing the speed makes it longer.

## Reversing the frames of a clip

Click **Clip: Reverse** (the **Reverse** command can also be accessed by right-clicking the clip) to reverse the position of the frames in a clip and create a backwards effect. Any audio accompanying the clip will also be reversed.

## Relinking clips

Whenever you open a project, Video Editor performs a cross-check between the clips in the project and their associated source files. If the source files are missing, the **Relink** dialog box opens prompting you to relink the clips by browsing for the correct folder or folders.

MediaStudio Pro includes a feature that works completely transparent (meaning that you won't even notice it), called **Smart Relink**. If you have moved your files to another drive or folder, but have basically maintained their positions relative to one another, Smart Relink will automatically find all of the clips in the project that have missing file links and locate the rest of the source files. This can be a huge time saver.

If you choose the **Ignore** button in the Relink dialog box, the clips on the Timeline appear blacked out. You can still work with them, but you won't be able to create previews or final video files.

Another way of relinking source files to their clips is by clicking **Search: Find Unlinked Clips**. The dialog box that opens displays a list of the missing source files, their associated file names, as well as options to relink, delete, or go to the clip on the Timeline in question. If you choose to relink, the **Relink Video File** dialog box opens allowing you to browse for the missing files.

## Calibrating video clips

If you have captured or inserted a video file whose colors you were unable to properly calibrate (adjust) in Video Capture, you can do so directly from Video Editor with the **Clip: Color Calibration** command (or right-click the clip and select **Color Calibration**). This method uses Video

Editor as a post production tool to adjust the color. To properly use the Color calibration command, your video file needs to have a color bar test pattern which was created by the video source, and included with the file at the time of capture, otherwise this command has no benefit.

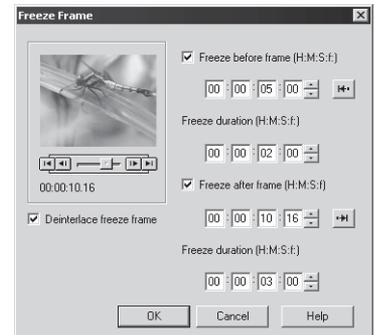
**Note:** For more on color calibration, see the Video Capture section, "Calibrating your display", page 79.

## Freezing a frame

A common technique in video editing is freezing a frame during playback. In Video Editor this is done by selecting **Clip: Freeze Frame**.

### *To freeze a frame during playback:*

1. Select a clip and then split the audio from the video (see page 155).
2. Right-click the clip and select **Freeze Frame**. The Freeze Frame dialog box opens.
3. Use the slider under the Preview window to find the frame you want to freeze.
4. Check **Freeze before frame** or **Freeze after frame**, or both, and then click the corresponding arrow button. You can also directly enter the timecode and set it as the frame to freeze. (See notes on the next page for details.)
5. Enter how long you want the selected frames to be "frozen" in **Freeze duration**.
6. Click **OK**.



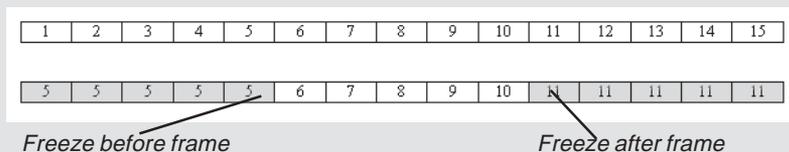
**Tip:** If your video file is field-based, select **De-interlace freeze frame** to produce better video quality.

If you need to edit the freeze frame attributes, select then right-click the clip and choose **Freeze Frame** from the pop-up menu. If you only need to change the freeze duration, you can press [SHIFT] and drag the end of the video clip in the Timeline.

**Notes:**

- **Freeze before frame.** When the clip is played back, it will "freeze" on the designated frame from the beginning of the clip, up to and including the frame itself, and then resume normal playback.
- **Freeze after frame.** When the clip is played back, it will playback normally until it comes to the designated frame and then "freeze" to the end of the clip.

If both boxes are checked, the clip will freeze both before a particular frame and after a particular frame. See the illustration below for an example.



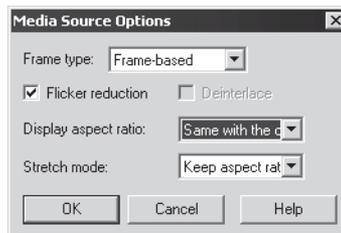
In the above illustration, the top row represents a normal clip of fifteen frames. In the second row, **Freeze before frame** was selected and frame 5 was frozen. Frame 5 is then repeated (frozen) until frame 6 is reached. Normal playback resumes. **Freeze after frame** was also selected with the value of 11, and the frame is repeated (frozen) until the end of the clip. So this clip freezes at two different points. If you want to freeze more frames within this one clip, you must first use the Scissors tool to cut your clip into separate clips (see page 165).

## Setting field options for video clips

Video Editor allows you to work with both field-based and frame-based video files. **Field-based** video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. This allows the video to play back flicker free on a television which interlaces both of these fields in odd/even scan lines. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as **frame-based**.

*To specify the type of video you are working with:*

1. Select the clip.
2. Select **Clip: Media Source Options**. (Right-click the clip and from the pop-up menu, select **Media Source Options**.) This will open the **Media Source Options** dialog box.



If you are working on frame-based video, select the **Frame-based** option in the Frame type list. For field-based video, select either the **Field Order A** or **Field Order B** options. Exactly which one depends on the type of video capture board used to digitize the original video. (For more information, see the documentation accompanying your video capture board.) If you cannot determine the correct order, switch between the two and render a section of your movie to see which gives you the best results.

If your video was originally field-based but you are editing the video as frame-based, select the **Deinterlace** option. This helps combine the two fields into one frame. For frame-based video which you are editing as field-based, select the **Flicker reduction** option to help Video Editor create the two fields necessary for each frame. This may require some initial experimentation, and may only be apparent when you output your movie to video tape. Click **OK** when you are done setting the options.

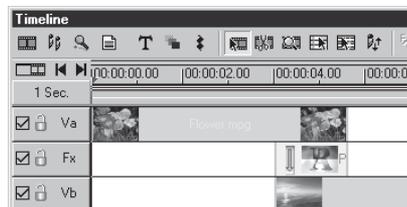
#### Notes:

- *Display aspect ratio may be disabled if Perform non-square pixel rendering is not selected in Project Settings or if the video clip has a ratio of 16:9 or 4:3.*
- *If you already determined the aspect ratio settings in the Preferences dialog box, you don't need to change the aspect ratio again in the Media Source Options dialog box unless you want to use a different aspect ratio for a particular video clip.*

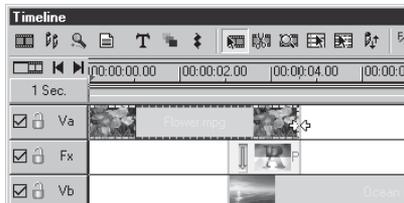


## Using A/B Roll Editing mode

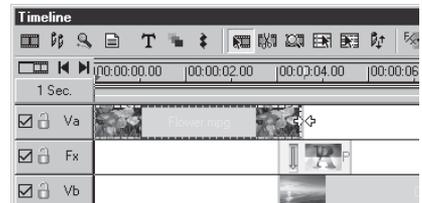
Use the A/B Roll Editing mode in the Timeline to automatically adjust the length of your transition effect when trimming or moving your clips.



*Clips on A/B roll*



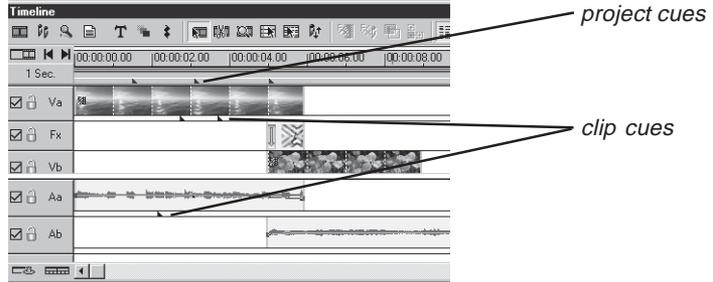
*Va track clip trimmed in A/B Roll Editing mode*



*Va track clip trimmed not in A/B Roll Editing mode*

## Working with cues

Cues are simply bookmarks for your video project. As your projects get larger and more complex, you can use cues to quickly jump from one place to another, or mark the location of a particular event. You can name the cues and add descriptions. Cues can be added to the Timeline as a whole (**project cues**) or to individual clips (**clip cues**).



*Cue Markers on the Timeline*

### Placing project cues

You can place cues either directly on the cue bar or in the Preview Window.

#### *To place a project cue on the cue bar:*



1. Move the pointer to the cue bar (the bottom part of the ruler). The cursor changes to the **cue cursor**.
2. Click on the appropriate location on the Timeline. A triangular blue **cue marker** appears on the cue bar.



*Setting cues*

*To place a project cue using the Preview window:*

1. Click **Play** [ENTER] to preview the project in the Preview window or use the **Navigation bar** to move to the place where you want to add a cue.
2. Press [F5] on your keyboard when you want to add a cue (or click the **Menu** button and choose **Add/Delete Cue**).
3. Cues (blue triangles) appear on the Timeline Cue bar.

**Note:** See *Placing clip cues below* for how to place clip cues from the Source window.

The default name of the clip (the variable **&p**) is the location of the cue on the Timeline. For example, the default name of a cue at the 1 minute, 30 second point would be '01:30:00'. Right-click a cue to view its name. If you wish to move a cue, drag it to a new location. To remove a cue, drag it off the edges of the Timeline. Click **View: Cue Manager** to delete cues, rename them or jump to a specific cue.

**Placing clip cues**

You can also place cues on individual clips. In this case, the cues are black and appear on the Timeline immediately below the clip. These cues cannot be named but can be used as navigation points in the Source window by clicking the **Next/Previous Edit Point** buttons.

*To place clip cues using the Source window:*

1. Open a clip in the **Source window** (double-click the clip or drag it to the Source Window).
2. **Play** the clip or use the **Navigation bar** to move to the place where you want to place a cue.
3. Press [F5] (or click the **Menu** button and choose **Add/Delete Cue**).
4. Continue adding cues and click the **Apply** button when finished.

*To view clip cues on the Timeline:*

1. Click **View: Timeline Display Mode** or the **Timeline Display Mode** button.
2. Select **Show cue bar** for video and/or audio tracks.

**Note:** Project cues are always visible at the top of the Timeline.

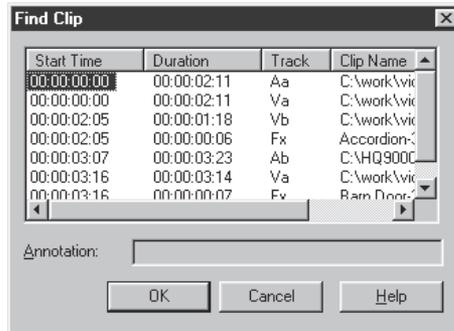
## Locating clips

You can use cues to jump to a specific location in your project instantly.

### *To locate a specific clip:*



1. Click the **Find Clip** button or **Search: Find Clip** [CTRL+F]. This displays the start time, duration, track and name of all the cues contained within the current video project.



*Find Clip dialog box*

2. To go directly to a clip, select it under **Start Time** in the list box.
3. Click **OK**.



To go to another clip from the same source file, click the **Find Next** button on the Standard toolbar or click **Search: Find Next** [F2].

**Note:** You can also use the Production Library to view all the clips in the current video project and search through text annotated to the clips.

### *To jump to a cue or a specific time:*

1. Click **Search: Go To**.
2. In the **Go To** dialog box, enter a time or select a cue.
3. Click the **To** button. The Timeline jumps to your selection with a yellow arrow pointing to the specific jump.

## Locating an empty time slot

In the course of creating a large project, you may have left blank spaces in the Timeline to fill at a later time. Click **Search: Find Empty Time Slots** to find these.

**Note:** *When you view the Find Empty Time Slot dialog box there will always be one time slot listed. This is the time slot at the end of the video project and cannot be deleted.*

## Trimming clips

Trimming and editing clips is the basis of making movies. There are a number of convenient methods for doing this in Video Editor. Each of these offers different advantages depending on the type of clip and the operations you wish to perform.



*To trim using the Clip Selection tool:*

1. Click the **Clip Selection** tool.
2. Drag the left or right border of the clip.

How far you can drag depends on the type of clip and/or its duration. For example, you cannot extend the length of a video or audio clip to exceed the duration of its source file. Image, title and color clips can be extended indefinitely. Zooming in [+]  
on the Timeline will help in trimming a clip with accuracy.



*Trimming a clip with the Clip Selection tool*

## Trimming in the Source window

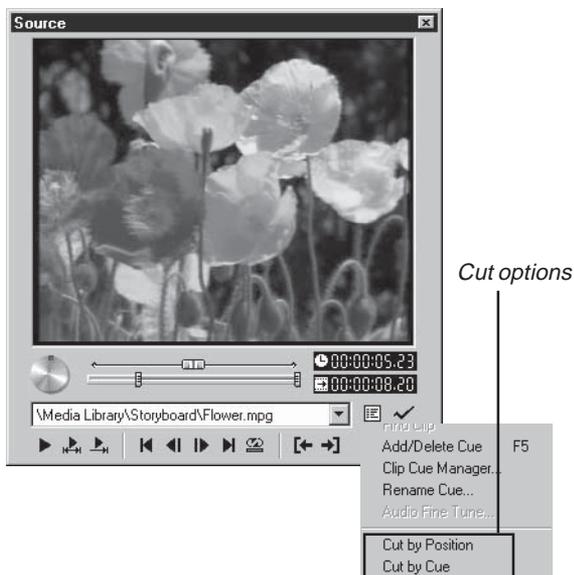
One way which you can use to trim your videos is to use the Source window.

### *To trim a video in the Source window:*

1. Double-click a video clip in the Timeline.
2. In the Source window, drag the Jog bar to the position you want as the mark-in point and then press [F3].
3. Drag the Jog bar to the position you want as the mark-out point and then press [F4].
4. Click **Apply** in the Source window.

**Tip:** Use the left-arrow or right-arrow key on your keyboard to go through your video frame by frame. Each key press moves you one frame forward or back. You can also hold down [SHIFT] and use the mouse to drag the Jog bar. This feature is particularly useful if the video clip duration is very long or you want to make precise trimming.

You can also use the Source window to cut your video clips. Video Editor gives you two options on how you can cut your video clips: **Cut by Position** and **Cut by Cue**. Cut by Position slices the video clip based on the position of the Jog bar. Cut by Cue slices the video clip based on the cue positions.



## Using the Trim window

The Trim window is the most precise method of trimming your clips, frame by frame.

*To use the Trim window:*

1. Click **View: Toolbar & Panels** and select **Trim window**.
2. Grab the edge of the clip you want to trim. The Trim window displays two frames. The clip will be trimmed between these two frames when you release the mouse button.



*Trim Window*

### Notes:

- Hold down the mouse button and use the arrow keys to move frame by frame.
- If you have the **Stitch trim** option selected only the previous frame is displayed whenever you use the Trim window.



## Using the Scissors tool to trim clips

*To cut a clip:*

1. Click the **Scissors tool** (or hold down the [s] key on your keyboard).
2. Click on the place where you want to cut the clip.

Cutting a clip breaks the clip at the pointer position, creating two separate clips that you can then move around the Timeline. If you place two previously cut clips back in their original positions you can reattach them together by clicking (with the Scissors tool selected) over the cut line.

**Note:** Hold down the [SHIFT] key on your keyboard to cut across multiple tracks.



*Cutting a clip with the Scissors tool*

## Defining trim options

While trimming is a basic operation, it does have more advanced features. The effect of trimming on neighboring clips is determined by the Trim Options. Select **Edit: Trim Options** to choose the following:



- **Normal** allows you to trim a clip only within the available free clip slot.



- **Overwrite** allows you to trim a clip so that it extends over a neighboring clip, thereby replacing the overlapped portion with the new clip (if you then trim the clip back it will still leave an empty slot).



- **Stitch** allows you to trim a clip over another, trimming the neighboring clip instead of overwriting it (if you then trim the clip back it will reveal the underlying portion of the other clip which is then "untrimmed"). This is useful if you want to merge two clips together and need to see the frames of each clip in the Trim window. (If the two clips are not adjacent you can only trim the active clip to the duration of the clip slot.)



*An example of stitching one clip over another*

## Smart Trim

The trimming procedures described on the preceding pages are completely nondestructive and do not affect the original source files in any way. While this is a major advantage to editing video on a computer, there may be times where, because of a lack of free hard disk space, you want to actually trim your source files according to your edits. From the **File** menu, select **Smart: Smart Trim**. In the dialog box that opens, you can select the clip or clips that you want to permanently alter.

## Ripple Editing

Ripple editing is a mode in Video Editor that allows you to insert clips and automatically push other clips out of the way so the new clip will fit on the Timeline.

To select a Ripple Editing mode click one of three **Ripple Editing** buttons on the Timeline toolbar or choose from the **Edit: Ripple Editing** menu list. See the next two pages for specific examples.



**No Ripple** mode means that newly inserted clips are trimmed to fit the available empty time slot.

**Note:** *When you are in No Ripple mode, select a file to Insert and hold down the [SHIFT] key while placing the clip on the Timeline. When this file is dropped on the Timeline, it will push all downstream clips in a single track out of the way. Empty spaces will NOT be preserved if the clip length fits perfectly or is longer than the available slot.*



**Single-Track Ripple** editing will move everything (including empty space) out of the way to make room for the inserted clip, but only on the target track.



**Multi-Track Ripple** editing will move everything (including empty space) out of the way to make room for the inserted clip, moving all clips (audio and transitions included) on all tracks.

### Notes:

- *With any of the Ripple Editing modes selected, you cannot trim clips toward the start of the project (frame 0), unless there is an empty clip slot for the preceding clip to occupy.*
- *Ripple Editing only has an effect when the Normal Trim option is selected.*
- *Ripple Editing has no effect when dragging clips around the Timeline. It is only enacted when inserting, trimming, cutting, clearing or pasting clips.*
- *With either Single or Multi-track Ripple mode selected, hold down the SHIFT key while inserting a clip onto an occupied slot. This will split the existing clip on the Timeline and insert your clip in between.*
- *When Ripple Editing is turned on and you delete a clip, all downstream clips move left to fill in the space vacated by the deleted clip.*

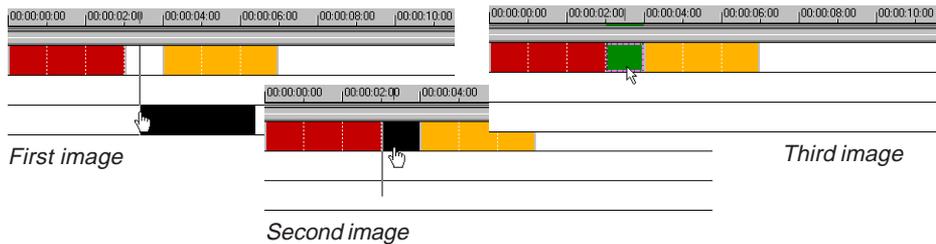
## Ripple Editing examples

The following illustrations will help you understand the sometimes complex, but extremely important and useful aspects of Ripple Editing.

**Note:** All of the following examples involve the initial insertion of a clip from outside of the Timeline. When moving already inserted clips around within the Timeline, results will differ.

### Automatically trimming an inserted clip (No Ripple)

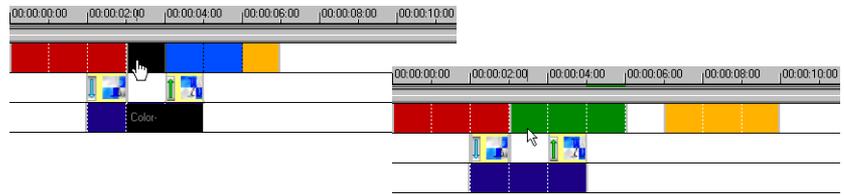
If you have a space in the Timeline between two existing clips, you can fill that space precisely with an inserted clip that will be automatically trimmed to fit the slot.



In this three clip sequence, a three second AVI (green.avi) is inserted between the red and yellow clips. In the first image, green.avi is black while it is moved into position. The second image, the clip being inserted is still black while it is being positioned, and the last image clearly shows that the inserted green clip has been trimmed to fit without altering the other clips in any way.

### Inserting a clip into a full Timeline (Ripple)

In this example, green.avi is again inserted between the red and yellow clips. This time **Single Track Ripple** is selected.



As green.avi is about to be inserted, the part that overlaps the yellow clip turns bluish. When the clip is actually inserted, the yellow clip *and the one second space* are moved to the right three seconds. In other words, the entire track is shifted, spaces and all. (If you don't want the spaces preserved, use **Push Away Insertion**. See page 131.) Note that the transitions and the blue clip are unaffected. This time **Multi-Track Ripple** is selected:



Everything downstream, including spaces, is shifted to the right three seconds. This includes transitions and clips on all of the other tracks. The entire project (to the right of the insertion point) is moved a few seconds to accommodate the new clip.

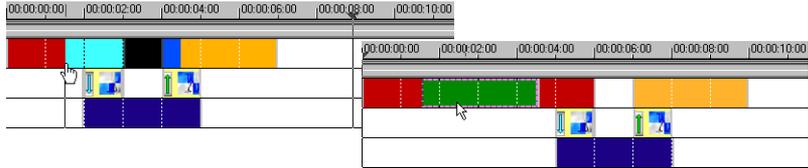
### Inserting clips into the middle of an existing clip

Clips can be inserted right into the middle of an existing clip, automatically cutting the clip at the insertion point.

*To insert a clip into another:*

1. Select **Edit: Ripple Editing: Single- or Multi-Track**.
2. Click the **Insert Video File** button.
3. In the Insert Video dialog box, select the clip you want to insert.

4. Click the **Open** button.
5. Press and hold the [SHIFT] key while clicking in the middle of the clip on the Timeline that you want to insert the new clip into.



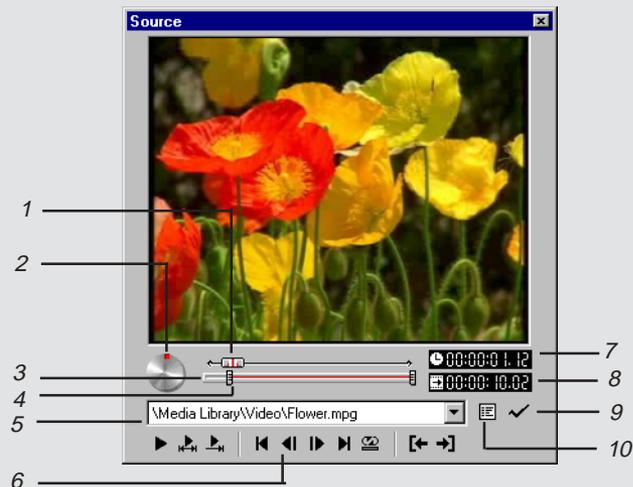
Here *green.avi* is inserted into *red.avi*. **Multi-Track Ripple** is on. In the first image, you can see where the inserted clip overlaps the existing clips. Notice how the red clip is split into two parts and the green clip is dropped into the middle. Again, the entire project (to the right of the insertion point) is shifted right three seconds.

## Using the Source window

---

The Source window is a single, integrated tool that lets you easily view the contents of any audio, video or image clip, perform trimming operations, and place clip specific cues. Clips can be dragged to and from the Source window and into the Timeline or Production Library. A quick double-click will immediately open up a clip in the Source window. The Source window itself is made visible by selecting the **Source Window** button on the Standard toolbar or by using the **Window: Source Window** command. Once a clip is opened you can use the menu list to select any other clip which you have previously opened in the Source window, listed by track and start time. The next few pages cover the Source window in more detail.

## SOURCE WINDOW



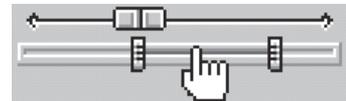
1. **Jog bar** slides back and forth to scrub the clip.
2. **Shuttle control** rotates to speed forward or backward through a video clip.
3. **Trim bar** shows the trimmed portion of the clip (between the Trim Handles).
4. **Trim handles** determine the Mark-in and Mark-out points of the trim area.
5. **Clip menu** displays, and allows you to choose, any of the clips loaded into the Source window.
6. **Navigation bar** (See details on the next page.)
7. **Current position** displays, and allows you to edit, the time of the current position of the Jog bar.
8. **Trim area** displays, and allows you to edit, the current duration of the trim area.
9. **Apply** button applies all editing done in the Source window to the clip in the Timeline.
10. **Menu** button displays several options for resizing the Source window, importing files, viewing the properties of the clip, finding the clip in the Timeline and adding, deleting, and managing cues.

## SOURCE WINDOW NAVIGATION BAR



1. **Play (Pause)** plays the entire clip from beginning to end.
2. **Play Mark Area (Pause)** plays only the trim area from Mark-in to Mark-out point.
3. **Play from the current position to Mark-out (Pause)** plays the clip from the current position of the Jog bar to the Mark-out point.
4. **Previous Edit Point** moves the Jog bar to the previous cue or the beginning of the clip.
5. **Previous Frame** moves the Jog bar to the previous frame.
6. **Next Frame** allows you to maneuver the Jog bar one frame at a time.
7. **Next Edit Point** moves the Jog bar to the previous or next cue or the end of the clip.
8. **Repeat** plays the active clip continuously.
9. **Mark-in and Mark-out** position the Trim Handles at the current location of the Jog bar and adjust the Trim Area.

When trimming videos in the Source window (see page 165), the entire trim area can be repositioned by dragging it. The Jog bar automatically slides along with while dragging on the Trim bar.

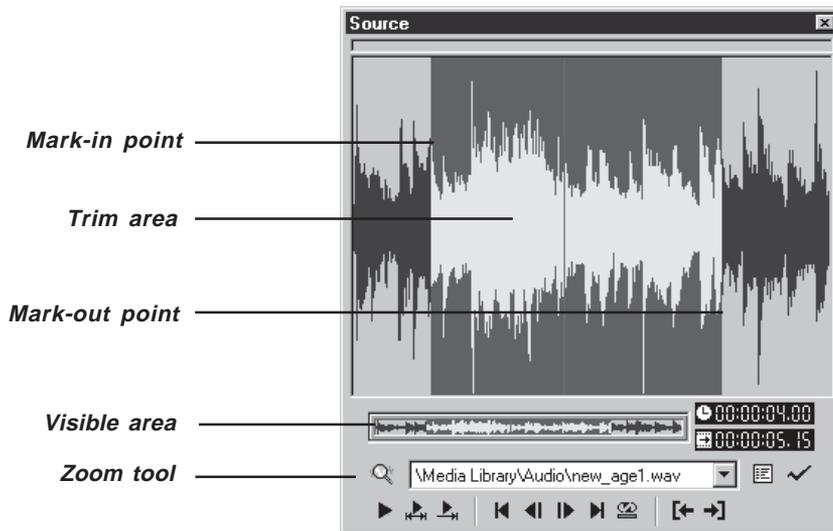


Sliding the Trim bar

The pointer will change to a hand when placed over the trim area. Use this hand to drag the two trim handles when trimming and moving the trim area as a whole. Right-click on the trim area to automatically reset both trim handles to their original positions at the beginning and end of the original clip. Both the **Current Position** display and **Trim Area** display boxes can be manually edited. Just click on the box and key in the new numbers to automatically readjust the Jog bar and/or Trim bar.

*To trim an audio clip:*

1. Place the red vertical line where you want to begin the trim selection area.
2. Select the **Mark-in** button. The unselected area changes to a blue waveform on a gray background.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 with the **Mark-out** button.
4. Click the **Apply** button. The clip on the Timeline is adjusted.

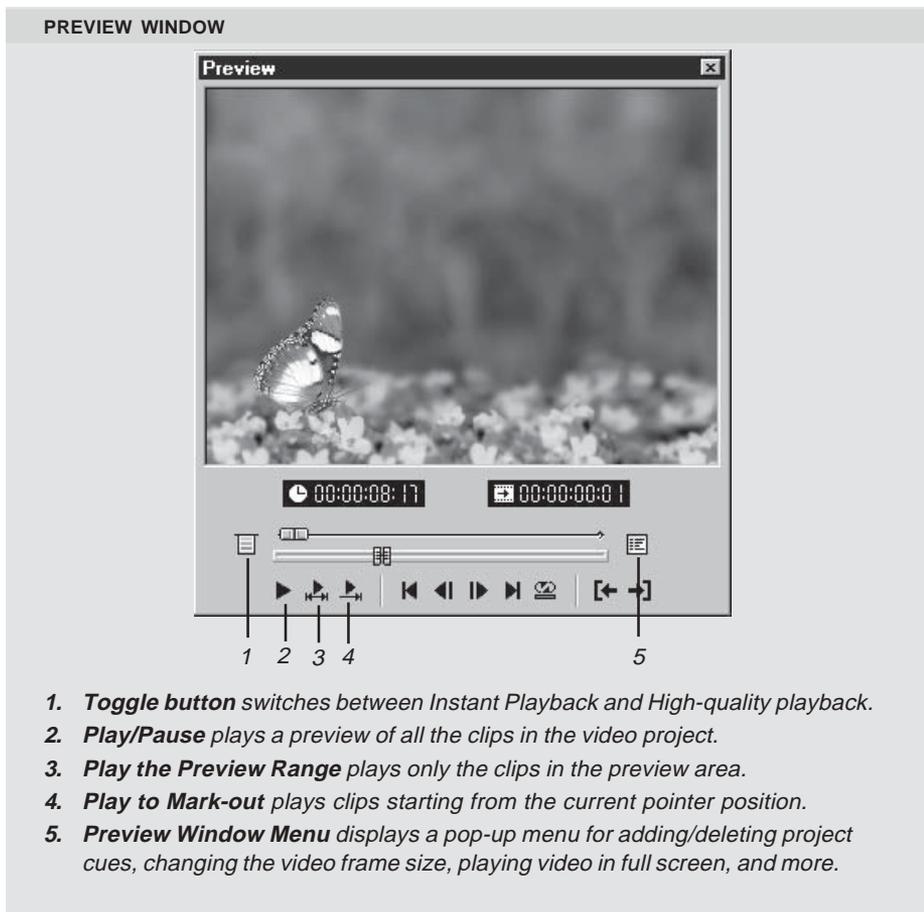


**Note:** Additional unlabeled controls are the same as the Source window for video clips (see page 170). Trimming the audio track of a clip with attached video will also trim the corresponding video track.

## Previewing your work

Video Editor allows you to see a portion of your project without performing a full save. It lets you render a small section of your project before you create your final video at the end. This way you can view a few seconds of a transition between two clips without having to take the time to render the whole thirty minute project. If your capture board supports an external monitor, you can also preview the output there.

The **Preview** window itself is very similar to the **Source** window. Where the Source window is used to view, trim and add cues to individual clips, the Preview window is used to view your project, either in full or in part, or to add project cues.



## Previewing

Video Editor offers real-time previewing for your projects. With this feature, you can instantly see how filters and effects you apply look on your video. You can then make the necessary adjustments when needed.

When you want to preview your work, press [ENTER] or click **Play** on the Preview Window. If your project is long, this could take some time. Often you will only want to preview part of your project, for example, a few seconds of a transition sequence or an overlay effect. There are three different ways to select the portion of your project you want to preview:



- Create a preview area on the Preview bar over the Timeline. The cursor appears with a little filmstrip icon under it when over the Preview bar. A blue bar indicates the period for preview. A right-click on the cue bar will delete the preview range.
- Use the Preview window to create a preview range. Use the Trim handles to define the preview range. This is also represented as a blue line, both in the Preview window and on the Preview bar above the Timeline.



- Click **Edit: Preview Range** and enter specific timecode values to define the preview area.

After selecting the preview range, click the **Play the Preview Range** [SPACE BAR] button to begin the preview. You can change the size of the Preview window by clicking on the **Preview Window Menu** button, then selecting **Frame Size List**, and choosing a predefined size from the list that appears.



## Instant Play

Instant Play lets you quickly see the changes you have made in your project in the Preview window. Simply click the Instant Play button or access it in the Preview Window Menu to enable or disable it.

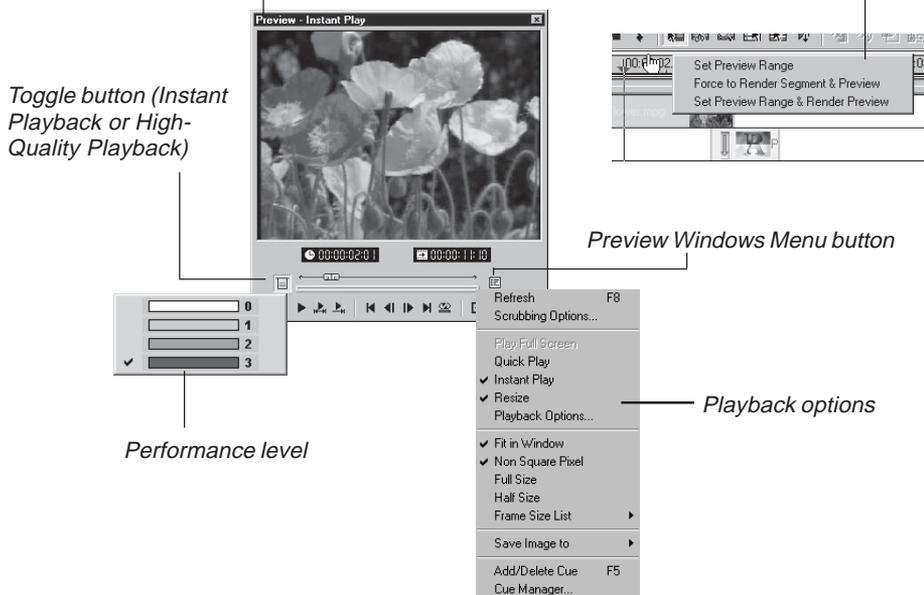
Since the complexity of a project may vary (e.g. a lot of special effects) in different segments\*, you can set the Performance Level (by right-clicking the Toggle button) to determine whether Video Editor renders a preview file or not when previewing your video clip.

Video Editor renders only when a segment's complexity level is above the performance level you set. The performance level you set should be relative to your CPU speed. The faster your CPU, the higher the performance level you should set.

\* A segment refers to a vertical stack in the Timeline.

#### Notes:

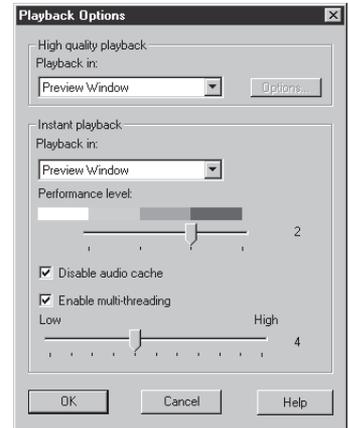
- A complexity bar is available in the Timeline to show the degree of complexity. If you want to preview a complex segment with extremely high quality, right-click on the complexity bar located below the Timescale and select **Force to Render Segment & Preview**.
- The Title bar of the Preview window displays the current play mode selected.



In addition to instant playback, Video Editor offers a variety of playback monitoring options. This feature can be accessed from **File: Playback Options** or the pop-up menu when clicking the Preview Windows Menu button.

Depending on the project settings, the display card, and the external monitor type you have, you can preview your work in the target display devices you choose. This feature is useful when you want to preview your work in the device where you will playback your project.

Toggle button to **High Quality Playback** to render the whole project before previewing. This produces better image quality and smoother transition of clips.

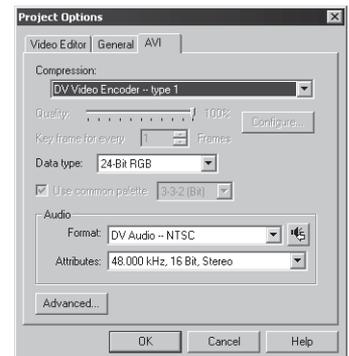


## Using DV SmartPlay

DV SmartPlay plays your project (with a DV file format templates only) directly from the Timeline out to a DV camcorder or other IEEE-1394 devices without rendering a final movie file. It also lets you view a project on an external monitor at any time.

### To use DV SmartPlay:

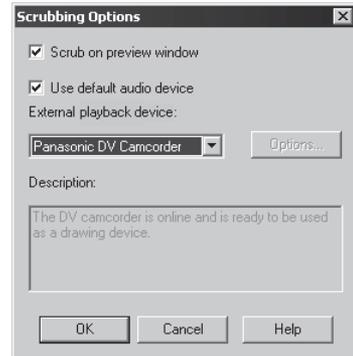
1. Select **File: Project Settings** and click **Edit**. Here, select the options corresponding to your video clip attributes. (For example, on the **AVI** tab, make sure the audio format is set to **DV Audio -- NTSC/PAL**.)
2. Connect your DV camcorder or other IEEE-1394 device to the PC and turn it on.
3. Select **File: Select Device Control** to make sure a proper device control is activated.
4. Select **File: Print to Tape - Timeline**. Here, choose Entire project or Preview range and then click **OK**.



## Performing scrub previews

You can instantly preview your video "on-the-fly" at any time. This is known as **scrubbing** and is the quickest way to get an idea of how your project is going. When you scrub, you can preview your transitions and the timing of your video, but filters and effects will not be visible unless your hardware supports them. Unlike performing a regular preview however, scrubbing an area with too many effects may not be smooth.

Before performing a scrub preview, set scrubbing preferences such as preferred preview playback source in the **Scrubbing Options** dialog box. You can access this through the Preview Window menu.



*Scrubbing Options dialog box*

### *To perform a scrub preview:*

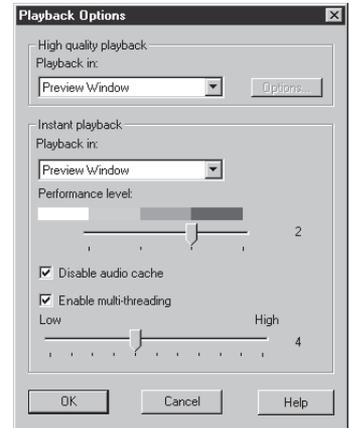


1. Move the pointer up to the top of the ruler above the Timeline. It will change to a star.
2. Drag your mouse across the top of the ruler to view your preview in the Preview window. You can also use the Jog bar to scrub from within the Preview window.



## Previewing on an external device

Preview your video and transition effects on an external device. You can use your TV (if you have a dual-head display card) and even your DV camcorder's LCD screen to preview your project. You can set the external preview viewing device for your project by selecting **File: Playback Options**. To set an external preview viewing device for your transition effects, click  in the transition effect's dialog box.

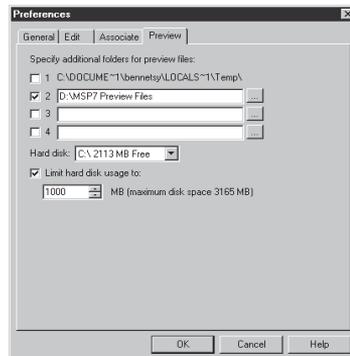


*Playback Options dialog box*

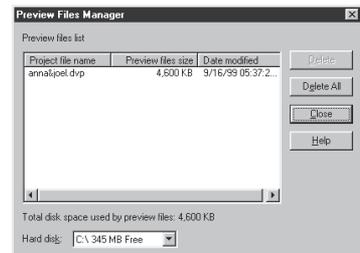
## Managing preview files

The files that are created for the preview (if high-quality playback is selected) are saved in a temporary directory that can be set from **File: Preferences** on the **Preview** tab. Preview files can take up a huge amount of disk space, so it is important to set these folders up properly. Sometimes, MediaStudio Pro will generate a "Not enough disk space" error when previewing. This error often occurs because you need to specify additional space for these files on another disk.

Specific preview files can be controlled by going to **File: Preview Files Manager**. You can see how much disk space your preview files occupy and then decide whether or not to delete them.



*Preferences dialog box: Preview tab*



*Preview Files Manager dialog box*

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- Use the **Clip Selection tool** for selecting clips (see page 150), **Time Selection tool** for selecting a period of time in the Timeline (see page 151), and **Track Selection tool** for selecting tracks (see page 152).
- **Group clips** once they are in their final positions (see page 153).
- **Copy** and **paste** an entire clip or its attributes only (see page 153).
- Select the **Edit: Snap** command to snap clips to cues or to the edges of other clips (see page 155).
- Use **cues** in the Timeline as well as the **Source window** to identify and mark areas of interest (see page 160).
- Use the **Trim window** to accurately trim clips (see page 163).
- Use the **Ripple Editing** feature when inserting clips (see page 167).
- Use the **Source window** to view the contents of a clip, trim a clip, or place cues (see page 170).
- Use **Instant Play** to quickly see the changes you have made in your project (see page 175).
- Perform **on-the-fly previews** for a quick look at your work (see page 178).

## Using effects

*From transition effects between scenes to stunning video filters and amazing animated moving paths, MediaStudio Pro has it all. Let your creativity run wild as you learn about the most fun and exciting features of Video Editor.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Using transition effects ..... p. 182*
- *Using key frame controls ..... p. 188*
- *Using a video overlay effect ..... p. 190*
- *Working with mattes ..... p. 195*
- *Applying video filters ..... p. 197*
- *Creating a moving path ..... p. 202*
- *Applying audio filters ..... p. 209*
- *Creating titles ..... p. 212*

## Using transition effects

An integral part of any video or film presentation is the transition effects used to enhance the way clips merge, fade, and cut from one scene to another. An appropriate and well placed transition effect can make your video sequence flow better and add impact to your work.

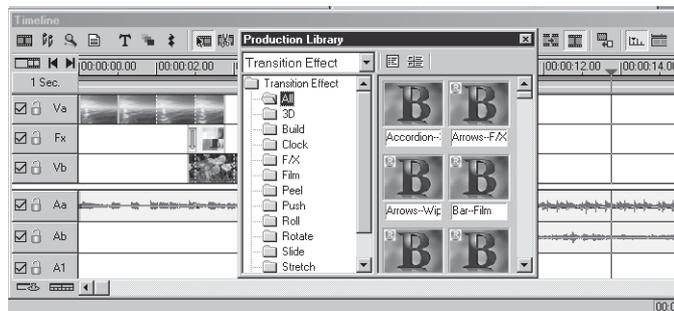
### Transition effects basics

Transition effects can only be placed into the **Fx** track of the Timeline between two overlapping clips in the **Va** and **Vb** tracks. The amount of overlap determines the duration of the effect.

#### *To apply a transition effect:*

1. Place a clip in the **Va** track and another in the **Vb** track, making sure the clips overlap a little.
2. Open the **Production Library** and select the **Transition Effect** folder to display its gallery of effects.
3. Drag-and-drop an effect to the **Fx** track between the overlapping clips.
4. The **Transition Options** dialog box appears. Click **OK** and preview.

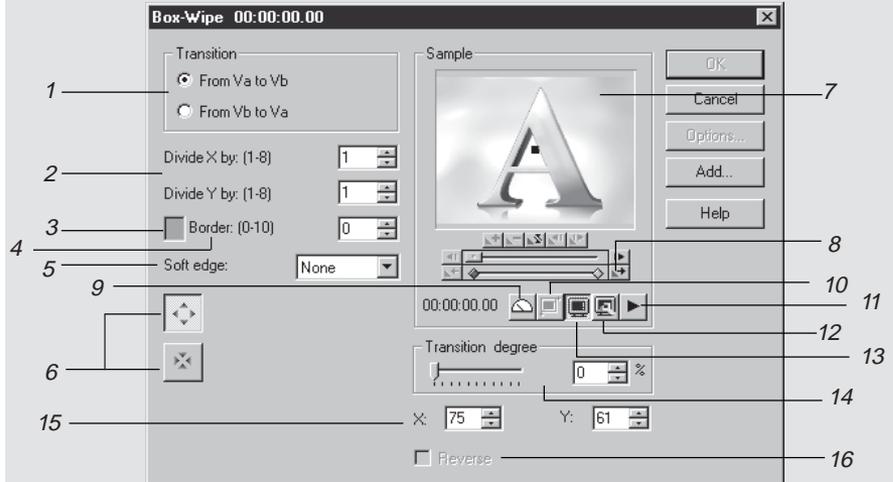
**Note:** *The Transition Effects gallery displays all the available transition effects in Video Editor. There are over one hundred transitions which are conveniently grouped into folders. Each effect is displayed as an animated thumbnail for easy identification.*



*Drag-and-drop transition effects from the Production Library to the Fx track on the Timeline*

The Transition Options dialog box is where you can customize your transitions. You can alter the speed, the direction, the border, and apply any number of little nuances to your transition with the Key frame Controller. Each effect has slightly different controls: click the Help button for details.

#### TRANSITION OPTIONS DIALOG BOX (FOR THE BOX-WIPE TRANSITION EFFECT)



1. **Transition** selects which video clip starts the transition.
2. **Divide X/Y by** divides the screen horizontally/vertically to produce duplicates.
3. **Color square** specifies the color for the border.
4. **Border** specifies the size of the border at the edge of the transition.
5. **Soft edge** softens the transition edges.
6. **Direction** buttons set the movement of the transition.
7. **Sample window** displays a preview of the selected transition.
8. **Key frame Controller** specifies the key frames at which different settings are applied to the clip.
9. **Speed control** selects the preview play speed.
10. **Show background** displays actual video in the sample window.
11. **Preview** button plays the effect with its current settings.
12. **Preview Playback Options** opens a dialog box where you can specify where to preview the filter/effect.
13. **Play in Preview Window or External Monitor** outputs the results in Video Editor's Preview and/or an external monitor.
14. **Transition degree** specifies the degree of completion at the current frame.
15. **X and Y** indicate the coordinates for the starting point of the transition.
16. **Reverse** changes the direction of the transition.

## Customizing a transition

There are a number of options available in the **Transition Options** dialog box that let you customize your transition. The variety of these available options depends on the type of transition you are applying. The following is just one example among hundreds.

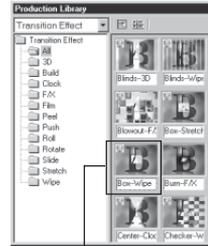
### *To customize a transition effect:*

1. Insert a **Box-Wipe** transition effect between two clips.



**Note:** Clicking the green arrow switch changes the direction of the transition effect from  $Va \rightarrow Vb$  to  $Vb \rightarrow Va$ .

2. In the **Transition Options** dialog box, adjust the **Divide by X** value to **2**. This divides the screen vertically to produce two box-wipe effects on the screen at the same time.



*Box-Wipe Transition*

**Note:** Double-click a previously inserted transition to open the **Transition Options** dialog box. It is automatically opened when you insert a new transition only when the **Display Options** dialog box option is selected in **File: Preferences: General** tab.

3. Enter a **Border** value of **1**. Change the color of the border by clicking on the **Color** square and selecting a color.
4. Select one of the two **Direction** buttons to set the movement of the transition.
5. Enter an **X** value of **60** and a **Y** value of **50**. This is the starting position of the transition effect.



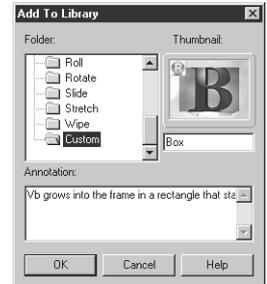
**Note:** You can also set the starting position by dragging the control that appears in the center of the sample image. This option may not be available for all effects.

6. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the attributes to the transition effect. Preview the new transition.

You now have a customized transition. When you have done this, it is an excellent idea to save this customized effect to the Production Library for future use.

*To save a transition effect:*

1. Modify a preset transition as detailed above.
2. In the Transition Options dialog box, click **Add** to send the effect to the Production Library.
3. Enter a name and a description. Click **OK**.



*Adding a customized transition to the library*

### Fade to black

While Video Editor has dozens and dozens of different transition effects to choose from, the jump cut with no transition and the crossfade are probably the only two that are commonly used in Hollywood movies. Another popular technique is to fade to black at the end of a program or scene.

*To fade to black:*

1. Place a video clip onto the Va track.
2. Create a black color clip (see page 132) and drag it onto the Vb track, making sure the start of the color clip overlaps the end of the video clip.
3. From the **F/X** folder, drag the **Crossfade** transition effect onto the Fx track.
4. Adjust the Transition Options dialog box (make sure the transition is selected as Va to Vb) and click **OK**. Preview the effect.



*Using Crossfade to create a fade to black effect*

It is of course trivial to reverse this effect to fade from black at the start of your movie. Just make sure that the color clip precedes the video clip in the Timeline and then make sure that you change the direction of the transition to go from the black color clip to the video clip.

Another common effect is called the **Turn Page** effect, located in the **Film folder** of the Production Library. Simply drag the effect onto the Fx track between two overlapping clips.



*Turn Page transition effect*

Depending on your hardware, it may take a little time for a transition effect to be created by your computer. This is called "**rendering time**." To see your transition effect without rendering your project, use the **Instant Play** function (see page 175). A jump cut, where the clips are simply placed beside each other on the same track, requires no rendering time and is sometimes just as useful. Video Editor offers so many fun and interesting transition effects that it is sometimes easy to get carried away and use them between every clip. A fancy transition is not always the best artistic choice however, and can at times be distracting. Simple jump cuts or fades are often your best choices.

## Audio transitions

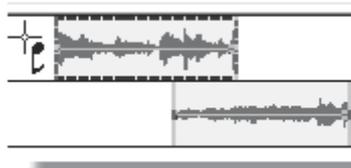
**Transition effects** are primarily for video. The audio from the two tracks, by default, is simply mixed together. In many cases, you may also want the volume of the audio from one track to smoothly drop while the audio from the track you are transitioning to gradually increase.

### *To perform an audio cross-fade between clips:*

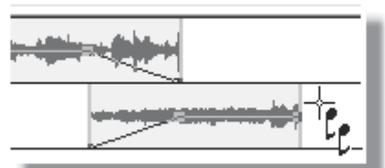


1. Click the **Audio Cross-Fade** button.
2. Click the audio portion of one of two overlapping clips.
3. Click the audio portion of the other clip.

When you click the second clip, the audio levels are automatically faded in and out on both clips.



*After clicking the audio Cross-fade button, click one of the two overlapping audio clips.*



*Then click the other audio clip. Notice the volume lines have changed.*

You can also use this technique in a more general way across all of the overlapping clips in your project. After you've finished all your editing in your project, follow the procedure below to crossfade the audio across two entire tracks.

### *To perform an audio cross-fade between tracks:*

1. Click the **Audio Cross-Fade** button.
2. Hold down the [SHIFT] key and click the first **audio track (A1)**.
3. Continue to hold the [SHIFT] key and click the second **audio track (A2)**.

## Using key frame controls

---

**Key frames** are commonly used in computer animation to specify an animation sequence. Instead of drawing every frame of animation, the user can specify the starting and ending positions of a sequence, and the computer then generates all of the intervening frames automatically. All of the effects in **Video Editor** (as well as those in **Video Paint** and **CG Infinity**) can be controlled with frame-by-frame precision using key frames.

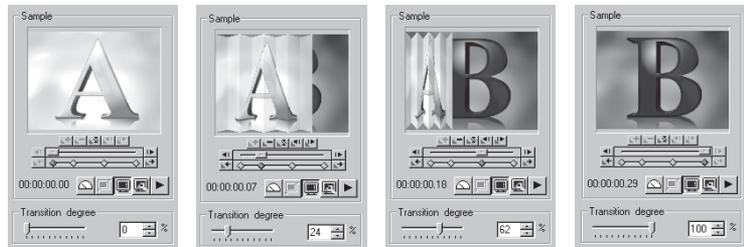
**Note:** *Key frame Controllers can be found in the following: all Video Filter, Moving Path, and Transition dialog boxes, the Overlay Options dialog box, Speed dialog box and the Time Control panel of CG Infinity.*

Each dialog box containing key frame controls is a bit different. The procedure below uses the Circle-Wipe transition effect dialog box to create a customized transition animated with key frames.

### *To use key frames to animate a transition effect:*

1. Place a clip in the **Va** track and another in the **Vb** track, making sure the clips overlap.
2. From the **Wipe** folder in the **Production Library** under **Transition Effect**, drag the **Circle** thumbnail into the **Fx** track bridging the overlap.
3. In the **Circle-Wipe** dialog box, drag the slider on the **Key frame Controller** about one-third of the way down.
4. Click the **Add Key frame** button.
5. Drag the **Transition degree** slider to approximately 75%.
6. Go back up to the **Key frame Controller** and drag the slider about two-thirds of the way down. Click the **Add Key frame** button.
7. Drag the **Transition degree** slider to approximately 25%. Preview the effect.

You should have a circle that expands, contracts, and then expands out again to complete the transition. See the next page for an illustration.



Using key frames to animate a transition

#### *To add a key frame:*

1. Drag the **Key frame Controller** slider to the desired position.
2. Click the **Add Key frame** button.

#### *To remove a key frame:*

1. Click on the unwanted key frame (it will turn red).
2. Click on the **Remove Key frame** button.

#### *To move a key frame:*

To move any key frame, just drag it to a new location. Since key frames are chronological in nature, it is impossible to drag a key frame beyond a neighboring key frame on either side.

#### *To reverse key frames:*

1. Click on any key frame diamond on the Key frame Controller.
2. Click the **Reverse Frame** button.

**Note:** This does not simply reverse the key frames, but actually inverts the entire effect.

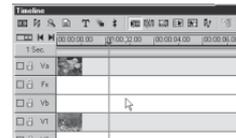
For a list of shortcut keys when using key frame controls, please refer to the **Shortcuts** section of this manual. These shortcut keys are valid whenever you are working with key frame controls inside a dialog box.

## Video overlay effects

Placing titles on a video is the simplest example of an **overlay effect**. An overlay could also be a picture-in-picture effect over the anchor's shoulder on the nightly news, or a shot of Superman flying over Metropolis. Overlays are commonly superimposed over a background video with portions of the overlay being transparent or keyed-out. Overlay effects can only be performed on clips in the **V1-V99** tracks, which are collectively known as the **Overlay tracks**.

*To create an image overlay effect:*

1. Locate the Flower.mpg clip in the Samples folder of the MediaStudio Pro CD and drag it onto the **Va** track.
2. From the same folder, drag the photo2.jpg clip onto the **V1** track and line it up underneath the clip in the **Va** track.
3. Click the **Overlay Options** button on the **Timeline toolbar** or click **Clip: Overlay Options**. (This command can also be selected from the right click pop-up menu.) The **Overlay Options** dialog box opens.
4. From the **Type** list, choose **Color Key**.
5. On the **Overlay clip**, click on the green area with the Eyedropper.
6. Set the **Similarity** value to 23.
7. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and apply the effect.



*Lining up the clips*

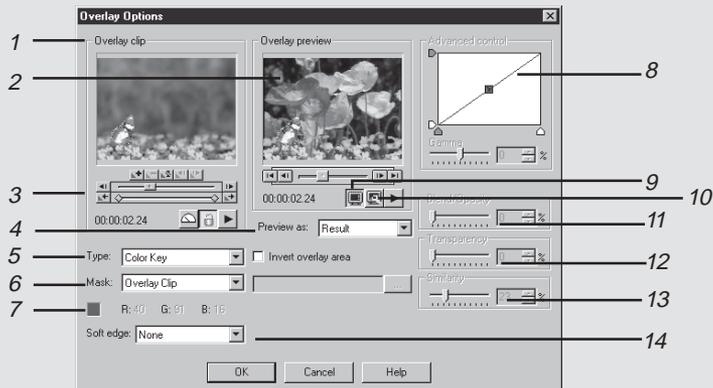


*Using the Eyedropper*

This procedure clearly demonstrates a simple overlay effect. If you preview the work now, you should see the painter painting his house "over" the man strolling outside. If your card supports an external monitor, you can watch this preview directly on your television by selecting the **External monitor** button in the Overlay Options dialog box.



## OVERLAY OPTIONS DIALOG BOX



1. **Overlay clip** shows the selected clip before applying the overlay settings.
2. **Overlay preview** shows the selected clip with the overlay applied.
3. **Key frame controller** allows you to precisely control how all effects are applied to the clip.
4. **Preview as** selects the type of display to show in the Overlay preview window.
5. **Type** specifies the method used for choosing which part of the image is transparent.
6. **Mask** selects whether to use a video or image file as the source for the overlay.
7. **Color (RGB)** selects the color to be transparent.
8. **Advanced control window** displays a representation of the threshold, cutoff, max value, min value, and gamma value parameters. Click any of the parameter handles and drag to adjust.
9. **Play in Preview Window or External Monitor** outputs the results in Video Editor's Preview and/or an external monitor.
10. **Preview Playback Options** opens a dialog box where you can specify where to preview the filter/effect.
11. **Blend/Opacity** controls how much of the overlay clip blends with the underlying clip.
12. **Transparency** specifies how faded the overlaying clip appears.
13. **Similarity** specifies the range of key colors, relative to the selected one, to be transparent.
14. **Soft edge** softens the transition's edges.

**Notes:**

- If you select **Color Key** from the **Type** list, you have two options in choosing a key color. You can click on the color box to choose the color to be transparent using the *Ulead Color Picker* (you can also right-click the box to choose from the *Windows Color Picker*) or you can click on a color in the **Overlay clip** with the *Eyedropper* tool. The latter method is probably the easier.
- In the **Preview as** list, you have three options. The **Result** option shows you the applied overlay. The **FG Only** option displays just the overlay clip with the underlying clip replaced by a solid color. The **Mask** option displays the transparent areas of the overlay in white and the opaque areas in black. (The foreground clip is sometimes referred to as the Mask.)
- Adjust the **Similarity** slider a higher percentage to set more colors to be made transparent.
- **Opacity** works with all types except *Alpha Channel*, *Gray Key* and *Blue Screen*.

## Overlay key types

When you create an overlay effect, the **Overlay Options** dialog box allows you to select from a number of overlay types in the **Type** list. There are two main types you can choose from: **color-based** and **mixed-based**. **Color-based** types, such as **Color**, **Luma**, **Chroma**, **Gray Key** and **Blue Screen**, all work by making a specified key color transparent. (These types also allow you to control the **Similarity** and **Transparency** of the effect.) **Mixed-based** types, such as **Multiply**, **Add**, **Subtract**, and **Difference**, determine how the overlaying and underlying clips merge with each other by comparing the color value differences between each clip. (These types only allow you to control the **Opacity** of the effect.) Mixed-based types can also be easily identified as they work on the entire clip and you cannot specify a key color in the **Overlay clip** of the preview window. This is a rather complicated topic: please see the **Help** for more specific information about each of these types of keys.

One of the most common and useful overlay key types is the **Blue Screen**. The following procedure is a simple example of how to use a Blue Screen effect in Video Editor. The primary factor in determining the success of a Blue Screen effect is in the actual filming and not in post production. If you have a good solid colored screen and uniform lighting, creating a Blue Screen effect is easy. If you do not have either of these things, it is nearly impossible to get a clean overlay.

### *To use a blue screen effect in an overlay:*

1. Insert the video clip that you want to be in the background into the **Va** or the **Vb** track.
2. Insert a video clip shot with a blue screen in the background into an overlay track, **V1** for example.
3. Right-click on the overlay clip (the blue screen clip) and select **Overlay Options**. The Overlay Options dialog box opens up.
4. Click on the **Type** list and select **Blue Screen**.
5. Click the **Eyedropper** on the blue portion of the clip in the Overlay clip box.
6. The underlying clip will appear behind the overlay clip, in the blue screen areas and in the Overlay preview box. (If the blue screen is not totally replaced by the underlying clip, increase the **Similarity** value.)
7. Click **OK** and preview the clip.

## **Understanding Alpha Channels**

One of the most powerful methods of creating transparent overlays involves using **Alpha Channels**. This technical term simply means an area or areas of an image that have been selected to be transparent in an image or video. In many ways, an Alpha Channel is the same as a color key and could be based on a color in a clip. Many image editing programs allow you to create and save Alpha Channels and it is the technique employed by **CG Infinity** to control transparency. **TGA** and **TIF** image files both support Alpha Channel transparency and make excellent overlays. Because you can control the level of transparency with 256 levels of gray, Alpha Channels are also used in **Video Paint** anytime you use a matte, as well as in transition effects such as wipes and dissolves. Most overlays in MediaStudio Pro take advantage of Alpha Channel. Because this is such a powerful and effective technique, it is always recommended that you insert your CG Infinity project files directly into Video Editor (instead of rendering first and then inserting the resulting AVI file) and use the Alpha Channel for the overlay.

### *To use an Alpha Channel in an overlay:*

1. Place a video clip into the **Va** track.
2. Place a video clip which was created with an alpha Channel (for example, a CG Infinity file) into the **V1** overlay track.
3. Right-click on the clip in **V1** and select **Overlay Options** to open up the Overlay Options dialog box.
4. In the **Type** drop-down box, select **Alpha Channel**.



*Background clip*



*Overlay clip*

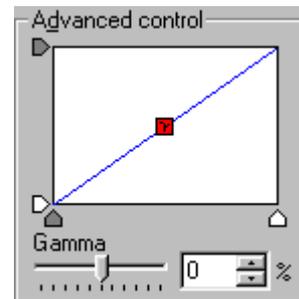
At this point, the areas specified in the channel are immediately keyed out. If the preview image does not change, then the overlay clip does not contain an Alpha Channel. Click **OK**.



*Result*

## Using Gamma correction

**Gamma** refers to the gray values of a color which contribute to the levels of highlight and shading that appear in an image. The Gamma graph is a visual guide which allows you to change these values and thus affect changes in the highlights and shadows, as well as change the midrange or midtone values. If you move the gamma value higher up the graph, you darken the clip whereas moving it lower lightens it. You can move the thumbtacks that appear along both the X and Y axis to give you better control over which highlights and shadows are affected. The Y axis thumbtacks represent the possible changes you can make to the grays of the original clip. The X axis thumbtacks work similarly except they restrict you to changing only the midtone grays of the original clip, leaving the areas with strong highlights and shadows untouched.



*Gamma control*

## Working with mattes

Another feature of the **Overlay Options** dialog box is that it allows you to make use of mattes (or masks). In the film world, mattes work like color keying in that they show and hide various areas of the overlay clip. You can make any image or video file into a matte or you can create these yourself in a paint program such as **Video Paint** or in **CG Infinity**.

### Creating image and video mattes

**Image mattes** are great when you want to specify a particular area in the frame for a video to appear and need to get the cleanest possible blend when overlaying.

*To create an image matte:*

1. Run your favorite image editing software, such as **Ulead PhotoImpact** (**Video Paint** or **CG Infinity** can also be used), and create a rectangle the same size as the frames in your video project.
2. Draw an area where you want the video to appear, such as a circle or a square.
3. Fill this area with a solid color (like blue) and then fill the background with a contrasting color (like green).
4. Load this image into an Overlay track (**V1**).
5. Right-click on the image and select **Overlay Options**.
6. Select the **Color Key** from the **Type** list and click in the blue area. The blue area is then keyed out to reveal the underlying clip.



*A simple image matte*

**Note:** *When preparing an image or video for color keying, use a solid color as the background, such as blue. Do not use black or white as these colors tend to "bleed" into the overlay clip.*

**Video mattes** are simply multiple image mattes spread out over multiple frames. These can be commonly created in many animation programs.

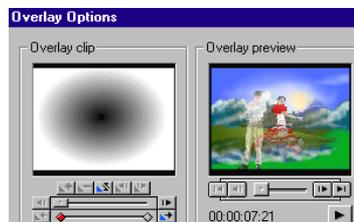
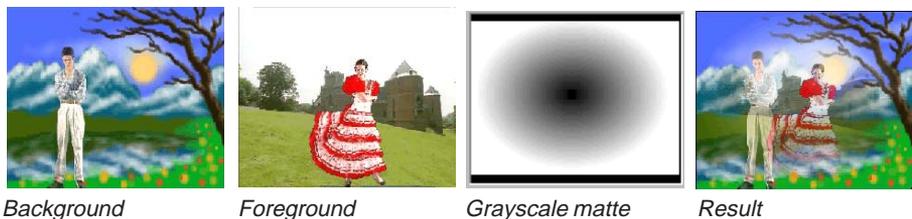
*To create a video matte:*

1. Create a sequence of images, such as a Targa animation (TGA).
2. Insert them into **Video Editor** as a Ulead Image Sequence, or use **Video Paint** and insert a Video Paint project file. See page 139.
3. Load it into the **Overlay Options** dialog box and specify which color to key out.

**Tip:** When using video or image mattes, you can see the file name of the matte you are using beside the Mask field in the dialog box.

## Using Grayscale mattes

**Mattes** are generally comprised of two solid colors that make it easier to identify which areas to show and which to hide. For greater control, you can use a Grayscale matte, which works by using a gradient transparency as a matte where the level of transparency directly corresponds to the level of gray. For example, lighter grays will be more transparent than darker grays, with pure white being 100% transparent and black being completely opaque. Using Grayscale mattes in this way gives you much greater control over how clips merge and blend with each other. To use a Grayscale matte, just load a black and white matte like you would an image matte, but then choose the **Gray Key Type**.



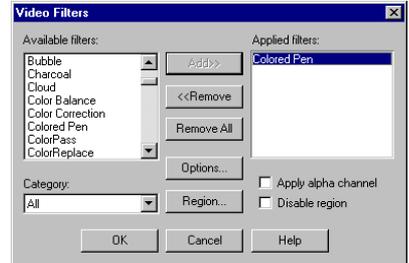
*Overlay Options dialog box with matte*

## Applying video filters

Video Editor has a wide range of special effects and filters that allow you to enhance and improve existing video clips as well as create exciting attention grabbing effects. You can apply a **Video Filter** by dragging its thumbnail from the Video Filter gallery of the **Production Library** onto a clip.

### To apply a video filter:

1. Select the video clip you want to apply the filter to.
2. Click the **Video Filters** button or click **Clip: Video Filters** to open the **Video Filters** dialog box or right-click and select **Video Filters** from the pop-up menu.
3. Select the filter you want to apply from the **Available filters** list box and click **Add**. The filter is moved to the **Applied filters** list box.
4. Click **Region** to select which frames you want the video filter(s) to be applied to in your video. Click **OK** to return to the Video Filter dialog box.
5. Click **OK**. The **Video Filters** dialog box closes and the filter is applied to the clip.



Video Filters dialog box



Region dialog box

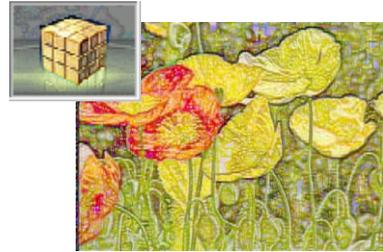
**Note:** If you regularly use the same filter, you can define its default attributes by double-clicking its thumbnail in the Video Filter gallery of the Production Library. This opens the Video Filter Options dialog box for that filter, which you can then edit to change the default.

There are dozens of filters available with limitless variety. These filters can be mixed and matched and customized to get just the right results.

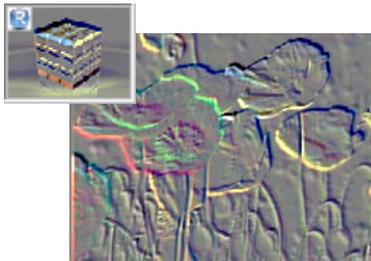
## Video filter samples



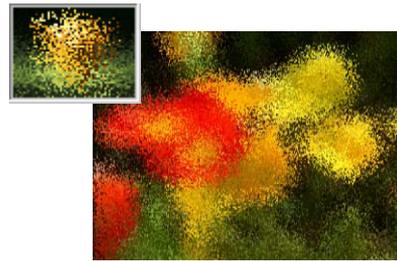
*Cloud - Special*



*Colored Pen - Nature Painting*



*Emboss - Darkroom*



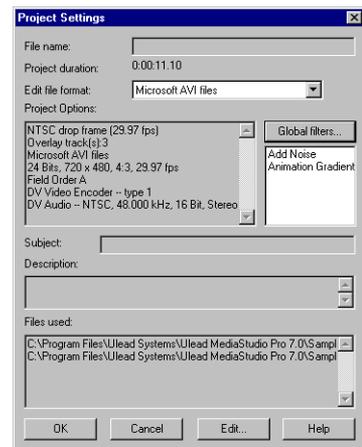
*Diffuse - Darkroom*

## Global filters

The Global filters feature allows you to select a number of video filters to apply to your whole project.

### To use global filters:

1. Select **File: Project Settings**.
2. In the Project Settings dialog box, click the Global Filters button.
3. In the Video Filters dialog box, select the video filters you want to apply to your whole project.
4. Click **OK**.



*Project Settings dialog box*

### *To fine-tune a video filter:*

1. Right-click a selected clip with a previously added video filter and select **Video Filters** (or add a new filter).
2. Click the **Options** button to view the filter and change its attributes. When you click **Options**, a dialog box opens displaying two windows: **Original**, with the selected video clip, and **Preview**, which shows the result after application of the filter.
3. Change the various filter attributes until you get the result you want. Remember to adjust both the start and end attributes by clicking on the key frames.

The Video Filters dialog box varies according to the selected filter. For details about the specifics of each filter, click the Help button in that particular filter dialog box. All of the filter dialog boxes contain the **Original clip window**, the **Preview window**, and the **Add** button.

#### VIDEO FILTER OPTIONS DIALOG BOX (MONOCHROME)

***Original Clip** window shows a frame from the selected clip before the filter is applied.*



***Preview window** shows a frame from the clip after the filter has been applied.*

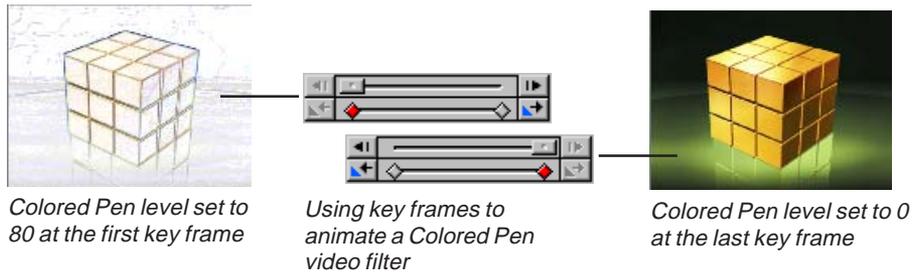
***Add** opens the Add To Library dialog box to add the current effect settings to the Video Filter's Custom folder for quick access.*

*The options located here at the bottom of the dialog box will vary from filter to filter.*

Like many other effects, video filters can also be animated using key frames. This is a great way to have the original video clip gradually transform to the altered look of an applied filter, or vice versa. The following procedure uses the Colored Pen filter to gradually transform what seems like a drawn image into the real-life look of ordinary video.

### *To animate a video filter:*

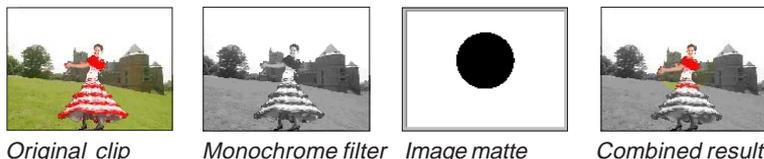
1. Select a clip and open the Video Filters dialog box as previously described.
2. Select the **Colored Pen** filter from the **Available filters** box and click the **Add** button. The Colored Pen filter will now appear in the Applied filters box.
3. Click the **Options** button to open the Colored Pen dialog box.
4. Click on the first **key frame diamond** and then drag the **Level** slider to **80**.
5. Click on the last **key frame diamond** and drag the **Level** slider to **0**.
6. Click **OK** and preview the effect.



## Applying a regional matte to a video filter

When you apply a video filter it affects the entire frame of a video clip. There may be times however when you would prefer it to only affect a certain portion of the clip, such as a highlighted area or a specific scene in the background. You can do this by first creating an image or video matte (see page 51) and then loading the matte into the **Video Filters** dialog box. See the next page for details.

**Note:** *If you do not have a matte to use then specifying a region has little benefit.*



*An image matte applied to a video filter*

### To apply a regional matte:

1. Open the **Video Filters** dialog box and place the filter you want to work with in the **Applied filters** list box.
2. Click the **Region** button to open the Region dialog box (not available for all filters).
3. Select an option from the **Mask** drop-down list to determine what kind of matte you want to use.
4. Move the **Threshold** slider to control the degree of the effect. You can also choose to invert the area being affected by selecting the **Invert** option.
5. Click **OK** to return to the **Video Filters** dialog box.

#### REGION DIALOG BOX



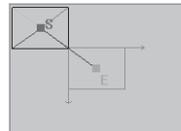
1. **Mask** window shows a frame from the mask.
2. **Preview** window shows a frame from the selected clip and the parts affected by the filter.
3. **Type** drop-down box lets you select the key type to use in the Mask window.
4. **Mask** drop-down box lets you select the kind of matte to use.
5. **Enable filter (start position)** enables the filter applied to the clip starting from the current position.
6. **Threshold** slider determines the sensitivity to bright and dark pixels.
7. **Matte** opens the Select Image Matte dialog box.
8. **Preview Playback Options** opens a dialog box where you can specify where to preview the filter/effect.
9. **Play in Preview Window or External Monitor** outputs the results in Video Editor's Preview and/or an external monitor.
10. **Invert region area** makes all colors except the selected color the key color.
11. **RGB** displays the RGB values of the current threshold setting.
12. **Enable mask (start position)** enables the mask applied to the filter starting from the current position.

## Creating a moving path

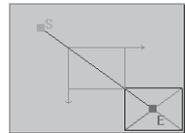
One of the more advanced effects of **Video Editor** is its ability to generate a moving path. A **moving path** is much like a road, dictating the route one clip takes as it passes over another. Just as a road can have many twists and turns, so too can a moving path. For example, you can have one clip zigzag its way across another and spin away into the distance. Moving paths can be applied to any clip in the video overlay tracks, and are most commonly used with title clips and objects created with **CG Infinity**.

*To create a 2D basic moving path:*

1. Open the **Production Library** and select the **2D Basic Moving Path** folder from the **Moving Path** gallery.
2. Drag the **2D Basic** thumbnail onto a clip in an overlay track. This opens the **Moving Path** dialog box (see the diagram on following page).
3. Click the **Start control point (S)** in the Motion Control window and drag the sample clip to the position where you want the clip to begin its movement.
4. Click the **End control point (E)** in the Motion Control window and drag the sample clip to the position where you want the clip to end its movement.
5. Click the **Play** button to preview the moving path. Click **OK** to apply.



*Start control point*

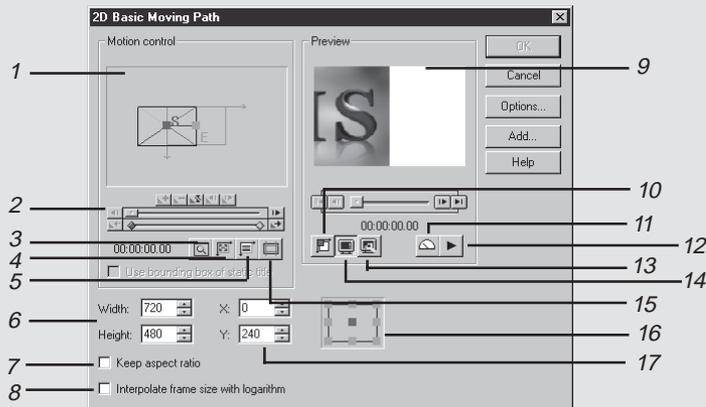


*End control point*



*Creating a simple 2D basic moving path*

## MOVING PATH DIALOG BOX



1. **Motion Control Window** allows you to determine the path a clip takes.
2. **Key frame Controller** determines where key frames are placed.
3. **Zoom** opens the zoom window magnifying the Motion Control window.
4. **Restore** changes the clip's dimensions back to its original size.
5. **Actual Image** replaces the preview clip in the Motion Control window with thumbnails of the clip.
6. **Width and Height boxes** define the frame dimensions of the actual clip.
7. **Keep aspect ratio** ensures that any changes to a clip's dimensions are reflected equally in the Width and Height boxes.
8. **Interpolate frame size with logarithm** converts the moving path from linear interpolation to logarithmic interpolation solving zoom quality problems that occurs when the size of the image is changed over its duration.
9. **Preview** allows you to display the moving path before actually applying it.
10. **Show Background** displays the background clip in the frame window.
11. **Speed** determines the speed of the preview.
12. **Play** performs a preview of the moving path.
13. **Preview Playback Options** opens a dialog box where you can specify where to preview the filter/effect.
14. **External Monitor** previews on an external monitor.
15. **Title Safe Area** displays guidelines around the frame box representing the viewable area on a television.
16. **Reference point box** allows you to change the position of the sample clip.
17. **X and Y** determine the actual position of the clip within the frame box.

**Notes:**

- The **Motion Control window** allows you to determine the path of a clip by adjusting various control points. When you first open a Moving Path dialog box, the Start control point (S) is active and appears at the center of a sample of the clip. By dragging the start control point, you can reposition the clip. To reposition the End control point (E), click it to make it active and then drag it to a new location. If you use the Key frame Controller, you can add additional control points (+) which give you more options for controlling the direction of the path. Beneath the sample clip is a fixed frame which represents the frame size of the video project. If your moving path does not appear within this frame, then it will not be seen in the resulting video sequence.
- The **Reference box** allows you to change the position of the control point within the sample clip, thereby controlling which part of the clip moves first, as well as the axis of any rotations (except for Sphere and Cylinder) – by default this is set to the center. For example, clicking the top left corner changes the focus of the active key frame on the sample clip in the Motion Control window to the top left corner of the clip. This is particularly useful when you need to reposition a clip but are restricted by the size of the Motion Control window, such as for long title credits. By switching the reference of the clip to the top, you can then drag the sample clip outside of the frame box and beyond the area of the window.
- The **Zoom** button opens the Zoom window which displays the Motion Control window in greater magnification. A green frame also appears in the Motion Control window indicating the current area displayed in the Zoom window. (By moving this frame, you change the area being examined.) You can increase the zoom level (up to 4x) by clicking the Zoom window (to zoom out right-click). With the Zoom window open, you can still work on your moving path by dragging the control points in the Motion Control window. Double-click the title bar to close the Zoom window.

In Video Editor, you can choose from five distinct moving paths: 2D Basic, 2D Advanced, 3D, Cylinder, and Sphere (you can also customize your own paths in the custom folder). They all use the same dialog box to control their movements, differing only in areas specific to their effect. The Moving Path dialog box diagrams on the previous page use the 2D Basic dialog box as the example.

One common use for the 2D Basic Moving Path does not actually move at all. During the nightly news, a common technique is to put a small clip or story title to the upper right of the screen above the anchor's shoulder. This effect can be done easily in Video Editor. You can think of it as a still moving path.

***To create a still moving path:***

1. Drag a clip into the **Va track**: this is the background (the anchor).
2. Drag a clip into the **V1 track**: this is the overlay.
3. Drag a **2D Basic moving path** onto the clip in the V1 track. The 2D Basic Moving Path dialog box opens up.
4. Click the **Keep aspect ratio** box in the lower left corner.
5. Change the **Width** value to 100 (the Height value automatically changes to keep the ratio).
6. Change the **X** value to 240, and the **Y** value to 70 (this moves the center of the overlay to the upper right).
7. Click on the **End control point** and repeat steps 5 and 6, entering exactly the same values.
8. Click **OK** and preview the effect.

*A still moving path*

The **2D Advanced** Moving Path dialog box is similar to the **2D Basic** Moving Path except that you can spin a clip around a central point in two dimensions.

***To create a 2D advanced moving path:***

1. Select the **2D Advanced** thumbnail from the **Moving Path** gallery and drag it onto a clip.
2. Enter a rotation value, or drag the rotation dial to the desired value.
3. Use the handles in the **Distortion** box to slant the clip to create perspective effects.
4. Click the **Play** button to preview. Click **OK** to apply.

**Note:** *If you resize a clip, its contents are resampled accordingly. Depending on the type of clip, this may produce degradation in image quality.*

## Creating 3D moving paths

Creating a 3D moving path, whether it is a simple 3D path, a sphere, or a cylinder, is much the same procedure as creating a 2D moving path. The third dimension simply consists of additional rotation angles. **Sphere** and **Cylinder** help you control a 3D path by providing an object around which the clip can rotate.

When using a Sphere or Cylinder Moving Path, their respective dialog boxes have options for controlling the behavior of the path and the clip itself. For example, if you select the **Clip Angle** (in the **Adjust** combo box), you can adjust the rotation of the clip on the surface of the sphere or cylinder; rotation values can be entered using the rotation dial, the plus/minus [+/-] buttons, or the entry boxes. The **X** and **Y** coordinates determine the placement of the sphere or cylinder in reference to the center of the video window, whereas the **Angle** and **Y** values (**Angle 1**, and **Angle 2** in the sphere dialog box) rotate the sphere/cylinder vertically or horizontally into the third dimension. You can also rotate or resize the sphere or cylinder with the **Rotate** and **Radius** entry boxes.



*3D moving path*



*Cylinder moving path*



*Spherical moving path*

## Managing key frames on a moving path

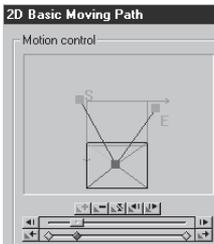
**Animation** is performed by smoothly calculating the position of an object between key frames. The more key frames that are added, the more flexibility and control you have over the animation. This is true for moving paths in Video Editor. You can also control the speed of a moving path by adjusting the distance between key frames.



### *To change the direction of a moving path:*

1. Drag-and-drop the **2D Basic** thumbnail from the **Moving Path** gallery onto a clip in an overlay track. The **Moving Path** dialog box opens up.
2. Drag the **Start control point (S)** in the Motion Control window to the top left corner of the of the fixed project frame.
3. Drag the **Preview slider** in the Key frame Controller halfway between the start and end key frames.
4. Click **Add Key frame** and drag the red square (the new control point) to the bottom of the fixed project frame.
5. Drag the **End control point (E)** in the Motion Control window to the top right of the fixed project frame.

Now watch the preview. The clip should descend from the top left corner to the bottom of the screen, and then bounce up and ascend to the top right corner.



### *To change the speed of a moving path:*

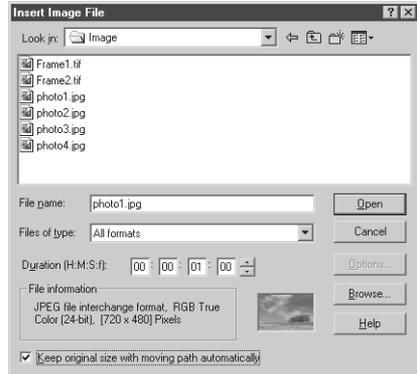
1. Click on the **middle red diamond** on the Key frame Controller.
2. Drag it closer to the start key frame.
3. Preview and click **OK** to apply.

The descent of the clip is accelerated because it has to move the same distance in a shorter time. The ascent of the clip is slowed down because it has more time to move the same distance.

## Inserting an image with moving path attributes

When you insert an image file into a video track in Video Editor, the image will be stretched to fit the frame dimensions of your project. This will cause a distortion in the image. To avoid this problem, select **Keep original size with moving path automatically** in the Insert Image File dialog box.

When you apply a moving path attribute to the image file that you have just inserted, the image file will be stretched to fit the dimensions of your project. To maintain the original size of your image, you have to change the **Width** and **Height** in the dialog box of the moving path you have selected.

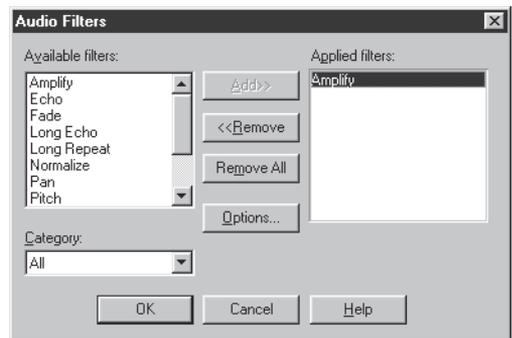


## Applying audio filters

**Video Editor** also allows you to apply audio filters to audio clips. These are the same as the ones found in the **Audio Editor** program (see page 341). They allow you to do everything from increasing a clip's amplification, to removing noise, to applying special effects such as fades and echoes. In addition, MediaStudio Pro now supports any third party **DirectX Audio plug-ins**. You can apply an **Audio Filter** by dragging its thumbnail from the Audio Filter gallery of the **Production Library** onto an audio clip.

### *To apply an audio filter:*

1. Select the audio clip you want to apply the filter to.
2. Click the **Audio Filters** button or **Clip: Audio Filters** or right-click the clip and select **Audio Filters** from the pop-up menu. This opens the **Audio Filters** dialog box.
3. Select the filter you want to apply from the **Available filters** list and click **Add**. The filter is moved to the **Applied filters** list.
4. Click the **Options** button to view the filter and change its attributes. (Every filter has different options.)
5. Change the various filter attributes until you get the result you want. (The options in this dialog box vary depending on the type of filter you are using.)
6. Click **OK**. The Audio Filters dialog box closes and the filter is applied to the clip.



*Audio Filters dialog box*

## Changing the audio level of an audio clip

To change the audio level of an audio clip, you can use the **Amplify** filter or, for quicker results, edit the audio clip directly from the Timeline. By changing the audio level of a clip, you can effectively control how one audio clip fades into or out of another.

### *To change the audio level of an audio clip from the Timeline:*

1. Select the audio clip whose audio level you want to change.
2. Click on the blue **volume baseline** that appears in the middle of the clip. A **control point** is placed at the position of your pointer.
3. Drag the **control point** up to increase audio level at this point, down to decrease. (To add additional control points, repeat steps 2 and 3.)

**Note:** To remove a control point, drag it off the top or bottom of the clip. If you hold down the **[SHIFT]** key before adjusting the control points, you will see values (in dB and %) for the exact audio level.



*Changing the audio level of an audio clip from the Timeline*

## Adding a soundtrack

Putting background music into your movie is simple, but you must carefully control the volume of both the source video and the music audio file to make it work.

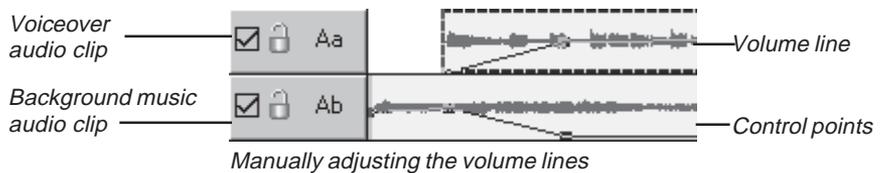
The best source for background music is your personal CD collection (as long as your movie is for personal use only and assuming you are extremely careful to follow all legal requirements concerning copyrighted material). It is possible to record CDs using Windows Recorder or even Audio Editor, but the best way is to use a CD Ripper, widely available on the Internet (try <http://www.mp3.com> for starters). When you "rip" a CD, you are extracting the actual data with 100% fidelity. MediaStudio Pro supports a large

number of audio formats, with \*.WAV files being the most popular.

Once you've inserted your soundtrack, you'll probably want to fade the music in and out smoothly to allow the audio from your video to be heard, or to hear a separate voiceover track.

***To fade the music in and out:***

1. Select the audio clip you want to fade.
2. Click on the **volume baseline** that appears in the middle of the clip. A control point is placed at the position of your pointer.
3. Create **four control points** at the following locations: at the beginning of the fade in, at the end of the fade in, at the beginning of the fade out, and at the end of the fade out.
4. Drag the **two middle control points** lower to set the volume.



**Note:** For greater accuracy in editing, zoom in on the clips with the **Zoom** tool or **Ruler Unit** button (see page 135).

It can be faster to simply preview the audio instead of both the audio and the video. Create a preview area and click **File: Create Audio File** to test the audio from the faded portion of the clip. You can automatically fade the audio at the beginning and end of two overlapping clips by using the **Audio Cross-Fade** tool.

## Creating titles

---

Video Editor uses a title plug-in to manage title creation, animation and type effect plug-ins when you are doing your projects. The default title plug-in that comes with the program is the Ulead title plug-in. You can add more animation and type effects plug-ins into Video Editor by following these steps:

### *To install new plug-ins:*

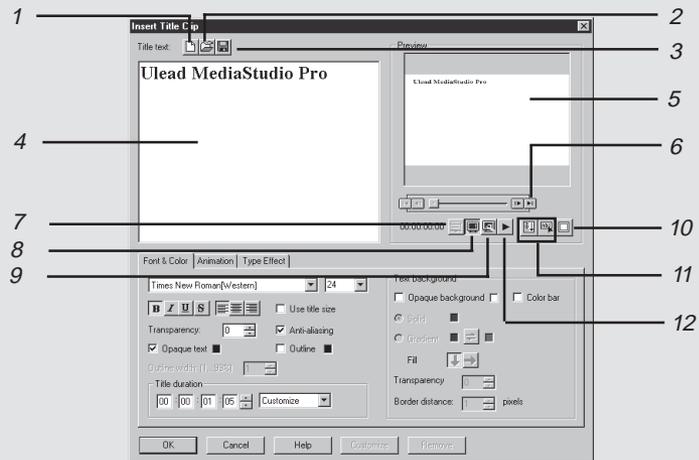
1. Select the animation or type effect plug-in files that you want to use in Video Editor
2. Copy and paste them in the respective plug-in folder in the Video Editor program folder structure.
  - a. Animation plug-ins: Place in the **motion\_plug** folder
  - b. Type effect plug-ins: Place in the **vte\_plug** folder
- T** 3. Close then restart the Title plug-in.

Adding titles is an important part of nearly every video project. The most common examples of this are the opening and ending titles and credits. In Video Editor, you can place title clips in any of the video tracks, but in most cases you will want to place them into an **overlay track (V1-V99)**. Doing so allows you to superimpose the text over your background video.

### *To create a title clip:*

1. Place any clip (video, image or color) into the **Va** track. This is the background for your titles.
2. Click **Insert: Title Clip** to open the **Insert Title Clip** dialog box.
3. Type the text that you want in your title in the **Title text** box.
4. Click **OK** and place the clip into an **overlay track (V1)** on the Timeline.

## INSERT TITLE CLIP DIALOG BOX



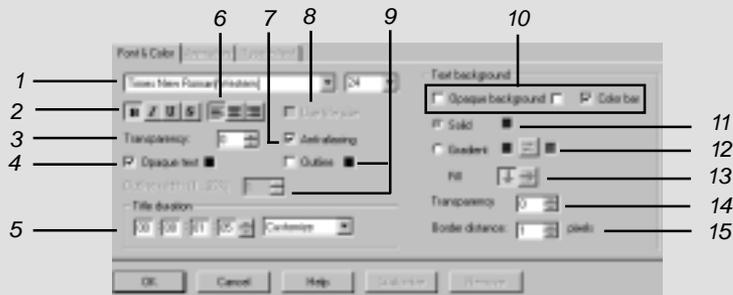
1. **New** clears the Title text box.
2. **Open** loads a previously created text file (\*.TXT file extension) for the Title text.
3. **Save As** saves the title as a text file for future use.
4. **Title text window** provides a display of the text for the clip.
5. **Preview window** displays a preview of the title text and provides button controls for playing the title clip. The red box is the Title-safe area indicator. It is recommended that your title stays within the area inside this box.
6. **Preview slider and button controls** Drag the slider to see how the title clip progresses. Click the button controls to advance forward/backward by one frame or jump to the start/end of the clip.
7. **Background video** displays the background video behind the preview.
8. **Play in Preview Window or External Monitor** outputs the results in Video Editor's Preview and/or an external monitor.
9. **Preview Playback Options** opens a dialog box where you can specify where to preview the filter/effect.
10. **Title safe area** displays the title safe area in the Preview window.
11. **Text orientation** toggles between making the text's orientation vertical or horizontal.
12. **Play** Click to play the title clip in the preview window.

**Notes:**

- If the width of your text in the Preview window exceeds the frame size, you need to reduce the size of the font or add a new line. To start a new line, press [ENTER].
- If you want to load a title from a text file, make sure that the size of the file does not exceed 2KB.
- Right-clicking any of the color boxes in Video Editor allows you to use the Windows color picker.

With the **Font & Color** tab, you can specify the format for the title clip text. The changes you make here affect all the text in the **Preview** window. If you want to change the format for certain text, you need to insert it as a separate **Title clip** or use **CG Infinity**. Choosing center alignment only aligns the text within the clip. If you want to center the clip over a background clip, use a 2D Basic moving path.

#### FONT & COLOR TAB OF THE INSERT TITLE CLIP DIALOG BOX



1. **Font name & size** select face and size for the characters you want to place in the project.
2. **Font style** click all the effects and styles to apply on the text.
3. **Transparency** specify how much of the underlying image should appear through text.
4. **Opaque text** displays your text while **Fill color** specifies the color of the text.
5. **Title duration** sets the duration of your title clip.
6. **Font Alignment** select the alignment of the text
7. **Anti-aliasing** smoothens the text.
8. **Use title size** select to use the actual size of the text when placed in the Timeline (this will be useful when using video filters of moving paths).
9. **Outline** places a keyline around each letter in your text while **Line color** and **Line width** control its color and width.

**Text background group** apply a colored background to your text

10. **Opaque background or Color bar** select whether to apply a solid background for your text (whole screen) or a color bar behind your text.

#### **Color bar options**

11. **Solid** applies a solid colored bar behind the text.
12. **Gradient** applies a combination of two colors for the color bar.
13. **Fill** specify the direction of the gradient fill.
14. **Transparency** enter the level of transparency of the text in relation to its background.
15. **Border distance** enter a value in pixels for the text border.

## ANIMATION TAB OF THE INSERT TITLE CLIP DIALOG BOX

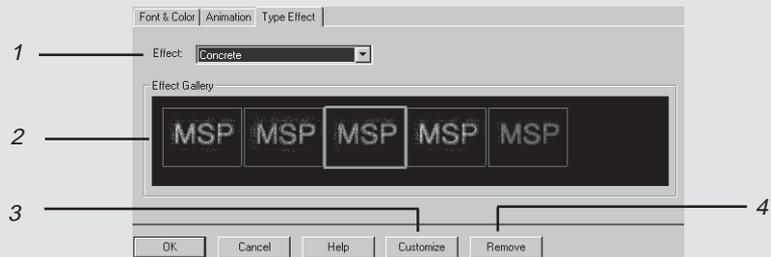


1. **Type** choose from a list of available preset animation types effects that you can apply to your text. Click **Customize** to change the settings of the selected effect.
2. **Animation Gallery** displays a thumbnail preview of the selected animation type.
3. **Customize** click to display a dialog box where you can adjust the settings of the selected animation effect thumbnail.
4. **Remove** click to remove the selected animation effect applied on the clip.

**Notes:**

- You can perform a far greater range of movement if you incorporate the title clip with a moving path effect, see page 202.
- When trimming rolling text, you can either prolong its duration or decrease it.

## TYPE EFFECT TAB OF THE INSERT TITLE CLIP DIALOG BOX



1. **Effect** allows you to choose the available type effects from the drop down list .
2. **Effect Gallery** displays presets that you can apply to your title.
3. **Customize** allows you to modify the settings of the selected effect.
4. **Remove** deletes the selected effect from the Effect Gradient list.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- Use the **Transition Options** dialog box to customize a transition (see page 183).
- Use a **Crossfade** transition effect to create a fade to black (see page 185).
- Perform an **Audio Crossfade** across two tracks after you've finished editing your project (see page 187).
- Place **key frames** to control the appearance of effects at different stages (see page 188).
- Choose a **key type** and specify how you want an **overlay clip** to blend onto the background video (see page 192).
- Use **mattes** to show or hide specific areas in a video (see page 195).
- Load an image matte into the **Video Filters** dialog box to control which area of the video is affected by the filter (see page 200).
- Make video clips fly, rotate, and move in different directions by creating **moving paths** (see page 202).
- Change an **audio clip's amplification** by dragging directly on the base line of the clip in the Timeline (see page 210).

## Creating and outputting your files

*Once you are done editing your masterpiece it is time to share it with the world. This means that it is time to create an actual movie file for playback on your computer or record the movie back to your camcorder.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Creating a movie ..... p. 218*
- *Analyzing a video file's data rate ..... p. 225*
- *Creating an audio file ..... p. 227*
- *Creating an image sequence ..... p. 235*
- *Creating an edit decision list (EDL) file ..... p. 236*
- *Outputting to analog video tape ..... p. 238*
- *Creating a VCD/SVCD/DVD ..... p. 240*
- *Creating MPEG -2 files ..... p. 242*
- *Creating WMV/Quicktime streaming file ..... p. 243*
- *Exporting to Ulead DVD MovieFactory/VR Wizard ..... p. 245*
- *Working with a digital video camcorder ..... p. 246*

## Creating a movie

---

When you're finished editing and the previews look good, it is time to do a final render of your project. The appropriate format of your final movie depends on the destination of the file, but the procedure is the same in every case.

### *To create a video file:*

1. Click **File: Create - Video File** to open the **Create Video File** dialog box.
2. Select the drive and folder where you want to save the video and specify the file type you want to create, such as AVI or MPG.
3. Type a name for the file in the **File name** entry box.
4. Click the **Options** button to open the **Video Save Options** dialog box to review and/or change the attributes of your video file. (This can be a complicated operation. See the next section on "Determining your video save options" to learn more about these options.)
5. Click **OK** to accept the current video attributes. The Video Save Options dialog box closes and you return to the Create Video File dialog box.
6. Click **Save**.

### **Notes:**

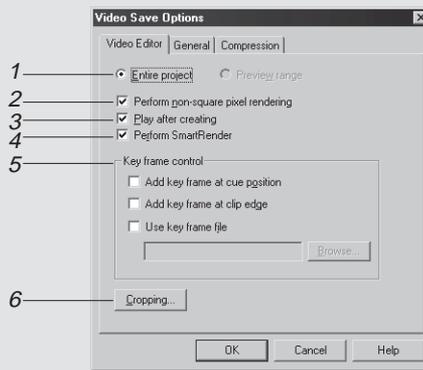
- *Render your video with exactly the same attributes as your captured video. The movie should render very quickly and the quality will be the best you can get. The most important attributes you should check are: **codec**, **frame rate**, and **frame size**. You can check these settings by right-clicking on a selected video clip in your project and selecting **Properties** from the pop-up menu.*
- *Render your video as few times as possible, preferably only once. For example, don't render a title sequence in CG Infinity and then import the AVI into Video Editor and render it again. Instead, bring the CG Infinity project onto the Video Editor Timeline.*
- *When creating an MPEG file, MSP now supports AC-3 Output for DVD. This is a new and unique way of digitally compressing and decoding audio channels into a very small space. In the Compression tab of the Video Save Options dialog box, select NTSC DVD or PAL DVD under Media type. Then, select AC-3 output under Audio format to produce a high audio playback quality.*

## Determining your video save options

The properties that you specified in saving a video file determine your output quality. MediaStudio Pro offers different settings that you can apply to achieve a high-quality video. The set of available options depends on the output file format that you want, since each file format may contain attributes that are different or not present in another.

There are, however, options that are applicable in all file formats. The following section will discuss these general options.

### VIDEO SAVE OPTIONS: VIDEO EDITOR TAB

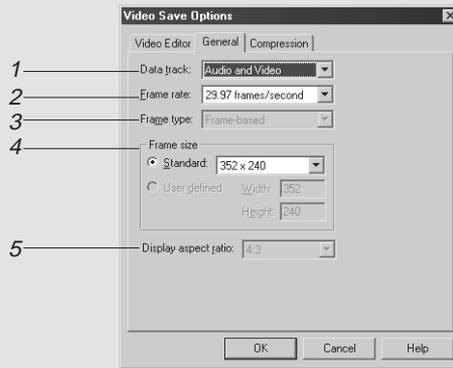


1. **Entire project** creates a video file of the entire project while **Preview range** creates a video file of the preview area only. (This option is disabled if your video project has no preview area.)
2. **Perform non-square pixel rendering** performs non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.
3. **Play after creating** plays the resulting video file after its creation. This can serve as a signal that the rendering has finished.
4. **Perform SmartRender** speeds up the creation process by reusing previously saved video, re-rendering only the areas modified since you last created the video. (You must use the same file name and destination.) Video Editor detects these differences by monitoring the changes made to the video project and matching those with the existing video file.

5. **Key frame control** allows you to control the placement of key frames for compression schemes that support interframe compression (such as Cinepak). This can help the compression algorithm emphasize important segments.
6. **Cropping** displays a dialog box where you can modify the frame dimensions of the video. (See page 222 for more details.)

**Note:** For more on understanding key frames and compression, see the Appendix, page 393.

#### VIDEO SAVE OPTIONS: GENERAL TAB



1. **Data track** specifies whether to create a video file of the video track only, or both the video and the accompanying audio track. (To save the audio track only click the **File: Create - Audio File** command.)
2. **Frame rate** specifies the frame rate to use for the resulting video file. For example, NTSC video is typically 29.97fps. See your capture board's manual for specific frame rate advice.
3. **Frame type** select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

4. **Frame size** determines the size of each video frame. You can choose from a range of predefined sizes or define your own.
5. **Display aspect ratio** maintains the vertical and horizontal proportions of your video. When cleared, you can independently resize the video to create non-standard effects such as widescreen TV.

**Note:** The frame rate and frame size you choose should match the frame rate and size of your captured video clips if you intend to output your video back to tape. You can find this information by right-clicking a selected video clip on the Timeline and selecting **Properties** from the pop-up menu.

**Notes:**

- When you select a compression scheme, the **Key frame for every** spin box changes to indicate the default number of key frames the scheme uses.
- Generally speaking, it is best to try out a variety of compression schemes and options on a test version of the same file, then compare the resulting file sizes and playback quality.
- For more information on audio, see the 'Creating a new edit window' section in the Audio Editor chapter, page 346.
- If you select new attributes in the Audio Format dialog box and wish to save them for later use, click the **Save As** button. The Save As dialog box opens allowing you to assign a name to the attributes. Clicking **OK** saves the attributes and the specified name appearing in the **Name** list.

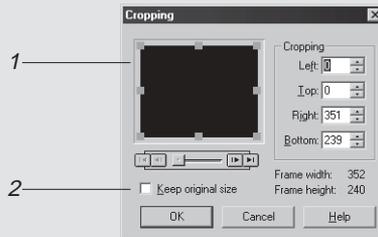
AVI and MPEG formats are most commonly used in saving video files. For AVI files, an AVI tab is available in the Video Save Options dialog box. Compression type, data type, and audio formats can be set in this tab. If you have a target playback device, the AVI tab also offers Advanced options for customizing video file properties for specified processing speed and PC capabilities.

The Compression tab, which is available for the MPEG format, contains options for media type, audio settings, and data rate.

## Cropping video files

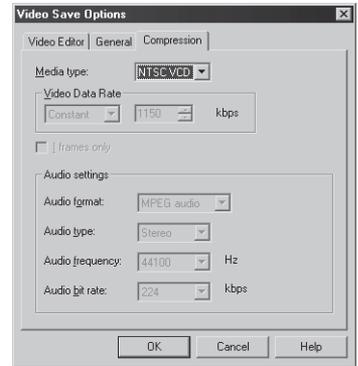
Cropping is a useful method for controlling the frame size of a video without having to resize the actual frames. This is important as resizing frames resamples the original video, resulting in distortion and loss of quality. The downside though is that you need to remove data which may or may not be important. Cropping is also good for removing unwanted noise that may occur around the edges of a video due to bad capturing or copying.

### VIDEO SAVE OPTIONS: CROPPING DIALOG BOX

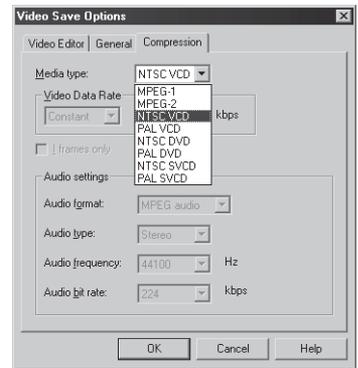


1. **Cropping** specifies the area of the video that you want to crop (remove) from the resulting video file. You can enter values in the spin boxes provided in the **Cropping** group box or drag on the control points on the preview image.
2. **Keep original size** resamples the cropped video so that it maintains the specified frame size (this does produce degradation however, depending on the amount of resampling involved). After resizing the control box you can move its position by dragging it. (Use the slider beneath the window to preview how your changes affect the video.)

MediaStudio Pro features enhanced quality of MPEG videos with the option of choosing the variable bit rate (VBR) encoding method. This method produces better picture quality with a smaller file size. To set this property, select MPEG in file save format. Click Options in Save as Video File dialog box and choose Variable in Video Data Rate in the Compression tab of Video Save Options dialog box.



To help you create DVD/VCD/SVCD files, Video Editor now has eight MPEG subsets under Media Type in the Video Save Options dialog box. Users can now easily save their videos as DVD/VCD/SVCD (NTSC or PAL) by simply selecting the desired media type from the drop-down menu.



**Note:** Availability of MPEG 2 support depends on the product specifications in your region.

Save the settings that you have provided for your video as a template. Instead of going over the steps again, in just a few mouse clicks, you can come up with the preferred settings by applying a template.

**To save the settings as template:**

1. In **Create Video File** dialog box, click **Template**.
2. Select **Add Template**. Enter a preferred name for the template. Settings provided for the template are displayed in **Save options**.

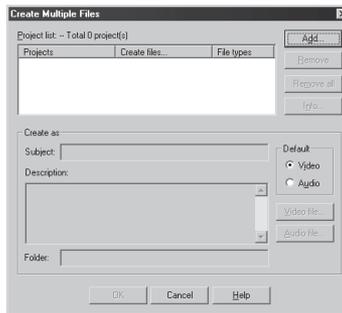


## Performing a batch video creation

Video Editor allows you to create a number of video files from different projects automatically. This is ideal if you want to render your videos with your machine unattended, such as overnight.

*To perform a batch video file creation:*

1. Click **File: Create - Multiple Files** to open the **Create Multiple Files** dialog box.
2. Click the **Add** button. In the **Open** dialog box select the **project file** (\*.DVP or \*.VSP) you want to create a video file from. Once selected, click **OK**. The standard **Create Video File** (or **Create Audio File**) dialog box opens.
3. In the **Create Video File** dialog box enter a **Name** and set up any other **Options**. Click **Save** when finished. The dialog box closes and you return to the **Create Multiple Files** dialog box. Select the next project file you want to render and repeat.
4. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the video files are created in the order they appear in the **Project list** box.



*Create Multiple Files dialog box*

**Note:** Clear the **Display data rate warning message** option in the **General** tab of the **Preferences** dialog box if you do not want the creation process halted if the actual data rate exceeds the defined data rate.

## Analyzing a video file's data rate

In Video Editor, you can analyze a video file and view a graphical representation of the data flow for the entire sequence. This provides detailed information about the file and its data rate. This information can be used to target high data rate areas for more compression using key frames.

### *To perform a data rate analysis:*

1. Click **File: Data Rate Analysis** to open the **Data Rate Analysis** dialog box.
2. Browse for and select the video file that you want to analyze and then click **Analysis**.



*Data Rate Analysis dialog box*

The **Data Rate Analysis** window details the various attributes of the file and shows a graph indicating the size of each frame in the video. This graph contains a number of blue frames which indicate key frames in the video sequence (key frame diamonds are also visible beneath the Preview window). For some video compression schemes (such as Cinepak), you can control these key frames and arrange their order so that you get the maximum benefit out of compression.

By looking at the analysis graph, you can pinpoint peaks in the graph which would benefit most from being key frames. For more on understanding key frames and compression, see the Appendix, page 393.

*To edit the key frames on the data rate analysis graph:*

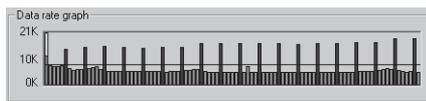
1. Select the frame you want to make or remove using the **Key frame Controller** beneath the **Preview** window.
2. To make a key frame, click the **Add Key frame** button. A key frame is placed on the Key frame track and the frame in the data rate graph changes to blue. To remove a key frame, click the **Remove Key frame** button. The respective key frame disappears from the Key frame track and the frame changes to gray. To return a clip to its original settings click **Restore**.



*Preview window with key frame controller*

**Note:** Removing a key frame doesn't remove the frame itself, it only removes the reference to that frame as a key frame.

3. Click **Save As** to save the new key frame information to a **Key file (\*.KEY)**. To apply the key file, you need to re-render the video file again, making sure you specify the key file in the **Key frame control** group box in the **Video Editor** tab of the **Video Save Options** dialog box (see page 219).



*Data rate analysis graph*

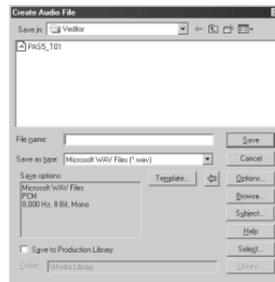
**Note:** Not all compression schemes will follow the key file, and those that do, such as Cinepak, may still insert key frames wherever they determine there is a need. This is out of the control of Video Editor and in the hands of the compression scheme itself. Therefore, you may sometimes find that removing key frames does not change your video appreciably in your next analysis.

## Creating an audio file

You can create audio files from a clip or group of clips in the audio tracks using the **File: Create - Audio File** command. These files can then be opened in Audio Editor for more precise editing, or you can use them in another project.

### *To create an audio file:*

1. Click **File: Create - Audio File** to open the **Create Audio File** dialog box.
2. Select the drive and folder where you want to save the file and select the file type you want to create from the **Save as type** list.
3. Enter a **File name**.
4. Click the **Options** button to view or edit the specific details of the file in the **Audio Save Options** dialog box. The **Compression** tab contains the options you need to specify to determine the quality (and thus the size) of the audio file. Click **OK** to accept the current audio attributes.
5. Click **Save**.

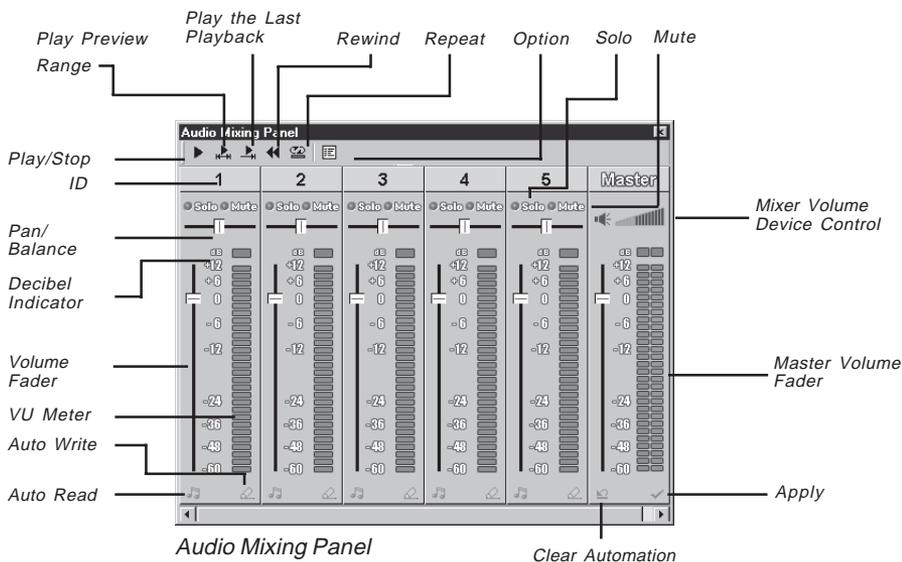


*Create Audio File dialog box*

You can also append a subject line and a short description to your file as well as save the file to the Production Library. Clicking the **Select** button also allows you to assign a thumbnail image from any of the clips in the project for use as a visual representation of the file in any preview enabled dialog box or browser.

## Audio Mixing Panel

MediaStudio Pro features a professional way of audio processing through the **Audio Mixing Panel**. This panel allows you to do audio mixing by adjusting Volume Fader and Pan/Balance controls. Because this is a floating panel, you can adjust audio settings while listening to them or viewing the videos. It consists of Volume Fader, Pan/Balance Control and VU Meter for each audio track, which is numbered according to the corresponding audio track in the Timeline. You can also make 2 or more audio tracks share the same settings by grouping them and turning the Audio Mixing Panel to Group Layout. For more information, see "Grouping audio tracks" on page 232.



Each track (or group if in Group Layout) has a separate control in the Audio Mixing Panel:

-  **Play/Pause** plays all the audio clips in the Timeline instantly. Once pressed, the button changes to Pause. If you click Pause, the video clip stops at the current frame and the button returns to Play.
-  **Play the preview range** plays only the clips covered in the preview area.
-  **Play the last playback** plays the range of the previous playback.
-  **Rewind** rewinds the audio file depending on the time selected.
-  **Repeat** plays all the clips in the Timeline instantly and continuously until you click Stop.
-  **Options** displays other audio settings that you can apply when doing audio mixing.



**ID** specifies the track or group number for both Track and Group Layout.

-  **Solo** monitors a single track and temporarily mutes all other tracks where this option is disabled.

-  **Mute** temporarily converts the audio track to silent. This allows you to listen to other tracks while doing audio mixing.



**Pan / Balance** allows you to pan a monophonic clip or balance a stereo clip.



**Volume Fader** controls the loudness of the audio clips in a track. Dragging the slider increases and decreases the volume. When you are working in Auto Write mode, changes made in the controls reflect the cue bar inside audio clips in the Timeline.



**Decibel (dB) Indicator** displays the volume level in decibel unit (dB). The dB indicator ranges from +12 to -60. 0 represents the original, unadjusted volume of the audio stream. +12 indicates the topmost level while -60 is almost silent.



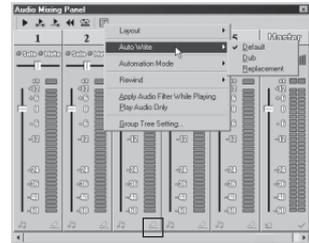
**VU Meter control** displayed on the right side of the Decibel indicator. It displays how loud or silent an audio clip is. If the meter reaches the peak level and changes to Red color, it is recommended to lower the volume fader to avoid clipping.

Audio mixing process gives you two modes in modifying volume controls in real time, **Auto Read** and **Auto Write**.



**Auto Read** reads the settings you made to Volume Fader and Pan/Balance controls then uses these data to control the audio level of the track during playback. This option only reads the modified settings but does not change the original audio settings of the audio clip.

**Auto Write** reads and then records the adjustments made to the audio settings. The original settings will be replaced by the new data specified in Volume Fader and Pan/Balance controls. There are three modes to do Auto Write process, you can access this modes by clicking **Option: Auto Write**.



**Mixer Volume Device Control** modifies overall pan/balance control of your sound card. Dragging the pointer to the left decreases the volume of your sound card while dragging the pointer to your right increases the volume of your sound card.



**Master VU Meter control** displays two VU meters representing sound mixing for left and right channels.



**Master Volume Fader** drag to control the overall volume level of the mixed audio output.



**Apply** applies new adjustments made in Volume Fader and Pan/Balance controls to the Timeline audio tracks.



**Clear Automation** clears the auto write process stored in the memory.

Toggle between these buttons to control how MediaStudio Pro processes the adjustments you make for each track or group.

Located at the right side of the Audio Mixing Panel is the Master Mixer. It consists of two controls to help you adjust the overall volume output of your system's sound card. Instead of switching to Windows Volume Control, you can adjust the volume here by simply dragging the sliders of the **Master Volume Fader** or balance the output to your speakers by adjusting the **Mixer Volume Device Control** from left to right.

## Grouping audio tracks

When working with the **Audio Mixing Panel**, you can make multiple tracks share one audio setting by grouping them together. We call this the "Mixing down" process. Instead of adjusting the audio settings of a track and then playing again to modify other tracks, here you can simply group the preferred tracks to share one audio setting.

The Audio Mixing Panel has two working layouts, **Track** and **Group Layout**. When you switch to Group Layout, the ID switches according to the number of groups you have specified in the **Group Tree** dialog box. When you group audio tracks and select Track Layout, the panel will display the five (5) audio tracks, but when you adjust the audio settings, the changes will also reflect on the track that is included in the group.

### *To group audio tracks:*

1. After inserting audio clips to the Timeline, click **Window: Audio Mixing Panel** to do audio mixing.
2. The **Track Layout** is the default layout of the panel. To group preferred tracks, click **Options: Group Tree Setting**.
3. In the **Group Tree** dialog box, select the tracks you want to group first. You can do this by holding [CTRL] while selecting the tracks.
4. Click **Group** to include the selected tracks to the first group. Then repeat step 3 to group other tracks. You may undo grouping by clicking **Ungroup**.
5. Click **OK** to apply group settings.
6. To switch the Audio Mixing Panel to **Group Layout**, click **Options: Layout - Group**. The number of columns displayed in the Audio Mixing Panel will depend on the number of groups you have specified.



**Note:** You can still work in **Track Layout** even if you have grouped audio tracks. The settings of the tracks in a group will be the same even if you modify only one track in a group.

## Modifying volume controls in real time

In MediaStudio Pro, tinkering with your audio track's volume settings is easier. The **Audio Mixing Panel** is a simple yet powerful tool that helps you adjust the controls of your audio file. With the Audio Mixing Panel, you can manipulate audio track levels and Pan/Balance tracks in real time while listening to the audio track.

### *To modify volume control:*

1. Select the point where you want to begin the recording process.
2. Select **Window: Audio Mixing Panel**.
3. Find the corresponding **ID** for the Timeline audio track you want to edit in the Audio Mixing Panel. The track name appears at the top of each mixer track.



4. Click **Auto Write** at the bottom of the track where you want to apply the automation process.
5. Click **Options: Auto Write** on the upper right side of the Audio Mixing Panel. Select one of the following modes:

✓ Default

- Select **Default** to edit the saved volume level and Pan/Balance data without having to drag the controls during recording to begin the write process. In this Auto Write mode, all previous adjustments in the audio track will be erased. This is ideal if you want to keep a particular control setting throughout a recording or if you want to write automation at the start of playback.

✓ Dub

- Select **Dub** to make adjustments by simply dragging the Volume Fader to your desired level. This allows you to modify the saved volume level and Pan/Balance data while dragging the Volume Fader and Pan/Balance controls. Upon releasing the mouse button, the controls return to their original position. This is ideal if you want to adjust a partial setting of an audio clip from a certain position to another in real time.

✓ Replacement

- Select **Replacement** to edit the saved volume level and Pan/Balance data while dragging the Volume Fader and Pan/Balance controls. Although similar in function with Dub, you do not need to keep on

dragging the Volume Fader to make adjustments for the audio clips. You only have to drag the Volume Fader to your desired position and release the mouse button. The controls shall remain in their modified positions.

6. Click **Play**  in the Audio Mixing Panel to begin recording. Click **Repeat** to play the program continuously or click **Play the Preview Range**  to hear your selected part of the track.
7. Drag the **Volume Fader** up to increase volume level or down to decrease volume level.
8. Click **Stop**  to end a recording. Click **Auto Read**  to prevent overwriting a previously applied automation.

**Note:** You can still apply the changes you have made in the audio settings even when **Auto Read** is activated by clicking **Apply** on the lower right corner of the Audio Mixing Panel.

9. Drag the edit line towards the beginning and click **Play** to preview your changes.

## Frame by Frame Audio Preview

Aside from working with audio cues and setting audio mark-in and mark-out times, you can also preview your audio files frame by frame using the controls in the Source Window. This is especially useful when working with clips that has dialogues. You can easily go to a frame in the clip, like when a person starts or stops speaking, then make the necessary adjustments.

### *To preview an audio file frame by frame:*

1. Double-click an audio clip in the Timeline to open it in the **Source Window**.

**Note:** You can also open an audio clip file in the Source Window first before inserting it into the Timeline.

2. Click the **Next Frame** and **Previous Frame** buttons to go to a specific frame of the Audio clip. You can also use the arrow keys to preview each frame of the clip. Press the left arrow key to display the frame immediately preceding the current frame and the right arrow key to display the next frame in the clip.
3. After previewing each frame, you may then add audio cues and set mark-in and mark-out times on your clip.

## Creating an image sequence

---

While Video Paint is your best choice for drawing on your video, there may be times when you want to extract a series of frames from your clip for editing in a more powerful image editing application, like Photoshop or PhotoImpact. You can do this by creating a **Ulead Image Sequence (\*.UIS)** file of the video project or preview region. When you create a Ulead Image Sequence, Video Editor sequentially numbers each frame and saves it as a standard image file. You can convert these images back to a video file using the **File: Convert - Video File** command and selecting the **\*.UIS** file type.

### *To create a Ulead image sequence:*

1. Click **File: Create - Video File**.
2. Select **Ulead Image Sequence Files (\*.UIS)** and the drive and folder where you want to save the frames of the video.
3. Enter a **File name**.
4. Click the **Options** button to view or edit the properties for each of the image sequence files.

**Note:** *When creating a Ulead image sequence, all options in the Video Save Options dialog box are ignored except for those in the Format tab.*

5. Click the **Format** tab and select the file format and data type of the images in the sequence. If the file type you select allows customization, the **Image Save Options** button is enabled.

6. Click **OK**. The **Options** dialog box closes returning you to the **Create Video File** dialog box.
7. Click **Save**.

Animation programs frequently have the option of outputting animations as an image series. These can, of course, be imported into MediaStudio Pro (see page 139 for details).

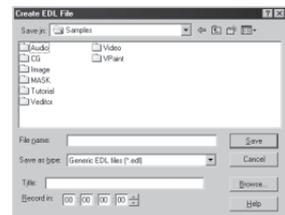
## Creating an Edit Decision List (EDL) file

If you are producing work that is intended for broadcast or requires further post-production (online editing) work, then Video Editor allows you to create a generic **Edit Decision List (EDL)** file. An **EDL** is a text file that records the positions of your clips in the Timeline as well as the different effects and transitions used. When preparing an EDL, it is important that you contact your post-production house to determine the format they use as well as which effects are supported – particularly because not all post-production companies support the wide array of effects available in Video Editor.

**Note:** You must post the timecode (see the next page) onto each of your clips in a video project before creating an EDL. To do this, you first need to have captured the video from a controllable source with timecode capabilities.

### To create an EDL file:

1. Click **File: Create - EDL File** to open the **Create EDL File** dialog box.
2. Select the drive and folder where you want to save the EDL.
3. Enter a **File name**.
4. Enter in a title for the EDL file in the **Title** entry box (maximum 64 characters).
5. Specify the starting time in the **Record in** box. This tells the production house where in the video sequence to start recording.



Create EDL File dialog box

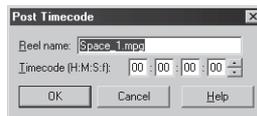
## Posting timecode

If you plan to create an EDL, you need to make sure that you have posted a timecode onto each of the clips in your video project. This is because the post-production house needs to know where your original source clips are located on tape. If a clip does not have the correct timecode, the post-production house will use 00:00:00:00 as the starting point for playing a clip during recording.

**Note:** *To accurately post timecode, you need to have recorded the timecode at the time of capture using a controllable device.*

### *To post timecode:*

1. Click **Clip: Post Timecode** to open the Post Timecode dialog box.



*Post Timecode dialog box*

2. Type the name of your source video in the **Reel name** entry box, for example, "Wedding #1."
3. Specify the appropriate time to start recording from the source in the **Timecode** spin box.

The timecode should have been recorded when you captured the video from Video Capture using a controllable device. You can view this timecode by clicking **View: View Capture Log** in Video Capture and then loading in the original batch list file (BCT).

4. Click **OK**.

## Outputting to analog video tape

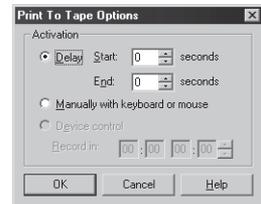
To output to an analog video tape, you should ensure that all the video sequences you used were created from field-based video and that you saved the video file as field-based. Using non-field-based video results in a slight flicker in the final analog video. Your video should also be equivalent to the resolution of analog video, such as 640x480, 30fps (field-based), and 24-bit color (for NTSC devices). You must create your video using **EXACTLY** the same settings as your captured video. Anything less results in resampling which introduces degradation. Consult your capture board's manual for detailed instructions on the attributes of the captured video. You can also right-click on a selected video clip on the Timeline and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu to see this information.

If you have already created an avi file with your project, it is easy to print the finished movie to tape.

**Note:** *To output a video to tape, you need a video capture board which supports this, or a similar device with a VGA to TV converter. It is also advisable to have a controllable device that allows you to control the recording from Video Editor.*

### *To output an avi file to video tape:*

1. Click **File: Print To Tape: Video File** to open the Select Video File dialog box.
2. Locate and select the file you want to output and then click the **Options** button. The Print To Tape Options dialog box opens.
3. Set the time **Delay**. **Start** determines the length of the delay before the video is played while **End** sets the length for after the video has played. Selecting **Manual** allows you to control playback with your keyboard or mouse.



*Print To Tape dialog box*

**Note:** *Setting a delay gives you time to activate your recording device and get it up to speed before the video plays on your screen.*

4. Select **Device control** if you want MediaStudio Pro to control your video camera while recording your project.
5. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and then **Open** to begin playing back the sequence.

Once you click **Open**, your entire screen blacks out and after the specified duration the video begins to play back. (Hit a key on the keyboard or click your mouse to start playing if you chose the **Manually with keyboard or mouse** option.) You may also want to print your movie directly from the Timeline to video tape without creating a file.

*To output directly from the Timeline to video tape:*

1. Click **File: Print To Tape: Timeline** to open the Select Timeline dialog box.
2. Choose whether to output the **Entire project** or just a selected **Preview range**.
3. Select **Options** to open the Print To Tape Options dialog box and follow steps 3 and 4 of the outputting an avi file procedures.
4. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and then **OK** again to begin playing back the sequence.

The movie then plays back while rendering, the same as it would when rendering for a preview. After the rendering is finished, the video is played for recording, the same as when copying an avi file to video tape.

**Notes:**

- *Before the video starts playing, be sure to start your recording device. Once finished, use Video Capture to play back the video directly from the video capture source to see the results.*
- *To cancel or end the playback, press the [Esc] key.*

It is not necessary to use MediaStudio Pro to send your video back to tape. There are many dozens of different kinds of capture boards and each comes with its own software for capturing and recording to tape. Some people prefer to edit their video in MediaStudio Pro and then output to tape using the capture board's proprietary software.

Under a FAT 16 file system (Win95), there is a 2GB file size limitation. Under FAT 32 (Win95 OSR2, Win98 and Windows XP), there is a 4GB file size limitation. If you use NTFS (WinNT, Win2000 and Windows XP), theoretically, there is no limit to file size. One way around the file limitation problem is to create files smaller than 2GB and load them into MediaStudio Pro's Timeline sequentially. You can then use Timeline playback to play the files back seamlessly to tape.

## Creating a VCD

---

A VCD is simply a special version of a CD-ROM. The exciting thing about this format is that it can be read by most newer stand-alone DVD players, which are becoming very popular.

The format used on a VCD is MPEG-1. When you want to create a VCD file, you need to create a special WhiteBook standard MPEG-1 file that has *very* technical specifications. Fortunately, creating such a file is easy with MediaStudio Pro.

### *To create an MPEG-1 VCD:*

1. Open your project and click **File: Create - Video File**.
2. Select **MPEG files (\*.mpg)** from the **Save as type** list.
3. Click the **Options** button.
4. Click the **Compression** tab.
5. From the **Media type** list, select **NTSC VCD** (or **PAL VCD**, depending on your TV standard).
6. Click **OK**. Enter a name and click **Save** to render your movie.

---

## Creating an SVCD

---

SVCD (Super Video CD) is an enhancement to VCD. It can hold up to 35-60 minutes of high quality full motion video in MPEG-2 format with up to 2 stereo audio tracks. Much like DVDs, SVCDs also supports HTML style hyperlinks, still images, playlists or slideshows, and multi-level hierarchical menus and chapters.

### *To create an SVCD file:*

1. Open your project and click **File: Create - Video File**.
2. Select **MPEG files (\*.mpg)** from the **Save as type** list.
3. Click the **Options** button.
4. Click the **Compression** tab.
5. From the **Media type** list, select **NTSC SVCD** (or **PAL SVCD**, depending on your TV standard).
6. Click **OK**. Enter a name and click **Save** to render your movie.

---

## Creating a DVD

---

DVD stands for "digital video disc" or "digital versatile disc" and is considered as the next generation of optical disc storage technology. What makes it exciting is that it is a bigger and faster CD which can hold cinema-like video, high quality audio (which is better than an ordinary CD audio), and computer data that uses MPEG-2 codec.

### *To create a DVD file:*

1. Open your project and click **File: Create - Video File**.
2. Select **MPEG files (\*.mpg)** from the **Save as type** list.
3. Click the **Options** button.
4. Click the **Compression** tab.
5. From the **Media type** list, select **NTSC DVD** (or **PAL DVD**, depending on your TV standard).
6. Click **OK**. Enter a name and click **Save** to render your movie.

## Creating MPEG-2 files

---

MPEG-2 is used on DVDs and digital satellite television. MPEG-2 yields highly compressed files of extremely high quality. There are a couple of things you should consider about this format. First of all, MPEG-2 files can only be played back on your PC and only with the proper software player. The software player must have the proper codec for it to play the MPEG-2 video. Secondly, because MPEG-2 is so powerful, it requires a fast CPU (or a dedicated MPEG-2 video card) not only to create the video files, but also to view them (a 450MHz CPU is a recommended minimum). With that in mind, MPEG-2 is an excellent choice for any type of movie. MPEG-2's highly compressed nature means that you can fit about 16-20 minutes of video onto a CD. This is plenty of space for most home movies.

### *To create MPEG movies:*

1. Click **File: Create: Video File**.
2. Select **MPEG Files (\*.mpg)** from the **Save as type** list.
3. Click the **Options** button.
4. Click the **Compression** tab.
5. Select the type of MPEG file you want to create.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Enter a **File name** for your MPEG movie and click **OK**.

## Creating WMV/ QuickTime streaming file

---

Streaming video is also a good way to display video on the Internet. This allows your video to begin playing while still downloading. MediaStudio Pro supports RealNetwork's RealVideo (\*.RM), Microsoft's Advanced Streaming format (\*.WMV, \*.ASF, or \*.ASX), and Apple's QuickTime (\*.QT or \*.MOV). These are the formats popularly used on the Internet.

The latest version of Video Editor supports the latest Windows Media technology that allows you to create Windows Media Video (WMV) files.

### *To create a QuickTime streaming file:*

1. Open your project and click **File: Create - Video File**.
2. Select **QuickTime Movie Files (\*.mov, \*.qt)** from the **Save as type** list.
3. Click the **Options** button.
4. Click the **Compression** tab.
5. Select **Prepare for Internet Streaming**. This makes the file available for Internet viewing.
6. Select the streaming method to be used from the drop down list. This determines how the video file will be delivered over the Internet.
  - **Fast Start** Uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and FTP (File Transfer Protocol) as transmission protocols for streaming the video file over the Internet. While waiting for the downloading to be finished, the browser utilizes QuickTime Plug-in to play the completed portions of the video file.
  - **Fast Start - Compressed** Select to compress the data for streaming the video file over the Internet through HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and FTP (File Transfer Protocol).

- **Hinted Streaming** Uses RTP (Realtime Transport Protocol) or RTSP (Real-Time Streaming Protocol) as transmission protocols for streaming the video file over the Internet. Hinted Streaming creates hint tracks for every streamable media file types. It does not save the downloaded files locally and is used for viewing only.

7. Click **OK**.
8. Enter a **File name** for your QuickTime movie and click **OK**.

*To create a WMV streaming file:*

1. Open your project and click **File: Create - Video File**.
2. Select **Windows Media Video (\*.wmv, \*.asf)** from the **Save as type** list.
3. Click the **Options** button.
4. Click the **Profile** tab. This displays the current template used for compressing media files so they can be streamed over the Internet.
5. Click **Customize** to select the desired template for optimizing media files for simultaneous download and playback on the Web.

**Note:** *When choosing a template, consider the type of users that will be playing your media files over the Internet. For instance, use the Dial-up modems - ISDN option for Multiple Bit Rate Video (default) template to cover the range of home PC users that access the Internet through modem or single-channel ISDN connections. For users with higher speed connections such as corporate LANs, dual-channel ISDN or DSL, choose the network bandwidth that best satisfies your target audience.*

6. Click **OK**.
7. Enter a **File name** for your Windows Media Video movie and click **OK**.

---

## Exporting to Ulead DVD MovieFactory

---

In MediaStudio Pro, you can export your video files to **Ulead DVD MovieFactory LE** to create DVDs, VCDs and SVCDs. With DVD MovieFactory's DVD authoring capabilities, you can create selection menus like the ones you see on Hollywood DVDs.

*To export your videos to DVD MovieFactory:*

1. Select **File: Export - Disc Authoring**.
2. In the **Select Video File** dialog box, select the file you want to open in DVD MovieFactory then click **OK**.
3. The DVD MovieFactory program opens.
4. In the **Select Project Format** dialog box, select the output disc format (DVD, VCD, or SVCD) you want to use then click **OK**.

---

## Exporting to Ulead DVD-VR Wizard

---

In MediaStudio Pro, you can record or add videos to a device that supports DVD-RAM (using DVD-VR format) or DVD-R.

*To export your videos to DVD-VR Wizard:*

1. Select **File: Export - Ulead DVD-VR Wizard**.
2. In the **Select Video File** dialog box, select the file you want to open in the DVD-VR Wizard then click **OK**.
3. The DVD-VR Wizard opens.

**Note:** *To learn more about using DVD Movie Factory and DVD-VR Wizard, see the back pages of the manual for a comprehensive discussions of the two programs.*

## Working with a Digital Video camcorder

---

All movies on a computer are composed of ones and zeros and are therefore digital. **Digital Video (DV)** with a capital “D” and a capital “V” however, stands for a very specific format of video, just like VHS, High-8, or Beta. This format can be understood (played back, recorded) by your DV camcorder. When you have the proper hardware (capture board) and software (DV codec), it can also be understood by your computer.

The most exciting thing about DV is that it can be copied from your camcorder to your computer, and then back to your camcorder (after editing, of course) without any loss of quality. While previous versions of Ulead MediaStudio Pro supported even the very first DV products on the market, this latest version now offers comprehensive support for DV in all of its manifestations. This includes, but is not limited to, Type-1, Type-2, PAL, NTSC, and even the device control of your camcorder.

### *To record a movie to your DV camcorder:*

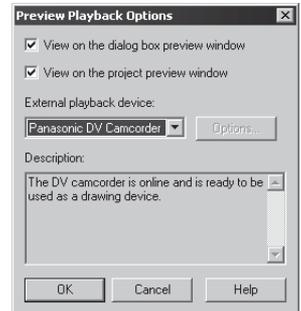
1. Turn on your camcorder and set it to **Play** mode (or **VTR** mode). See your camcorder’s manual for specific instructions.
2. Click **File: Select Device Control**. From the **Current device** list, select the appropriate device control driver for your DV camcorder.
3. Click **File: Export - DV Recording** (or **TI DV Record**, or **PAPI DV Record** depending on your capture board).
4. Select the DV AVI file that you want to send to your camcorder. Click the **Open** button.
5. In the **DV Recording - Preview Window**, preview your DV file and click **Next**.
6. In the **DV Recording - Record Window**, click the **DV recording** button to begin recording the movie to your camcorder.

## External preview plug-in architecture

MediaStudio Pro supports third party plug-ins where you can preview transition effects and video filters using the Preview Window, or directly to the DV camcorder. If your display card supports two output devices aside from DV camcorder, use it to preview the filter/effect by selecting **Dual Head Device** on the **External playback device** option of the dialog box.

### *To preview using an external playback device:*

1. In the Production Library, select **Transition Effect**, **Moving Path**, or **Video Filter** from the drop down list.
2. Double-click on the thumbnail to open the corresponding dialog box.
3. Click the **Preview Playback Options** button below the Preview window.
4. In the Preview Playback Options dialog box, choose an external playback device where you want to preview your video file from the drop-down list.
5. Click **Options** to adjust the settings of the selected preview device.
6. Click **OK**.



## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- You can create a video file after you complete your project (see page 218).
- Select the **Perform SmartRender** option for faster file creation time (see page 219).
- Crop a video to reduce frame size and remove noise from the edges (see page 222).
- Save the settings you have provided for your video as template (see page 223).
- Use the **File: Create - Multiple Files** command to create video files from a number of different projects (see page 224).
- Use the **File: Data Rate Analysis** command to analyze a video file and adjust the key frames to optimize compression (see page 225).
- Adjust audio settings using the **Audio Mixing Panel** (see page 228).
- Make multiple tracks share one audio setting by grouping them together (see page 232).
- Modify volume controls in real time (see page 233).
- Preview your audio clips frame by frame using the **Source Window** (see page 234)
- Remember to post timecode when creating an EDL (see page 236).
- If outputting to video tape, match your video file's attributes to the television's resolution (where possible) (see page 238).
- Create a VCD with an MPEG-1 movie file (see page 240).
- Create an SVCD / DVD file (see page 241).
- Create an MPEG-2 on a PC (see page 242).
- Create WMV / QuickTime streaming file (see page 243).
- Use a Digital Video (DV) camcorder with MediaStudio Pro (see page 246).
- Preview your files using an external output device (see page 247).

# Video Paint



# Getting started

*Video Paint is a powerful rotoscoping program that allows you to paint directly over any frame in a video sequence. With Video Paint, you can quickly and easily create special effects such as lightning bolts, lasers beams, virtual sets and mattes. You can also use the wide range of natural and particle-based painting tools to work on single images for use in other projects, such as Web pages and presentations.*

### ***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Understanding the basics ..... p.252*
- *Viewing edit windows ..... p.263*
- *Working with frames in a project ..... p.265*
- *Customizing Video Paint ..... p.269*

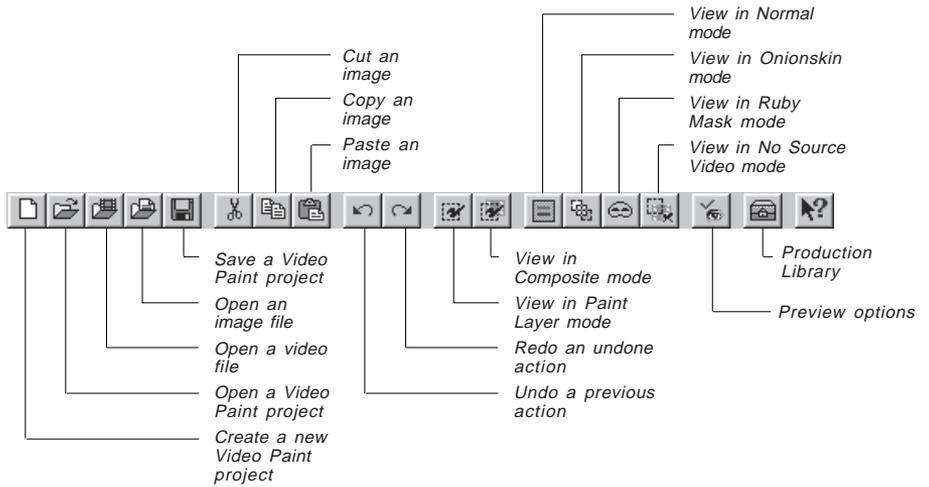
## Understanding the basics

Video Paint allows you to select, draw, paint, and enhance each image that makes up the frames of a video sequence. Each of the frames appears as a clip in the Filmstrip panel. You can scroll through this panel to view the clip or select a specific frame to work on. When you select a frame, it opens automatically as an image in an edit window. Once an image is displayed in an edit window, you can begin to work on it, paint or enhance it using various Video Paint tools.

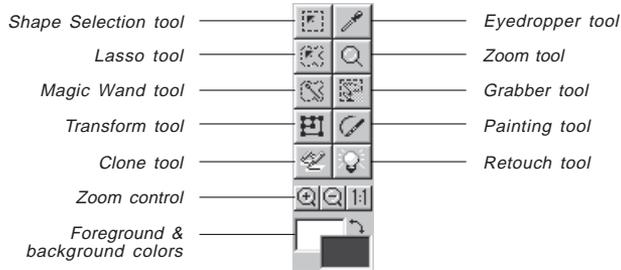


*Video Paint's program window*

### Standard toolbar



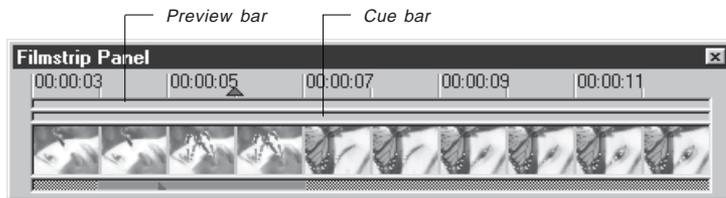
### Tool panel



### Color palette



### Filmstrip panel



## Working with the Filmstrip panel

The **Filmstrip panel** displays each frame of a clip in the Video Paint workspace. At the bottom of the Filmstrip panel is a green view box which indicates the current frames in view. By dragging on this view box, you can scroll through these frames to see the entire contents of the clip. When you have found a frame you are interested in, click on it to display it in an edit window.

**Note:** You can also switch to the next or previous frame by using the **Navigator** or pressing the **[CTRL+RIGHT]** and **[LEFT]** arrow keys. To go to any cues, or the first or last frames, press the **[CTRL+HOME]** and **[CTRL+END]** keys.

When you select a frame, red place markers appear above and below the Filmstrip panel indicating the frame's position. (The markers are placed to the left edge of the active frame.) The top marker indicates the frame's position (timecode) in the current view while the bottom marker indicates the frame's position relative to the entire clip.



Markers indicating the position of the current frame in view (top) and its position relative to the entire clip (bottom)

### Adjusting the view of the Filmstrip panel

You can change the frames currently displayed in the Filmstrip panel by dragging the bottom view box. The size of the view box differs depending on the number of frames in the clip and the current display unit. (The display unit refers to how many frames appear within each division. For example, at 5x each division represents five frames.) To change the display unit, right-click over a frame in the Filmstrip panel and select a size from the **Display Unit** submenu. In the same menu, you can also define the size of the thumbnails shown in the Filmstrip panel. Use a larger size if you are at a higher resolution or have trouble seeing the frames clearly. (To view more frames, float the panel and drag its borders to resize it.)

## Working with edit windows

When you work on an image in an edit window, you can choose to operate in one of two modes: **Composite** or **Paint Layer**. **Composite mode** allows you to select portions of an image (the source video) and then move or manipulate them. Once moved or manipulated, the selection becomes a floating selection area and moves up to the paint layer. By switching to the **Paint Layer mode**, you can then work on these new selection areas just as you would work on the video source image in Composite mode. Generally, you want to stay in Composite mode unless you need to edit specific portions of the paint layer, such as removing areas of paint no longer required in a frame.

**Note:** *You can have any number of edit windows open at the same time, but only one per clip in the Filmstrip panel.*



## Saving your work

In Video Paint, the video clip you are working on is referred to as a **project** which you save as a special **Ulead Video Paint file (UVP)**. UVP files do not save the source video file, just the clip information which contains a pointer to the original video file as well as a list of all the edits performed on each frame in the video sequence. This serves to keep the file size down and doesn't force you to have to duplicate existing video files. (When you open a UVP file, you need to ensure that the source file is still present and in the same location. If not, a message box appears asking you to browse for the file.)

### **Packaging a Video Paint project**

While you can save your work as a UVP file, you may also want to occasionally package it with the **File: Package** command. This backs up the original files, making them easier to transport as well as archive. Packaging a file saves a project as a UVP file as well as the original video or image file it references, moving or copying that file to a new location. This is especially helpful if you plan on editing the project on another machine, such as a laptop.

**Note:** *To transfer a Video Paint project file and its source files to another PC, use the same directory structure as the original to ensure the clips are correctly loaded.*



## Opening files into Video Paint

To get started in Video Paint, you need to open a file into the workspace. You can open existing Video Paint, video or image files. When you open a file, Video Paint allows you to select which frames in the file to open. This ability to "partially edit" your work speeds up processing time, particularly for larger files, as you don't have to load the many hundreds of frames that make up a video sequence. (The maximum duration for any file you open is 30 seconds.)

**Note:** *Video Paint automatically converts any file you open into its workspace to True Color. If you want to constrain your editing to an indexed-color palette, then load the palette into the Custom tab of the Color panel, see page 286.*

### *To open a video file:*

1. Click the **Open Video File** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: Open - Video File** to open the Open Video File dialog box.
2. Click the **Duration** button to open the Duration dialog box. In this dialog box, you can preview the file as well as select which frames to open.



*Duration dialog box*

3. If you know the timecode for the frames you want to open, enter them in the **Mark-in** and **Mark-out** spin boxes. If you do not know them, use the **Preview** window's control bar to play back the video; you can then click the **Mark-in** and **Mark-out** buttons respectively to select the beginning and ending frames for the sequence you want to open.
4. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and you return to the Open Video File dialog box.
5. Click **Open** to place the file or selected frames into the workspace. The first frame of the sequence automatically appears in an edit window.

### ***Adjusting the number of open frames***

If you have already opened a video or Video Paint project file and decided that you only want to work on a specific number of frames within the clip, click **File: Edit Duration** to select the frames you are interested in. Video Paint saves the project (if changes have been made) and then reloads it, so only the selected frames appear. (To edit frames outside of the current project, use the **File: Open** command and select the frames in the Duration dialog box.)

**Note:** *If you want to work on each frame in a large video file, such as 30 seconds, first open the entire file into Video Paint and then save it as a UVP file. You can then use the Edit Duration dialog box to open specific frames without having to reopen the original video file.*



### **Starting a new Video Paint project**

In Video Paint, you are not restricted to working only on existing video and image files. You can create a new "empty" project which you can paint on to create your own virtual set or background matte. Once finished, you can insert the UVP file into Video Editor as part of a larger project.

#### ***To create a new Video Paint project:***

1. Click the **New** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: New [CTRL+N]** to open the New dialog box.
2. Specify the duration of the project in the **Duration** spin boxes as well

as its frame rate in the **Frame rate** combo box. You can choose from the list in the drop-down menu or enter your own.

If the project is intended to be placed into Video Editor, make sure your frame rate is equal to the frame rate of your Video Editor project. Otherwise, you may get dropped or duplicated frames.

3. Select the frame size for the project using the options in the **Frame size** group box. Again, if the project is destined for Video Editor then the frame size should be identical to the Video Editor project.
4. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and a new clip is created in the workspace, with the first frame appearing in an edit window. The color of these frames is determined by the current background color. To change their color after creation, click **Frame: Film Color**.

### Creating a video or image file

Once you have finished working on a Video Paint project, you can create a new video or image file which merges your edits with the original source file. To create a video file, click **File: Create Video File**. This opens the standard Create Video File dialog box which has the same options as those in Video Editor. (To learn more about these options, see the "Creating a movie" section, page 218.) If you plan on using your work in a Video Editor project, insert the UVP file directly by selecting the UVP file type from the Files of type combo box in the Insert Video File dialog box. If you first create a video file and then insert it into Video Editor, you run the risk of reducing quality as the file undergoes compression twice, once in Video Paint and once more when you create the final video sequence in Video Editor.

To create an image file, click **File: Create Image File**. This opens the Create Image File dialog box which allows you to select the data type, file format, resolution, and size of the image. If you plan on using the image in other projects you are working on, make sure that the size is the same and, if you have to compress the file, use a format with a lossless compression scheme such as (TIF). Otherwise, use a standard format such as the Windows bitmap (BMP).



## Performing Cut and Copy operations

When working on your project, you will often want to copy changes you have made in one frame to others in the video sequence. To do this, you use the **Cut** and **Copy** buttons on the Standard toolbar or the **Edit: Cut** and **Copy** commands. **Copy** duplicates a selected area or floating selection while **Cut** removes it from the image. Once cut or copied, you can paste it into the current frame or into another. When there is no selection area or floating selection, Cut and Copy works over the entire image (in Composite mode), or only edits (in Paint Layer mode.) If there are no edits, then the commands work over the entire image.

**Note:** *You can paste image data to and from Video Paint to any other image editor such as Ulead PhotoImpact. If pasting to PhotoImpact, any mask information is retained.*



## Performing a paste operation

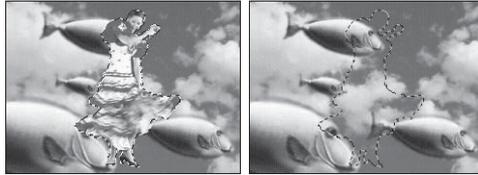
Once the Clipboard contains an image, either from Video Paint or any other image editor, you can paste it into an edit window. To do this, click the **Paste** button on the Standard toolbar or **Edit: Paste** [CTRL+V]. Images are pasted at the same location they were cut or copied from. If the pasted image was from a frame or other image larger than the active frame, then the image is pasted at the top left corner of the current view.

Another option for pasting is the **Edit: Paste - Selection Under Pointer** command. This pastes the image with the center of the image anchored to your mouse pointer. Clicking anywhere within the edit window anchors the image on that particular spot. The advantage of this command is that you can position the pasted image without having to keep your finger on the mouse button, providing greater freedom of movement.

### **Pasting masks**

When you paste an image, it contains a selection area (mask) plus the contents of the area itself (the image data). In Video Paint, you can choose to paste only the mask without any image data by clicking **Edit: Paste: As Mask** or **Mask Under Pointer**. After pasting, all you will see is the

selection marquee which now selects a portion of the active image. This is useful if you wish to copy a selection area over multiple frames so that it selects the same area each time.



*Pasting an image as a selection (left)  
and as a mask (right)*

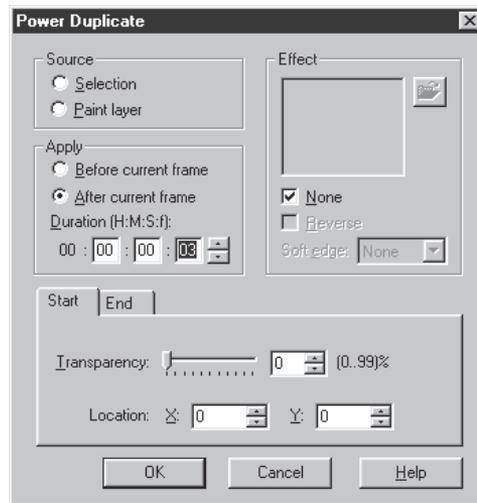
## Duplicating changes over frames

The **Cut** and **Copy** are useful for duplicating changes from one frame to another. Often, however, you will want to duplicate changes over several frames, even over several seconds. To do this, Video Paint provides the **Duplicate** commands which work by duplicating your last edits. To duplicate your edits to a new frame, first select the frame containing the edits from the Filmstrip panel and then click either the **Edit: Duplicate Last Floating Selection [CTRL+K]** or **Duplicate Last Paint Layer [CTRL+L]**. **Duplicate Last Floating Selection** places a copy of the last active floating selection, while **Duplicate Last Paint Layer** copies everything present in the last active paint layer.

To duplicate an action over several frames, you need to perform a power duplication. **Power duplication** is much more flexible than the other Duplicate commands as it allows you to not only specify how many frames to duplicate over, but also the transparency for each duplication and whether or not to add an effect to each duplicated portion. You can also choose different start and end positions to have the duplicated portions move over the entire sequence.

### *To perform a Power Duplication:*

1. If not already selected, select the frame in the Filmstrip Panel with the edits you want to duplicate.
2. Click **Edit: Power Duplicate** to open the Power Duplicate dialog box.



*Power Duplicate dialog box*

3. Select the source you want to duplicate from the **Source** group box. The **Selection** option duplicates the currently active floating selection or, if the selection is not floating, its mask, while **Paint layer** duplicates the entire contents of the paint layer. (If you do not have a floating selection active, then only Paint layer is enabled.)
4. Specify where you want the duplication to take place in the **Apply** group box. You can choose to perform the duplication over frames appearing before or after the active frame. In the **Duration** spin box, indicate how many frames to duplicate over.
5. Set the **Start** and **End frame transparency** in the Start and End tabs. (Default is 0, or no transparency.) You can also specify the **X** and **Y** coordinates from where to place each duplicated edits. By having different start and end coordinates, you can have the duplicated edits appear to move linearly over time.
6. Specify an effect to apply to the duplicated edits in the **Effect** group box. (Setting the duration of the duplication to one frame disables the Effect options.)

**Note:** *Effects* are previously saved mask files that allow you to control which areas of each frame are affected by the duplication as well as their intensity.

- Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the active floating selection or paint layer is duplicated over the specified number of frames. If you power duplicate over a number of frames, a message box may appear indicating that the operation has exceeded the number of frames specified in the **Clear undo history for multiple frame actions** option in the **General** tab of the Preferences dialog box (see page 269). If you select to continue, the duplication is performed but you will be unable to undo its effect. If you want to retain Undo, increase the number of frames in the Clear Undo history for multiple frame actions option or decrease the number of frames to duplicate over.



*Creating a matte (frame 2) and then power duplicating it across the others*

## Placing cues

In Video Paint, you can place cues at any frame in a project to mark it for later editing or identification. To place a cue, click the **Cue bar** (located under the **Preview bar** of the ruler) at the appropriate location in the Filmstrip panel; a **blue cue marker** appears. The default name of the clip, **'&p'**, uses the timecode of the cue's location. For example, the default name of a cue at the 12th frame would be '00:00:12'. To view a cue's name once it has been placed, double-click on it. If you wish to move a cue, drag it along the Cue bar to a new location; to remove a cue drag it off the edges of the Cue bar.



*Cues placed at the 5th and 7th frames on the Filmstrip panel*

### **Managing project cues**

To change the name of a cue, click **View: Cue Manager**. This opens the Cue Manager dialog box which allows you to delete cues, rename them or select specific ones to jump to. For renaming a cue, the Rename Cue dialog box appears for you to type a name and description. To select a cue in the Cue Manager dialog box, click the **timecode** displayed under the **Frame position** button.

**Note:** To quickly rename a cue, double-click it to open the Rename Cue dialog box.

### **Viewing edit windows**

Whenever you open a file, the first frame of the sequence appears in an edit window at its original size (1x). Video Paint allows you to control the size of this edit window as well as zoom in or out from the image. This helps you to see more easily the areas you are editing as well as identify areas for further enhancement.



### **Zooming on an image**

When you edit an image, you may want to see part of it in greater detail or more of the image at a smaller size. You can do this using the **View: Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** commands, the **Zoom tool**, and/or the **Zoom quick** buttons on the Tool panel. You can view frames at any size from 1/16x to 16x the actual size.



*Zooming in on an image to 3x*



### **Using the Zoom tool**

Use the **Zoom tool** when you want to zoom in on an image while at the same time controlling which part of the image is displayed in the edit window. To use the Zoom tool, select it and then click the area of the image you want to see better. The image zooms in beneath your pointer's position. To zoom out, hold the **SHIFT** key as you click. (You can also use the **Zoom slider** on the Attribute toolbar to quickly zoom in and out on the center of the image.) To focus on a specific area, you can drag over the image, creating a rectangular viewing marquee, and when you release your mouse, the image automatically zooms in on the area selected. (If the viewing area is too large or the image is already at 16x magnification, the view is not adjusted.)

#### **Notes:**

- You can also press the **[+]** and **[-]** keys to zoom in and out on images, regardless of the current tool selected.
- Pressing the **[z]** key while using another tool automatically switches that tool to the Zoom tool. Releasing the **[z]** key then switches the tool back.

### **Using the Global Viewer**

When an entire image cannot be displayed within the edit window, scroll bars appear allowing you to navigate around the expanded image. The **Global Viewer** provides an alternative to scrolling as it displays a thumbnail view of the entire active image. This thumbnail image contains a floating frame that can be moved independently around the viewer. Moving the frame automatically repositions the view of the image in the edit window. To open the Global Viewer, click the box that appears at the intersection of the scroll bars at the lower right corner of the edit window. When you release your mouse, the Global Viewer disappears.

**Note:** To return the image to its original view (1x), click the **1:1** button on the Attribute toolbar or **View: Actual View**.



*Using the Global Viewer to change views*



## Fitting an image in the edit window

When you use the **Zoom** commands, the image window does not change to fit the new image size. Therefore, after zooming, the entire image may not be displayed in the edit window and scroll bars appear along the window's edge. If you wish to display the complete image within the edit window, choose one of the available **Zoom** commands from the **View: Fit in Window By** submenu. (The maximum zoom level available is determined by the size of the image and your current display mode.) An alternative to the **Fit in Window By** command is the **Fit in Window** button on the Attribute toolbar or **View: Fit in Window**. This automatically resizes the image to fit within the edit window at the largest possible size without introducing scroll bars.

## Working with frames in a project

---

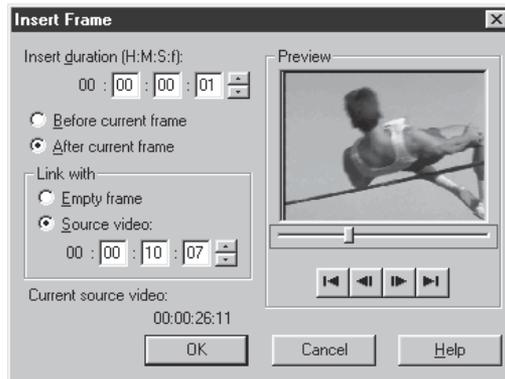
When you work on a project in Video Paint, you often need to control the number of frames present as well as their content. The **Frame menu** offers you several commands that allow you to manage frames as well as control how frames are displayed in edit windows.

## Inserting frames

There may be times when you need to extend the length of a video or insert a new sequence into the middle of existing frames. Video Paint allows you to do this by inserting frames. When you insert frames, you increase the duration of the project by the number of frames you add. If the project becomes too large, you may find that it slows down processing time. To avoid this, insert fewer frames or use the **File: Edit Duration** command (see page 257) to make the project shorter.

### *To insert frames:*

1. Select the frame in the Filmstrip panel where you want to begin inserting the additional frames.
2. Click **Frame: Insert** to open the Insert Frame dialog box.



*Insert Frame dialog box*

3. Specify the number of frames to insert in the **Insert duration** spin box and then select either the **Before current frame** or **After current frame** options to determine whether the inserted frames precede or follow the active frame.
4. Specify the content of the new frames in the **Link with** group box. The **Empty frame** option fills new frames with the film color while the **Source video** option uses the frames from the source video file, starting from the position specified in the **Timecode** spin box. (To define this position, you can enter the timecode directly or move the

slider in the **Preview** group box; as you move, the timecode changes accordingly.)

5. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the new frames are inserted at the specified location.

## Duplicating frames

The **Frame: Duplicate** command is similar to the Insert command in that it adds new frames to the clip in the Filmstrip panel. The difference is that it fills the new frames with the same content of the frame currently displayed in the edit window. When you click this command, the Duplicate Frame dialog box opens allowing you to specify the number of frames you want to duplicate. Once you click **OK**, the frames are duplicated after the active frame, pushing any following frames to the right.

## Deleting frames

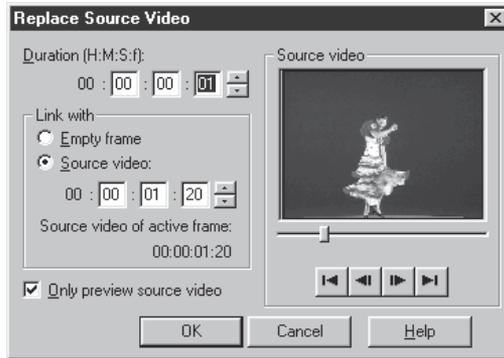
The **Frame: Delete** command removes a frame or frames from your project, shortening the duration accordingly. (This does not remove them from the actual source file.) When you click this command, the Delete Frame dialog box opens allowing you to specify which frames in the sequence to remove. You can enter the timecode of the frames in the **Start** and **End** spin boxes or use the Mark-In and Mark-Out buttons on the **Preview** control bar.

## Replacing frames

The **Frame: Replace Source Video** command allows you to replace the content of a frame with that of another frame from the same source video, or with an empty frame. For example, you could replace the image in frame 6 with the image in frame 32. This is particularly useful if you have inserted a number of empty frames and wish to fill those frames with others from the same clip, or replace the source video with an empty frame before opening it in a Video Editor project.

### *To replace frames:*

1. Select the frame in the Filmstrip panel where you want to begin your replacement.
2. Click **Frame: Replace Source Video** to open the Replace Source Video dialog box.



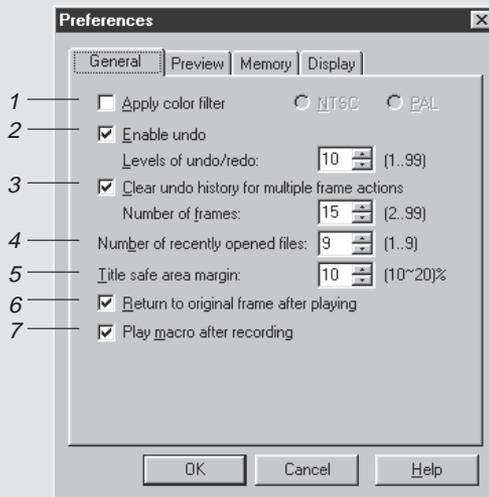
*Replace Source Video dialog box*

3. Specify the number of frames to replace in the **Duration** spin box and then specify what to replace the frames with in the **Link with** group box. The **Empty frame** option replaces the frames with the current film color while the **Source video** option uses frames from the source video file, starting from the position specified in the **Timecode** spin box. Select the **Only preview source video** option if you do not want the preview video to display any edits currently in the Paint layer.
4. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the following frames are replaced with the specified content.

## Customizing Video Paint

The Preferences dialog box (opened by double-clicking the Status bar or **File: Preferences [F6]**) provides options for customizing certain aspects of the program's behavior. This is always a good place to start before you do any editing as it helps optimize Video Paint for each project and adapts the program to more closely match your work habits.

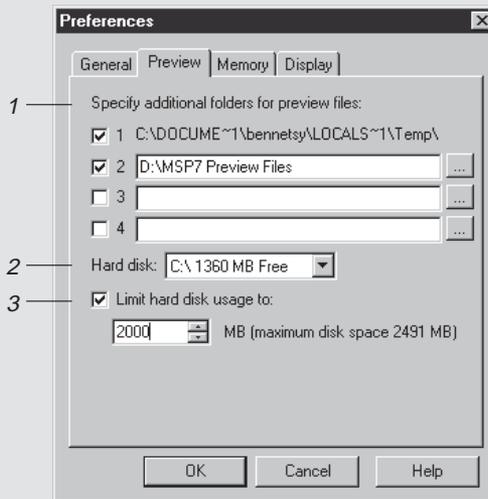
### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: VIDEO PAINT TAB



- 1. Apply color filter** controls how colors are displayed in Video Paint, based on the NTSC or PAL color models. Select the appropriate option if you plan on having your video played back over an NTSC or PAL device, such as a television. If you are designing for monitor display only, leave this option clear.
- 2. Levels of undo/redo** specifies the maximum levels of undo/redo allowed by Video Paint (up to 99). As Video Paint allocates more memory for each level of undo/redo, you may find that too high a level adversely affects performance. In such cases, restrict the level to 3-4 only. You can, of course, choose not to have undo/redo to maximize performance, but any editing performed is final.
- 3. Clear undo history for multiple frame actions** clears the Undo history whenever you attempt to perform an action that exceeds the number of frames in the following **Number of frames** spin box. By clearing the Undo history, your operations are carried out more quickly as memory does not need to be reserved for undoing. However, if you clear the Undo history, you will be unable to undo any previous actions. Leave this clear if you have enough system resources to handle the memory demand for multiple actions.

4. **Number of recently opened files** specifies how many file names are stored in the Recent History list found in the File menu.
5. **Title safe area margin** specifies the margin percentage for displaying any titles in a video project. This is useful if you intend on sending your video out to video tape or for broadcasting, as television has a different resolution than a computer monitor and edges which are viewable on screen may disappear. As a guideline, for NTSC devices choose 12%, PAL 10%. To view the title safe area marquee, click **View: Title Safe Area**.
6. **Return to the original frame after playing** returns any sequence to the first frame after it has been played (like a CD player). When clear, the sequence stops on the last frame after playing (like coming to the end of a tape in the VCR).
7. **Play macro after recording** plays a macro immediately after recording it. Leave this clear if you are content with your macro recording or if you want to test it yourself on another frame.

#### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: PREVIEW TAB

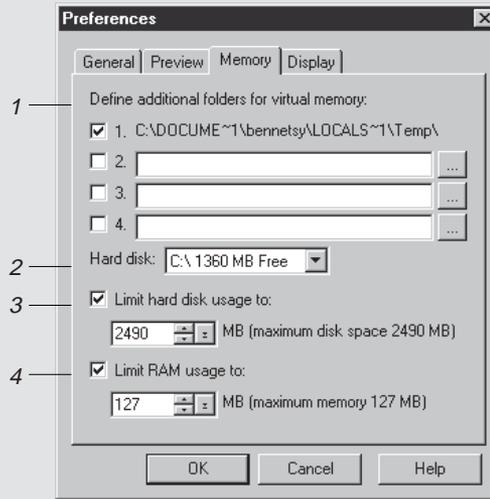


The **Preview** tab allows you to define additional memory space for creating preview files only.

1. **Specify additional folders for preview files** indicates which folder Video Paint can use to save preview files. The folder shown above is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

2. **Hard disk** displays how much free space you have on your hard drive.
3. **Limit hard disk usage to** specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for Video Paint's purposes. If you are only using Video Paint and want to optimize performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background you may want to limit this to about half. If left clear, Video Paint uses your system's memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

#### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: MEMORY TAB

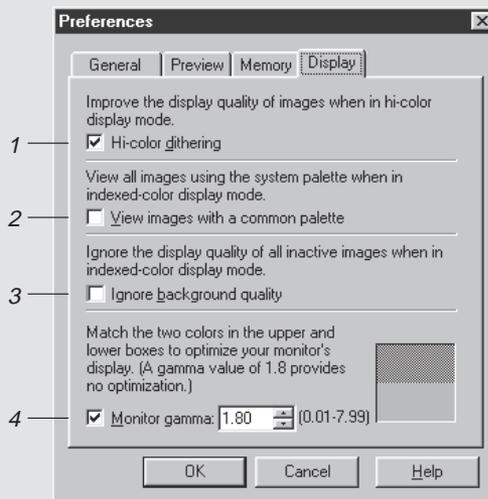


The **Memory** tab gives you the opportunity to specify folders to provide additional virtual memory when working with files. You can also determine how much total disk space is allocated for virtual memory as well as how much space is allocated in RAM for use by all MediaStudio Pro programs.

1. **Define additional folders for virtual memory** allows you to specify the folder used by the MediaStudio Pro programs as additional working space. For example, when you don't have enough RAM, the MediaStudio Pro programs can use extra memory from the hard disk (virtual memory) as temporary RAM. The first folder shown in the Memory tab is the TEMP folder defined by the SET TEMP statement in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. If you have more than one drive on your system, you can specify more than one temporary folder in the available entry boxes. If not, leave the entry boxes empty.
2. **Hard disk** indicates the space available on your hard disk. (The folder specified in the **Define additional folders for virtual memory** section must be located on this hard disk.)

3. **Limit hard disk usage to** allows you to specify how much memory you want to allocate to the MediaStudio Pro programs for use as virtual memory. If you want to run other programs in the background, then choose about ½ the maximum amount. To use Video Paint defaults, leave this option unchecked.
4. **Limit RAM usage to** allows you to specify how much memory you want to allocate to the MediaStudio Pro programs for use in RAM. If you want to run other programs in the background, then choose about ½ the maximum amount. To use Video Paint defaults, leave this option unchecked.

#### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: DISPLAY TAB



The **Display** tab allows you to modify the way images are displayed as well as calibrate (adjust) your monitor. You should calibrate whenever you change monitor, display adapters or the environment in which you work as lighting and temperature can also affect a monitor's performance.

1. **Hi-Color dithering** allows you to improve the display of True Color images when you are in Hi-Color display mode.
2. **View images with a common palette** displays all images using the system palette. This is only enabled when you are in 256-Color display mode and makes your work more efficient as there is no need to repaint any of the images with a new palette. This option is particularly useful when preparing CD-ROM based titles and you need to see how images appear in 256-Color display modes.
3. **Ignore background quality** is enabled when in 256-Color display mode and improves performance by not repainting any background images when you change views. (Do not check this option if you need to identify background images.)
4. **Monitor gamma** allows you to calibrate your monitor for the optimum display of images. Follow the procedure over to correctly calibrate your monitor.

*To calibrate your display:*

1. Click **File: Preferences** to open the Preferences dialog box and click on the **Display** tab.

At the bottom of the tab are two Grayscale squares. The top square is a checkered pattern of black and white pixels, which when viewed from a distance, looks 50% gray. The bottom square is 50% gray as your monitor currently shows it. In a well calibrated monitor, both of these squares should look approximately the same.

2. Examine the two color squares and if the two squares look different, adjust the **Monitor gamma** spin box until the bottom square looks similar to the top square.

The monitor gamma value can be any number from 0.01 to 7.99. If none of the squares exactly match, try and estimate the best match. In general, your value should fall within 0.8 – 2.4; if not, try adjusting the brightness and contrast controls on your monitor.

3. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and your monitor is now optimized for displaying images in the MediaStudio Pro programs.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- Video files are displayed as **clips** in the **Filmstrip panel** with the first frame appearing as an image in an edit window (see page 252).
- Control the **size of frames** in the Filmstrip panel by using the right-mouse pop-up menu (see page 254).
- Open only a few seconds of a video file for speedier editing (see page 256).
- Use **Power Duplicate** to copy edits over multiple frames (see page 260).
- Use **cues** to identify important frames in a project (see page 262).
- **Calibrate** your monitor to get the best possible display of images (see page 273).

## Painting

*Video Paint's painting tools enable you to easily touch-up and enhance any frame in your video project. The painting tools themselves present a variety of functions, from the advanced Retouch and Clone tools to the more common Paintbrush and Transform tools.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Working in different display modes* ..... p.276
- *Making selections* ..... p.280
- *Working with color* ..... p.285
- *Using the Painting tools* ..... p.289
- *Transforming selections* ..... p.294
- *Using the Clone tool* ..... p.295
- *Using the Retouch tool* ..... p.296
- *Recording macros* ..... p.298
- *Applying filters* ..... p.301
- *Previewing your work* ..... p.302

## Working in different display modes

---

In Video Paint, you can choose to view edit windows in a number of different display modes. These modes make identifying your edits easier. They also provide a means for creating mattes and animations. There are four display modes to select from: **Normal**, **Onionskin**, **Ruby Mask**, and **No Source Video**, each of which can be selected by clicking their respective buttons on the Standard toolbar or choosing their corresponding commands in the **View: Display Mode** submenu.



### Normal mode

**Normal mode** displays the contents of the active frame in the Filmstrip panel. This mode is best when you wish to see the actual frame and select parts of it, or to use it as a reference for performing various painting and retouching tasks.



### Ruby Mask mode

The **Ruby Mask mode** is useful when you want to create a video or image matte that protects certain areas of an underlying video from any edits you may perform. Mattes are often used in conjunction with Video Editor. A good example of this is a "hold-out" matte that is used to remove the matte-lines that often occur around objects which have been filmed on a blue screen background.

**Note:** *To apply the video matte, you must load it into Video Editor.*

A **Ruby Mask** works by placing a semitransparent ruby colored layer over an image. Whenever you paint on the image, you are actually removing the mask, therefore revealing the underlying image. The advantage here is that you do not see the color of the paint as you go, which makes it easier to identify elements in the image to either cover or remove. When you change modes, the removed area of the mask is filled with the current foreground color.

*To create a video matte in Ruby Mask mode:*

1. Select the first frame of the video you want to apply the matte over. The frame appears as an image in the edit window.
2. Click the **Ruby Mask mode** button on the Standard toolbar or **View: Display Mode - Ruby Mask**. A ruby film appears over the image.
3. Select a paint tool and define its attributes in the Brush panel (see page 290).
4. Start painting over the mask. The areas affected are removed from the mask revealing the underlying image. If your painting removes too much of the ruby mask, click the **Erase** button in the Shape tab of the Brush panel. Now when you paint, the ruby mask is applied.
5. Select the next frame and click **Edit: Duplicate Last Paint Layer**. (The paint layer from the previous frame is copied to the current frame.) Once duplicated, you can start painting on it as in the previous step.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until the matte is complete. (If the object you are creating the matte over does not move, then you only need to paint one frame.)
7. Change display modes to see your changes and click the **Save** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: Save** to save the project as a UVP file. If you are going to apply the matte in Video Editor, you need to replace the source video with a solid color (see page 267) so that you can better key out the background and foreground.



*Painting over an image in Ruby Mask mode*

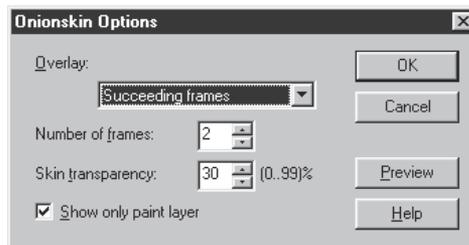


## Onionskin mode

**Onionskin mode** is extremely useful when you are creating animations and want to be able to see how your edits are progressing from frame to frame. It works by placing transparent layers of each successive frame you edit over its predecessors, allowing you to easily see your changes from the previous frame as you work in the current frame.

### *To work in Onionskin mode:*

1. Select the first frame of the video you want to paint over. The frame appears as an image in the edit window.
2. Select a paint tool and define its attributes in the Brush Panel (see page 290).
3. Click the **Onionskin mode** button on the Standard toolbar or **View: Display Mode - Onionskin**.
4. Click **View: Onionskin Options** to open the Onionskin Options dialog box.



*Onionskin Options dialog box*

5. Select on which frames to apply the onionskin in the **Overlay** combo box. Use **Succeeding** if you are editing frames to the right of the active frame (toward the last frame), or **Preceding** if you are editing frames to the left (toward the first frame).
6. Specify a value in the **Number of frames** spin box. The value you enter here determines how many frames the onionskin layers appear over. In most cases a value of 3-4 is sufficient to allow you to see the path of your animation. If you lose your reference you may want to increase this or increase the Skin transparency to make your edits more clear.

7. Define a transparency for each skin layer in the **Skin transparency** spin box. This value indicates the transparency of the skin layer, and not the edits you are performing. For example, a skin transparency of 30% produces a light result as it only allows 30% of the edit to show through. The higher the value the more of the edit you can see. (Click the **Preview** button to test how your changes affect any existing onionskin layers.)
8. Select the **Show only paint layer** option to have the onionskin applied just to the paint layer. This speeds up processing time because only the edited portions have a transparency applied. If left clear, the transparency is applied to the source video plus the paint layer. (Depending on the type of video, this may produce no noticeable effect.)
9. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the settings take effect immediately.

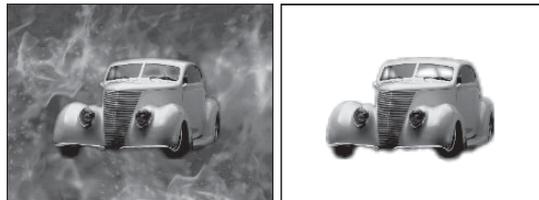


*Painting over frames in Onionskin mode*



### **No Source Video mode**

When working on an image, it can often get confusing trying to determine where the image starts and the edits end. In such cases, you can remove the image from view by selecting the **No Source Video mode**. No Source Video mode removes the image from the edit window and replaces it with the current background color. This allows you to easily see your edits in the paint layer only. To view the frame's image, change back to **Normal mode**.



*Viewing an edit window with source video (left) and without (right)*

## Making selections

---

In Video Paint, whenever you apply a command or use one of the painting tools, it is applied over the entire image in the edit window. To restrict the command or painting tool to a certain area of an image, you first need to create a selection. To do this, Video Paint has three selection tools that offer a wide range of options for creating both simple and more complex selection areas. Once created, a selection marquee appears outlining the selected area.

**Note:** *In Paint Layer mode, the selection tools work by selecting the content of the paint layer and not areas on the original image. (To do this, you need to be in Composite mode.)*



### Understanding the selection marquee

When you create a selection, a dotted line appears around the edges of the selected area. This dotted line is called the **selection marquee**. The marquee can either be floating (containing image data) or non-floating, (selecting the source video). Floating selections appear in the paint layer of an image and are created whenever you:

- move a selection area,
- perform a transformation on a selection area,
- paste a selection into an image,
- click **Edit: Make Floating**. (This command can also be selected from the right-click pop-up menu.)

### *Hiding the selection marquee*

Whenever you create a selection or make a floating selection, an animated marquee appears indicating the selection border. This makes selections easier to identify as well as move. If you find the marquee distracting, or you prefer to see the entire selection as is, deselect the **View: Show Marquee** command. The next time you create a selection or make a floating selection, the marquee is not displayed.



## Selecting in the Composite and Paint Layer modes

If you are in **Composite mode**, any selection area you create selects elements of the actual image. Moving this selection or manipulating it in any way makes it a floating selection and moves it to the paint layer. Every time you create a new floating selection, any pre-existing floating selections are merged with the paint layer. In **Paint Layer mode**, the selection tools behave similarly to the way they do in Composite mode, except that they allow you to select the content of the paint layer only. In this way, you can more easily distinguish your edits from the underlying image and then select them for copying to another frame for further editing.

**Note:** *To make selection areas smoother, click the **Anti-alias** button on the Attribute toolbar. The next time you make a selection area, the edges blend in slightly with the surrounding background.*



An added feature of selecting in the paint layer is the **Shrink** button on the Attribute toolbar. When you select this button, any selection you make ‘snaps to’ the edges of your edits (as long as the edits are included in the selection).



## Selecting regularly shaped areas

The **Shape tool** allows you to select areas of an image based on a preset size and/or shape, such as a square, rectangle, circle or an ellipse. To determine the shape, click either the **Rectangle** or **Ellipse** buttons on the Attribute toolbar. (To create a square or circular selection, make sure that the **Constrain** button is selected.) To create a selection, drag your mouse over the image. If you want the selection to always appear the same size, click the **Fixed Size** button and enter the appropriate values in the neighboring spin boxes. The next time you click the image, a selection is made based on the size you defined. Using a fixed size is useful when you need to select same-size areas of an image, such as for a credit or title.



When you create a selection, it starts from where you first click your mouse. This is fine in most cases, but sometimes you may want it to start from the center, particularly if you are creating circular or square shapes. To do this, first click the **Draw From Center** button on the Attribute toolbar and then drag your mouse over the image starting from where you want the center of the selection to be.



*Creating a regular selection area*



### Selecting irregularly shaped areas

The **Lasso tool** allows you to select an area by drawing a freehand shape. This is especially useful for selecting difficult areas, such as a person's head or objects with a number of different angles. It operates in two ways: Dragging your mouse allows you to draw precise curved segments; clicking your mouse allows you to define straight line segments. By combining both drawing techniques, you can quickly outline selection areas that contain both irregular and straight segments. When you have finished outlining the selection area, double-click to release the Lasso and Video Paint automatically selects all image data within the bounds of the drawn selection area.



By checking the **AutoSnap** option on the Attribute toolbar, and then entering a value into the **Sensitivity** entry box (up to 10), Video Paint can help you quickly trace around irregularly shaped objects. The **Sensitivity** attribute works by specifying the range of contrast values that are used to define an object's edge and **AutoSnap** pulls the selection area to that edge as you draw. This works best when you are tracing a bright foreground

object against a dull background. (If you find the selection "pulls" to include unwanted areas, deselect the AutoSnap option or decrease the sensitivity.)

**Note:** *If you make a mistake while drawing a selection area or wish to start again, press the [Esc] key.*



*Creating an irregular selection area*



### Selecting an area containing similar colors

The **Magic Wand tool** is useful when you want to select specific colors in an image. When you click on an image, any colors that fall within the values specified in the **Similarity** entry box are included in the selection area. This is an effective way to select large solid colored portions of an image, such as a blue screen or patches of skin and clothing.

When you use the Magic Wand tool, it operates in one of two modes, **Line** or **Area**. In **Line mode**, dragging your mouse over an image creates a line that calculates the largest and smallest color values of the pixels under the line (any values entered in the **Similarity** spin box are also included). Releasing your mouse then creates the selection based on that range. **Area mode** works in much the same way except that instead of taking the values of pixels under a line it includes all pixels within a selected area. This mode works best for irregular areas containing similar colors, such as backgrounds and gradients.



*Creating a selection containing similar colors*

### ***Determining color similarity***

When using the **Similarity** entry box, enter a value that you feel closely reflects the range of colors you wish to select. To help determine the color similarity range, move the **Magic Wand** over target pixels in the image and notice the RGB color values displayed on the **Status bar**. Below is a guideline on what to expect when choosing particular color ranges, (you can only select a color range between 0 and 255):

- A value of 0 selects neighboring pixels with exactly the same color value, such as all white.
- A value of 255 selects pixels of all colors, thereby selecting the entire image.
- A value of 50 selects neighboring pixels that have values that differ from the pixel you click on by 50. For example, if you click on a pixel with values R25, G60, B190, neighboring pixels with values between R0, G10, B140, and R75, G110, B240 are selected.

### **Adding to or subtracting from a selection area**

Once you've created a selection area, you may discover that you left out a portion of the image you wanted to include. To add to an already existing selection area, press the [A] key and use the selection tool as you would to create a new selection area. The area you select is added to the rest of the selection area. To subtract from a selection area, press the [s] key and select the part of the selection area you want to remove.



*Adding additional areas to a selection*



### Moving a selection area marquee (mask)

Sometimes you will want to use a selection area without moving the image data it contains. For example, you may want to move a selection area to expose certain portions of an image, or to protect other portions from any effects or changes you may apply to the image. To do this, click the **Move Selection Marquee** button on the Attribute toolbar or use the **Grabber tool** on the Tool panel. Now, you can safely drag on the selection area without affecting the composite image. (The **Move Selection Marquee** is only active if the selection is not floating.)

#### Notes:

- Use the arrow keys on your keyboard to move a selection pixel by pixel.
- To move a selection marquee to another frame, first copy it and then click **Edit: Paste - As Mask**, see page 259.

## Working with color

Before you start painting on images, you need to select the color you wish to apply. In Video Paint, you can do this in a number of ways, from picking colors out of a palette to selecting colors directly from an image. At any time, two colors are active – the foreground and background. You can see these colors as color squares at the bottom of the Tool panel with the lower right square representing the foreground color. This is the color that is applied whenever you use a paint tool. The background color acts as the default color which is used each time you create a new project. You can quickly switch between the two by clicking the **Switch arrow** at the top right of the two color squares.

## Using the Color palette

The **Color palette** contains colors that you can apply to any image in the edit window. The way colors are displayed in the palette varies according to your selection in the **View: Color palette** submenu. You can display palette colors in one of four methods: **Map**, **Wash**, **Swatch**, and **Custom**. Which method you choose depends on the type of color you want as well as which color picker you are more familiar with. To select a color, click it with your mouse. The color then replaces the current foreground color. (If you already know the RGB values of the color you want, you can enter them directly in the appropriate RGB spin boxes.)

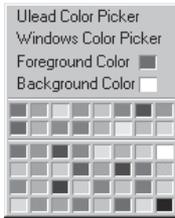
**Note:** When you run Video Paint for the first time, the Color palette is docked to the program window in Compact mode and shows the colors of the default method. To see all methods at the one time, deselect the **View: Color Palette - Compact** command. The Color palette is floated and shows each of the methods as tabs in the panel window. (This command can also be performed by holding down the [CTRL] key and right-clicking the Color Palette.)



Map Color Palette (left) and Wash Color Palette (right)



Swatch Color Palette (left) and Custom Color Palette (right)



## Selecting colors from the Color Picker pop-up menu

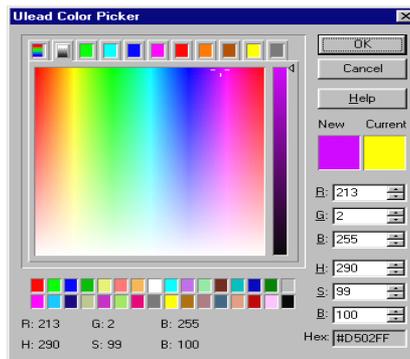
The **Color Picker** pop-up menu allows you to select a new color to replace the selected color square, or to choose from a range of Color Pickers. Each Color Picker provides a different method for selecting colors, and each is suitable for particular situations. (You can open the **Color Picker menu** by right-clicking over any color square in Video Paint.)

### Using the Ulead Color Picker

Selecting the **Ulead Color Picker** command opens a dialog box which displays a continuous color spectrum. The **color spectrum** shows hue, or color, from top to bottom and luminance, or the amount of brightness, from left to right. When you move your mouse over any colors, their respective RGB color values are displayed at the bottom of the dialog box and the color itself appears in the left color square. If you click and hold your mouse button over a color, a saturation bar appears and allows you to select a specific color. Releasing your mouse selects the color, subsequently displaying it in the right color square.

For a more precise color selection, you can choose your color by clicking one of the colored tabs above the color spectrum. This displays a range of colors similar to the color on the selected tab. From here, you can select the exact color by clicking the desired color cell.

**Note:** To select a particular color, enter its RGB values in the RGB spin boxes to the right of the Color Picker window.



*Ulead Color Picker*

### **Using the Windows Color Picker**

When you select the Windows Color Picker command, the standard Windows Color dialog box appears from which you can select a basic or custom color.



### **Selecting colors with the Eyedropper tool**

The **Eyedropper tool** enables you to select a foreground color from colors already in an image. As you move the Eyedropper over an image, the RGB color values of the image are displayed in the Status bar and eventually change to reflect the color changes from one pixel to the next. Clicking your mouse selects the color under the pointer as the foreground color.

**Note:** To change which color square is active, click beneath either the foreground and background squares on the Attribute toolbar. The next time you select a color, the active color square changes.



*Attribute toolbar of the Eyedropper tool*

### **Loading and saving color tables**

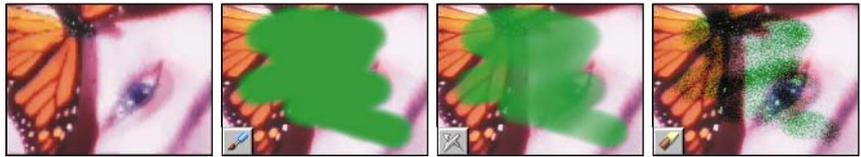
There may be times during your work that you find yourself continually using the same colors with which to paint. You can store these colors as color squares on the Attribute toolbar of the **Eyedropper tool**, or save them as a **color palette file (PAL)** using the **Custom** tab of the Color Palette. To do this, first change the color squares in the Custom tab to those of the colors you regularly use and then click the **Save** button to save the palette to its own file. (To change a color square, right-click it and choose a color from the available color pickers or palette.) Once a palette has been saved, you can bring it back into the Custom tab of the Color Palette by clicking the **Open** button.



## Using the Painting tools

The **Painting tools** in Video Paint offer an extensive variety which allow you to paint over an image using anything from a felt-tip pen to an oil brush. When you use a paint tool, the paint is applied directly to the paint layer and not the actual image itself. As such, you can work without fear of damaging the original image as well as easily copy your work over several frames.

To view the painting tools, click the **Paint tool** button on the Tool panel. The **Brush panel** opens and all the various brushes are displayed along the Attribute toolbar. To apply a paint tool, select the brush to use and then click and drag over the areas of the image where you want the paint to appear. For greater control over which areas are affected, select the area and/or zoom into the image for a better view. (To paint over several frames, see the "Duplicating changes over frames" section, page 260.)

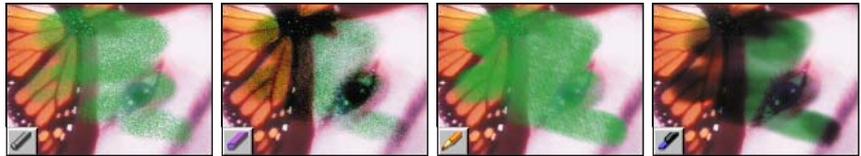


*Original image*

*Paintbrush*

*Airbrush*

*Crayon*

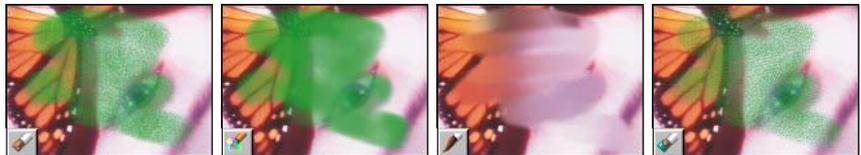


*Charcoal*

*Chalk*

*Pencil*

*Marker*



*Oil Paint*

*Particle*

*Drop Water*

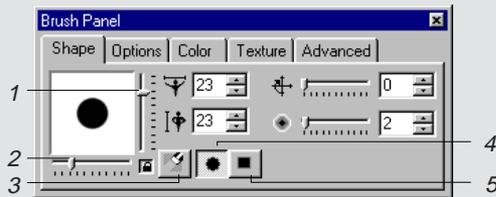
*Bristle*

## Specifying Brush panel attributes

When you choose a painting tool, the Brush panel displays the attributes for that tool in four folders: **Shape**, **Options**, **Color**, and **Advanced**. The current settings of these attributes are the same as they were when last selected. If you change them, you can save the new settings to the Production Library by clicking the **Save** button on the Attribute toolbar. The **Paint Gallery** of the Production Library also has a large number of paint brush presets, such as specific types of art-pencils (2B, 6H), felt-tip pens and effect brushes like fog and light. To use them as the current brush, double-click the thumbnail of the one you want or drag-and-drop it into an edit window.

**Note:** The attributes explained below indicate all possible tool options. These vary depending on the type of tool you are using.

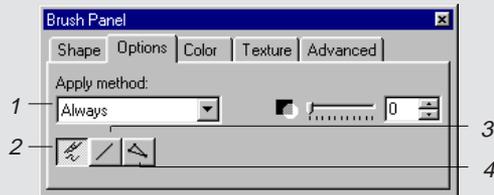
### BRUSH PANEL: SHAPE TAB



1. **Height** specifies the height of a brush. (You can also drag the vertical slider to the right of the preview. To keep aspect ratio, click the **Lock** button.)
  2. **Width** specifies the width of a brush. (You can also drag the horizontal slider at the bottom of the preview. To keep aspect ratio, click the **Lock** button.)
  3. **Erase** removes previously applied paint from the paint layer.
  4. **Elliptical** defines the shape of the brush head as elliptical. To use a circular head, lock the width and height sliders.
  5. **Rectangular** defines the shape of the brush head as rectangular. To use a square head, lock the width and height sliders.
- ✚ **Brush Angle** defines the angle of the brush tip, from 0 (perpendicular to the image surface) to 359 (the most extreme angle).
  - **Soft edge** adjusts the color blending along the brush's edge, from 0 (no blending) to 100 (complete blending). The greater the soft edges, the slower your painting takes effect because Video Paint has to calculate the appropriate amount of blend with the underlying image.

-  **Weight** defines how heavy the paint color is. The heavier the weight, the stronger the impression it leaves.
-  **Distribution** defines the placement of the brush bristles. The higher the value, the narrower the placement, while a lower value means a wider placement.
-  **Random** creates a random (although proportional) size variation among the bristles of a brush. The value entered here defines the percentage of variance.
-  **Bristle Thickness** defines the thickness of each bristle in the paint brush. The higher the number, the thicker each bristle and, as a consequence, the more paint it can hold.
-  **Density** defines the number of bristles the paint brush contains. The more bristles it contains, the more paint it can retain and thus the stronger the applied color.

#### BRUSH PANEL: OPTIONS TAB



1. **Apply method** determines how paint is applied to an image. Depending on the tool, you can choose one of the following:
  - **Always** replaces the original colors with the painted color.
  - **Hue and Saturation** applies only the hue and saturation values of the painted color.
  - **Hue Only** applies only the hue value of the painted color.
  - **Saturation Only** applies only the saturation values of the painted color.
  - **Luminosity** applies only the brightness and contrast values of the painted color.
  - **If Lighter** applies the painted color only if the painted color is lighter than the background.
  - **If Darker** applies the painted color only if the painted color is darker than the background.
  - **Difference** applies the color that is produced from the difference between the values of the original colors and the painted color. For example, if the underlying clip is R:10 G:210 B:125 and the overlaying clip is R:30 G:100 B:100 the resulting colors when merged are R:20 G:110 B:25 – (R:30-10 G:210-100 B: 125-100.) (Values outside of 255 are taken as absolute values.)

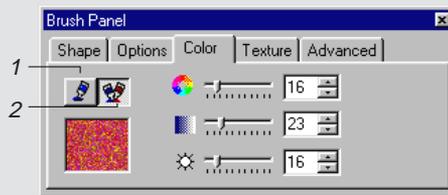
- **Addition** applies the color that is produced from adding the color values of the original colors with that of the painted color. For example, if the overlying frame is R:10 G:210 B:125 and the underlying clip is R:30 G:100 B:100 then the resulting color will be R:40 G:255 B:225 – (R=10+30 G=210+100 B=125+100). (Values greater than 255 are rounded down to 255.)
  - **Subtract** applies the color that is produced from subtracting the color values of the original colors with that of the painted color. As in the above example, R:10 G:210 B:125 and R:30 G:100 B:100 would result in the color R:0 G:110 B:25 – (R=10-30 G=210-100 B=125-100) (Color values less than 0 are rounded down to 0.)
  - **Multiple** applies the color that is produced from multiplying the color values of the original colors with those of the painted color and then divides the result by 255; rounding to the closest integer value for each color channel. For example, if the overlying clip color is R:10 G:210 B:125 and the underlying clip is R:30 G:100 B:100 the resulting color will be R:1 G:82 B:49 – (R=10\*30/255 G:210\*100/255 B:125\*100/255.)
  - **Inverse of multiple** works in the same way as above except it inverts the resulting color. For example, if the resulting color is black, the inverse will be white.
  - **Pigment** applies the color which is produced from blending the painted color with the original colors, much in the same way an artist creates new colors by mixing paints.
2. **Freehand** defines the drawing mode as Freehand. **Freehand mode** mimics painting by hand, applying paint as you move your mouse.
  3. **Straight Line** defines the drawing mode as Straight Line. **Straight Line mode** is for painting straight lines. To paint a straight line, first click the point where you want the line to start and drag to the point where you want it to end and release your mouse. (Pressing the **[SHIFT]** key constrains the line to an angle of 0°, 45°, or 90°.)
  4. **Connected Lines** defines the drawing mode as Single Line. This mode functions much like the Straight Line mode except that after a line is painted, you can select a new line segment and continue painting. Double-clicking then paints a straight line connecting the ending point to the starting point.

**Note:** If you make a mistake while drawing a single or connected line, or wish to start again, press the **[Esc]** key.

 **Transparency** defines how pure a color is. A transparency of 0 is pure color while a transparency of 100 produces no color.

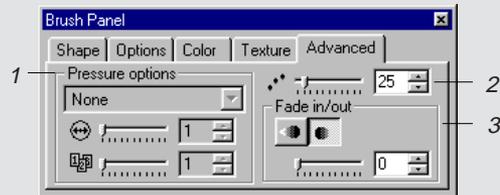
 **Wet Control** defines how wet paint is when it's applied, from 0 (the wettest) to 100 (the driest). The wetter the paint, the greater the amount of overflow.

## BRUSH PANEL: COLOR TAB



1. **Single Color** applies a single color as the brush paint.
2. **Multiple Colors** applies multiple colors as the brush paint. You choose which colors from the neighboring **Hue**, **Saturation**, and **Brightness** options. By controlling the value of these options, you determine how much color is applied. For example, more hue introduces more color while an increase in the saturation makes the colors appear stronger. When you paint, all the various colors are then applied producing a rainbow-like effect.

## BRUSH PANEL: ADVANCED TAB



1. **Pressure options** determine how paint is applied for tablet devices. If you do not have a tablet device installed, these options are disabled.
2. **Spacing** determines how close each drop of color is applied as a percentage to the current brush size. The higher the value, the farther away drops are applied. Likewise, a lower value applies color closer together. For example, a value of 100 places each drop of color next to each other, creating a dotted line effect, whereas a value of 300 places each drop of color at a distance 3 times the size of the brush.
3. **Fade in/out** mimics the consistency of paint on the specified brush type by defining how quickly it fades out or in when a stroke is made. A higher number equals a longer fade.

**Note:** The Brush Panel also shows the Texture tab when any of the painting tools (except for the Particle and Drop Water tools) is selected. You can choose a preset texture or load an image pattern and use it to paint over the frames in your clip.

## Filling an area with color

Apart from painting over an image with a paint tool, you can also fill a selection or the entire image with a solid color. To do this, click **Edit: Fill** [CTRL+F]. This opens the Fill dialog box from which you can select the color to use as the fill, the degree of transparency and the way the color is applied, such as the hue only or just the difference. (For more on these, see the description of the Options tab in the Brush panel, page 298). Once you have applied the fill, you can perform many interesting effects, such as filling an entire frame with white and then painting over it with a paintbrush in the **Erase** mode. This removes the white from the paint layer, revealing the underlying image. (This is a good technique for creating quick video mattes.)



## Transforming selections

After you've made a selection area, you can change its shape, size and orientation using the Transform tool. When you click the **Transform tool** button on the Tool panel, the Attribute toolbar changes to show each of the possible transformation options. The first, **Resize**, allows you to drag control points on the bounding box to distort the selection in several directions. To spin the selection, click the **Rotate** button or use one of the other fixed rotation buttons. You can also flip the selection horizontally or vertically using the **Flip Horizontally** and **Flip Vertically** buttons.



*Original image*



*Resizing*



*Rotating*



*Flipping horizontally*



*Flipping vertically*



*Rotating left 90°*



*Rotating right 90°*



*Rotating 180°*



## Using the Clone tool

The **Clone tool** is similar to the Paint tools except that it uses the image for its color palette. For example, you can paint onto an image with another part of the same image, or even from a second image in another edit window. This is useful when you wish to replicate an object in an image, such as creating dozens of fighter planes using one as the template, or if you want to remove areas from the foreground and replace them with the background, such as wires or props that were used during filming. When using the Clone tool, you can also choose the type of paintbrush you want to use from the Attribute toolbar. (To learn about cloning over several frames, see the "Duplicating changes over frames" section, page 260.)

### *To use the Clone tool:*

1. Click the **Clone tool** on the Tool panel to select it. The Attribute toolbar displays the available tools you can use to paint with and the Brush panel changes to show the available attributes for the selected tool.
2. Hold down the [SHIFT] key and click your mouse over the area you wish to clone. This area is marked with a crosshair and the mouse pointer changes to the clone pointer. (You can clone from the same image or from another edit window.)
3. Move to the area on the image where you want the clone to appear and start dragging your mouse. The crosshair changes to indicate the area you are cloning and as you paint you replace the area with whatever the crosshair passes over. (The size and shape of the area painted are determined by the current attributes in the Brush panel.)



In the Options tab of the brush panel, you can specify how the cloning point behaves as you paint with the **Absolute**, **Frame**, and **Relative** options. **Absolute** is the default mode and paints whatever the clone crosshair passes over. Whenever you release your mouse the crosshair returns to its original position allowing you to clone the same feature again. **Relative** allows you to clone continuously, retaining a relation-

ship with the clone crosshair regardless of where you place your mouse. (The clone crosshair does not return to the original location when you release the mouse.) This is useful if you are cloning large areas and often release your mouse and do not want to start from the beginning point. **Frame** is for cloning between different frames on the same clip. (To do this, first insert the file again so you now have two copies in the workspace.) Whenever you paint the contents on the target frame, these portions are replaced with whatever is in the edit window you are cloning from and is most useful for cloning areas successively over several frames. (When you choose **Frame**, the clone crosshair appears in the top left corner of the image and as you clone the crosshair moves to the exact same location to ensure you are cloning accurately between both the active and target frames.)



*Cloning an image from a second edit window to another*



## Using the Retouch tool

---

The **Retouch tools** are not strictly painting tools in the sense that they do not paint over an image with a selected color. Instead, they are used to touch-up areas of an image to either enhance them, remove errors or perform special effects, such as smudging and warping. When you apply a Retouch tool, the tool uses the shape and size of the current brush each time you click your mouse. To perform the effect over a larger area, drag your mouse or increase the size of your brush. To reapply and increase the effect on a specific area, click repeatedly. (Smudging requires you to drag the tool as it smudges color from one area into another.)

To view the retouching tools, click the **Retouch tool** button on the Tool panel. The Brush panel opens and all the retouch tools are displayed along the Attribute toolbar. The attributes for these tools are identical to the Paint tools (see page 289) except the Options tab, which changes to display controls for refining the degree of retouching. (To learn about cloning over several frames, see the "Duplicating changes over frames" section, page 260.)

**Notes:**

- *Confine the area to retouch by first creating a selection area.*
- *You need to be in **Composite mode** before you can start using a Retouch tool. Once you have edited an image, you can switch to Paint Layer mode to work on just that area.*



*Original*



*Dodge*



*Burn*



*Blur*



*Sharpen*



*Tonal Adjustment*



*Smudge*



*Saturation*



*Warping*



*Bristle Smear*



*Remove Red Eye*



*Remove Scratch*



*Remove Noise*

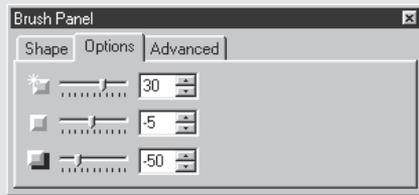


*Color Transform Pen*



*Colorize Pen*

## BRUSH PANEL: OPTIONS TAB (RETOUCH TOOL)



-  **Dodge** increases the amount of luminosity in an image, making areas lighter.
-  **Burn** reduces the amount of luminosity in an image, making areas darker.
-  **Blur** blurs the edges of an image making them less distinct.
-  **Sharpen** sharpens the edges of an image thereby making them more distinct.
-  **Tonal adjustment** controls the amount of highlight, midtone, and shadow in an image. **Highlight** works by adjusting the whitest or brightest parts of an image, while **Midtone** adjusts the colors that fall between the dark and light areas of an image. **Shadow** works by adjusting the blackest or darkest parts of an image.
-  **Smudge** smears the colors in an image as you drag your mouse.
-  **Saturation** adds more intensity to colors, making them appear stronger. Clicking the **Desaturation** button removes intensity from colors, making them lighter.
-  **Warping** distorts an image as you drag your mouse.
-  **Transparency** determines the transparency of the paint as it is applied.
-  **Wet** adds water to the paint, making it blend more smoothly with the colors of an image.
-  **Dry** removes water from the paint, making it appear more distinct from the colors of an image.
-  **Smear** controls the amount of paint overrun.

**Note:** The available attributes for each brush that can be modified in the Options tab vary depending on the currently selected Retouch tool.



## Recording macros

**Macros** give you the ability to record specific brush strokes made with either the Paint or Retouch tools and use the exact same stroke order again on future frames. Macros can make common, repetitive editing tasks go much faster and far more easily as well as create "on-the-fly" animations. When you create a macro, it is stored in the Production Library and when you apply it, you have a number of options to control how it plays itself back over each frame in a video sequence.

### *To record a macro:*

1. Click the **Macro** button on the Attribute toolbar (for Paint and Retouch tools only). A message box appears preparing for recording.

**Note:** When you record a macro, Video Paint clears the previous Undo history to help free up system resources. If you want to retain any previous edits, first save the file before recording.

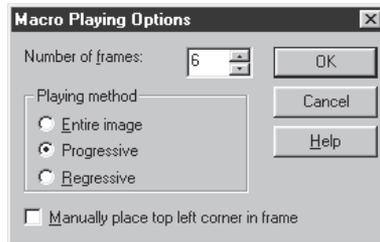
2. Click **OK**. Video Paint centers the edit window and you can start painting on the image.  
You can paint as slowly as you like, changing tools and attributes as you go. You can also undo any actions which are ignored when you play the macro back.
3. When finished, click the **Macro** button again to end the recording. The Add To Library dialog box opens.
4. Select the folder in the **Macro** gallery where you want to store the macro and then enter a name for the macro in the entry line below the thumbnail image as well as a brief description in the **Annotation** box.
5. Click **OK**. The macro is now saved to the Production Library and the edits removed from the edit window. (For applying a macro, see the following procedure.) If you have selected the **Play macro after recording** option in the Preferences dialog box (see page 269), the Macro Playing Options dialog box opens allowing you to specify how you want the macro to be applied.



*Add To Library dialog box*

**To play back a macro:**

1. Select the frame from where you want the macro to begin its playback.
2. Click the **Production Library** button on the Standard toolbar and locate the macro in the **Macro** gallery that you want to play back.
3. Double-click on the thumbnail of the macro you want to play back or drag-and-drop it into the edit window to open the **Macro Playing Options** dialog box.



*Macro Playing Options dialog box*

4. Specify how many frames to play the macro back over in the **Number of frames** spin box.
5. Specify how the macro should play back in the **Playing method** group box. Select **Entire image** if you want the macro to appear the same on each frame. To have the macro animate sequentially over each frame, click either the **Progressive** or **Regressive** options. **Progressive** starts the playback of the macro from the first stroke of the macro to the last, while **Regressive** starts from the last stroke to the first. If you want to determine where the macro should start playing back from (other than the top left corner of the edit window), select the **Manually place top left corner in frame** option.
6. Click **OK**. The macro begins playing back according to your settings. If you selected the **Manually place top left corner in frame** option, you need to click in the edit window image from where you want to start play back.



*Playing back a macro progressively*

## Applying filters

The video filters in Video Paint are the same as those found in Video Editor and can be used from the Menu bar or from the Video Filter gallery in the Production Library. While they are the same in design, they do, however, differ in application. For example, in Video Paint, the filters are applied immediately to the frames in the clip, or to any frames included in the preview area, and the rendered result appears in the Paint Layer which you can then edit or paint over accordingly. (In Video Editor, they are applied to the clip only and are not rendered until you create or preview the file.) Because filters in Video Paint are rendered, you may find that they take longer to apply, depending on your system resources or the type of filter.

### *To apply a video filter:*



1. Drag over the **Preview bar** in the Filmstrip panel to select the frames you want to apply the filter to. (If you want to apply the filter to the entire clip, make no selection.)
2. Select the **Video Filter** gallery from the Production Library and locate the filter you want to apply from one of the available folders. (You can also select the filter by going directly to its command in the **Video Filters** menu.)
3. Drag-and-drop the filter you want to apply onto the edit window to open the filter's dialog box. (By double-clicking on the filter's thumbnail, you can see a preview of the type of filter and its options.)
4. Adjust the settings of the filter as well as define any key frames and click **OK**. The filter is then applied to the active clip.



*Applying a Whirlpool video filter*

## Previewing your work

---

When working in Video Paint, it is a good idea to regularly preview your work to see how your project is developing. You can do this in one of two ways – by creating a preview file or by flicking through a series of frames. **Previewing** works in much the same way as in Video Editor while **flicking** works by displaying a series of frames quickly, much like flipping through the pages of an animation.

### Performing a flick preview

Performing a **flick preview** is a simple process of selecting the frame from where you want the preview to begin and then clicking the **Flick Preview** button on the Navigator or **View: Flick [SHIFT+F]**. The preview is then performed on the image in the edit window. Before you perform the preview, however, you need to set your flick options to determine which area of the image is previewed as well as how many frames to flick through.



*Performing a flick preview*

#### *To set your flick options:*

1. Click **View: Flick Options** to open the Flick Options dialog box.
2. Specify the number of frames to flick through in the **Backward** and **Forward** spin boxes. The number you specify determines how many frames are previewed when you perform a flick. Backward frames are flicked first followed by forward frames. You may want to have a few backward frames included in the flick to give you a reference as to what occurs before the flick reaches your edited frames.
3. Select the speed to perform the flick at using the **Speed** group box.

4. Specify the area on the frame you want to flick through using the **Flick area** spin boxes or by dragging the control points in the bounding box in the preview image. (To move the bounding box on the **Preview** image, place your pointer in the center and drag.)

When flicking through a specific area on the frame, it is a good idea to select the **Show border** option because it places a thin red border over the area being flicked making it easier to identify. If you want to flick through the entire frame, select the **Entire frame** option below the preview image.

5. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the settings will be apparent the next time you perform a flick preview.

## Performing a preview

Apart from performing flick previews, you can also perform standard previews which create a preview file. To do this, first define your preview options by clicking the **Preview Options** button on the Standard toolbar or **View: Preview Options**. Once the Preview options have been defined, drag over the Preview bar on the Filmstrip panel, a blue selection line appears, and select the frames you want to preview. When ready, click the **Preview Selection** button or **View: Preview [ENTER]** to create the preview.

**Note:** Using the **Navigator**, you can also step through each frame in the sequence as well as preview the entire clip by clicking the **Preview** button.

## Managing preview files

You can quickly check on how much space your preview files occupy by clicking **File: Preview Files Manager**. This opens the Preview Files Manager dialog box which displays every preview file for each project you have created previews from. You can see how much disk space your preview files occupy and choose whether or not to delete them. You should delete them if they reference a project you have already deleted or no longer use.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- Work in **Ruby Mask mode** to create video mattes (see page 276).
- Work in **Onionskin mode** when creating animations (see page 278).
- In **Composite mode**, you select areas of an image; in Paint Layer mode, you select areas of your edits (see page 280).
- Use the **Eyedropper tool** to select colors from an image in an edit window (see page 288).
- **Save** regularly used brush attributes to the **Production Library** (see page 290).
- Perform changes over multiple frames using the **macro recorder** (see page 298).
- Perform a **flick preview** over a selected area to better see your edits (see page 302).

**CG Infinity**



## Getting started

*CG Infinity is a specialized drawing program that allows you to create impressive titles and motion graphics that you can use in Video Editor projects or as standalone video and image files. With CG Infinity, you can easily produce television and film quality opening and ending credits as well as an extensive range of both regular and freehand graphical objects.*

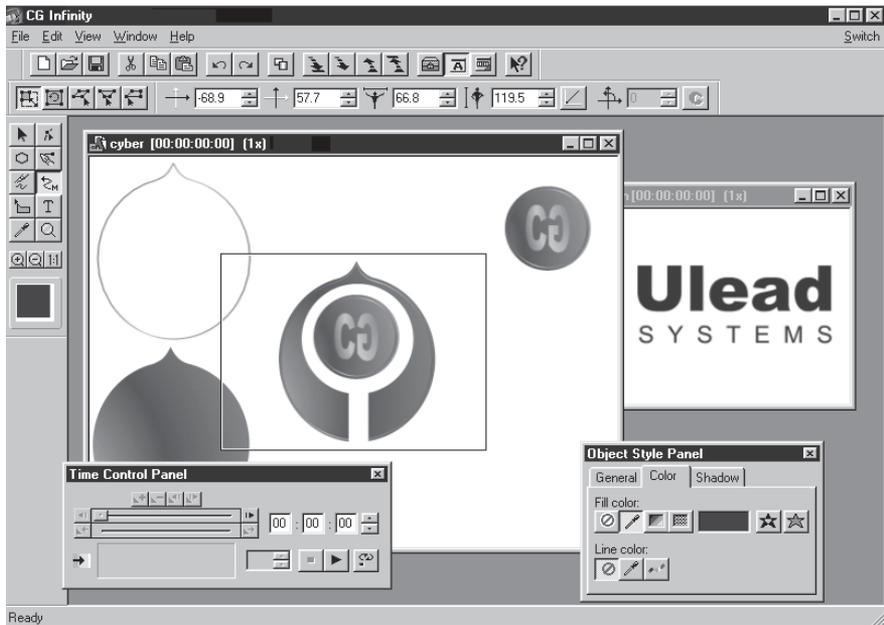
***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Understanding the basics ..... p.308*
- *Controlling the alignment of objects ..... p.315*
- *Customizing CG Infinity ..... p.317*

## Understanding the basics

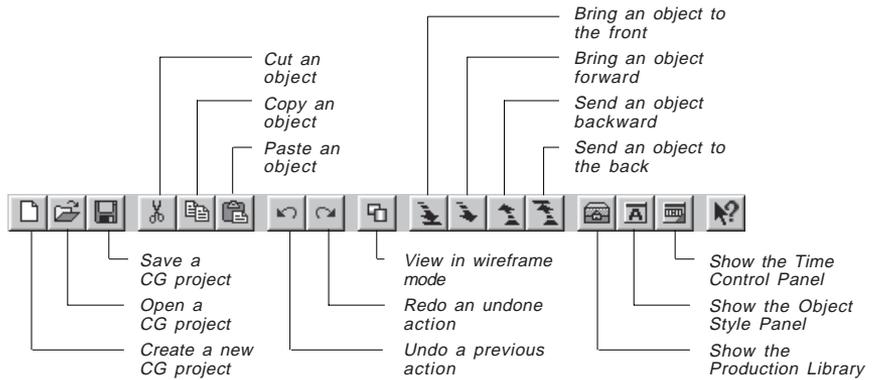
CG Infinity is a vector-based drawing program dedicated to creating impressive titles and motion graphics. Once you have created a title or graphic, it becomes an object which can be resized, reshaped and redesigned without any loss in quality. A comprehensive range of drawing tools also gives you complete flexibility over your work and makes editing objects as easy as moving your mouse.

To get started in CG Infinity, you first need to create a new edit window. At the center of the edit window is a frame indicating the size of the video frames for your CG project. Everything outside the frame is part of the pasteboard area which can be used for storing objects or for placing objects outside of the frame before moving them into view. (You control the size of the pasteboard in the Preferences dialog box, see page 317.) While a CG project is video-based, the edit window displays only one view from where you perform all your work and effects. When the time to create a final video sequence comes, CG Infinity applies your edits over the appropriate number of frames to build the video file.

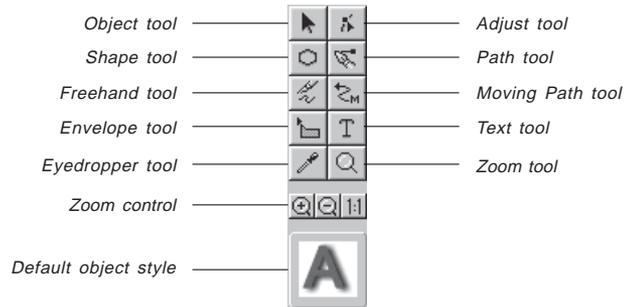


*CG Infinity program window*

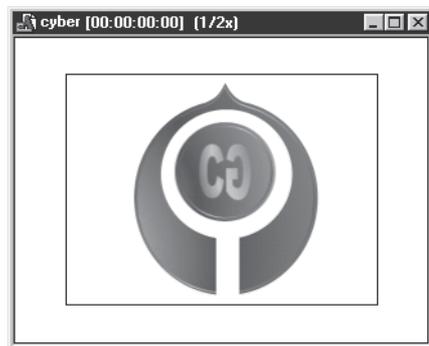
### Standard toolbar



### Tool panel



### Edit window



## Understanding objects

Objects form the basis of your work in CG Infinity. They can be anything from text to regular squares and circles as well as freehand drawn shapes. Each object is a vector-based graphic which is created from a series of lines that form an outlined path to represent the object's shape.

When you work on an object, you can add, move, and remove points anywhere along a line in the path. These points are referred to as nodes which, when selected, contain handles that you can drag to reshape the path. Once you have finished creating a path, you can then specify the object's style attributes such as its color, whether or not it has a shadow and how well it blends into the background.

## Starting a new CG Infinity project

Every CG Infinity project begins with defining the frame size and video properties of the project. Once created, you can begin adding text and objects, and then manipulate them with various drawing tools. When you are finished, you can create a video file of your work or insert the CG Infinity project into Video Editor as part of a larger project.

### *To create a new CG Infinity project:*



1. Click the **New** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: New [CTRL+N]** to open the New dialog box.
2. Specify the duration of the project in the **Duration** spin boxes and the frame rate in the **Frame rate** combo box. You can choose from the list in the drop-down menu or enter your own.

If the project is intended to be part of a Video Editor project, make sure that both projects have the same frame rate. If different, you may get dropped or duplicated frames.

3. Select the frame size of the project using the options in the **Frame size** group box. Again, if the project is intended to be part of a Video Editor project, make sure that both projects have the same frame size to prevent resampling.
4. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and a new edit window appears in the CG Infinity workspace.

## Changing the background of an edit window

Once created, an edit window displays a solid white background. When you create a video or image file, this is the color of the background that will appear behind any objects. You can change this background by choosing a new color or by replacing it with the contents of a video or image file.

### *To change an edit window's background:*

1. Click **View: Background** to open the Background dialog box.
2. Select the type of background you want from the **Background source** group box. You can select a general background color by right-clicking on the color square and selecting a color from the pop-up menu that appears. (You can also enter the RGB values for a color directly into the **RGB** spin boxes.) To use an existing image or video file, click on the appropriate option and then click the **Select** button. (When choosing a video file, you can select a specific frame to insert.) You can also choose to resize the image or video to fit the frame, or have it centered. (If you choose to resize, the image or video may appear distorted.)
3. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes and the background changes accordingly. (To view any changes, switch to **Preview mode**.)



*Placing an image of the sky as the background*

## Changing the view of an edit window

CG Infinity offers the same controls for viewing edit windows as Video Paint: these are the **View commands** and the **Zoom tool** (for more on these, see page 264). CG Infinity, however, adds two extra commands to help you work at full screen: the **View: Full Screen** [CTRL+U] and **View: Remove Menu Bar** commands. Clicking **View: Full Screen** displays the edit window at the current zoom level occupying the entire screen; in its default mode, the program window and all docked toolbars and panels are hidden, leaving only your objects and any floating toolbars and panels in view. Full screen mode is very useful when you want to edit an object in as much space as possible without the distractions of the program window. Any floating toolbars or panels remain visible in this mode, allowing you to continue working on your object. (To return to the **Normal screen** mode press the [ESC] key.) If you prefer to have all the toolbars and panels present, click **View: Remove Menu Bar**. This removes the title and menu bars of the CG Infinity screen only, leaving all other screen elements present. (You can still use the menu commands with their keyboard shortcut keys. To return to the **Normal screen** mode press the [ESC] key.)

## Viewing objects



In CG Infinity, you can view objects in one of two modes: **Preview** or **Wireframe**. **Preview mode** displays objects complete with all their object attributes, such as fill color, shadow and transparency. While this provides the most accurate view of an object, it can slow down editing and processing time as CG Infinity has to continually refresh these attributes whenever you change the view of an edit window or create new objects. To speed up editing, switch to **Wireframe mode** by clicking the Wireframe button on the Standard toolbar or **View: Wireframe** [CTRL+D]. This displays only the path of each object and reduces processing time considerably as there is less information to handle. (To return to Preview mode, deselect the Wireframe option.)

**Note:** To move an object in Wireframe mode, you can only click on its path and not the area within its shape.



## Saving your work

In CG Infinity, the edit window you are working on is referred to as a project. You save this project as a special Ulead CG Infinity file (**UCG**) by clicking the **Save** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: Save** [CTRL+S]. UCG files contain all the attributes of the objects in the edit window as well as the video properties of the project. Once saved, you can load the UCG file back into the CG Infinity workspace by clicking the **Open** button on the Standard toolbar or **File: Open** [CTRL+O]. You can also open the file in Video Editor by selecting the **UCG format** from the **Files of type** combo box in the Insert Video File dialog box. The file opens as a clip in the Timeline displaying the same object attributes as in CG Infinity. (Any background image or video file specified in CG Infinity is not displayed.)

## Creating video and image files

Once you have finished working on a CG Infinity project, you can create a new video or image file that combines the project's objects with the current background. To create a video file, click **File: Create Video File**. This opens the Create Video File dialog box, which has the same options as Video Editor. (To learn more about these options, see the section on "Creating a video file", page 258.) To create an image file, click **File: Create Image File**. This opens the Create Image File dialog box, which allows you to select the data type, file format, resolution and size of the image.



## Performing Cut and Copy operations

In CG Infinity, you can copy objects in a number of ways, such as using the **Cut** and **Copy** buttons on the Standard toolbar or clicking **Edit: Cut** and/or **Copy**. These allow you to duplicate objects from an edit window and then paste them into the same or another edit window. (**Copy** duplicates a selected object while **Cut** removes it from the edit window.)

**Note:** You can also paste the object into an image editor such as Ulead PhotoImpact. If pasting into PhotoImpact, the mask information is retained.

Another method to cut and copy is the **Edit: Duplicate** command which copies the currently selected object and makes a duplicate at the same time. The advantage of the **Duplicate** command is that you do not have to paste the object, therefore allowing you to quickly create copies of objects as you work. (This is ideal if you are creating temporary objects to experiment on and do not want to affect the original.)

**Note:** *You can add an object or its style to the Production Library by clicking the appropriate command from the right mouse button pop-up menu. Once added, you can copy it to another object by dragging-and-dropping its thumbnail onto the object.*



## Performing a paste operation

When pasting an object, CG Infinity gives you a variety of options for controlling which attributes of the object to paste. For example, to paste the object as is, click the **Paste** button on the Standard toolbar or **Edit: Paste** [CTRL+V]. This places the object in the center of the current view. To paste only certain attributes, such as the fill color or shadow, click **Edit: Paste - Object Style**. This opens the Paste Object Style dialog box which allows you to select which attributes to paste. Once you click **OK**, the attributes are pasted to all selected objects. (If no objects are selected, this command is disabled.)

Two other paste commands, **Moving Path** and **Object as Moving Path**, enable you to paste the moving path attributes of an object or use the path of an object as a moving path. To apply an object's moving path to another object, click **Edit: Paste: Moving Path**. This opens the Paste Moving Path dialog box which allows you to select between pasting the path and/or keyframe information to the currently active object.

The **Object as Moving Path** command allows you to use the shape of an object as a moving path for the currently active object. For example, you could draw around a background image in the edit window frame and then paste the shape of the resulting object as a moving path for another object to follow. (For more on moving paths see 'Creating a moving path', page 334.)

## Controlling the alignment of objects

When you move objects around in CG Infinity, you often want to place them in particular areas within the frame of the edit window. This is especially the case when trying to match an object with a background video or image file, such as a car or a corporate logo. To do this, CG Infinity provides guides and rulers that help you accurately place and move objects.

### Displaying rulers

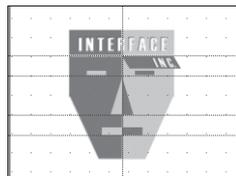
Rulers provide you with a consistent reference point in the edit window that identifies the location of objects. To display the rulers, click **View: Rulers**. Horizontal and vertical rulers appear along the top and left side of the edit window. They take their measurement in pixels with the base reference point (X=0, Y=0) at the top left corner of the frame in the edit window. You can reset this reference point by dragging the intersecting ruler lines from the **Base Point** button at the corner of the rulers to any position in the edit window. This is especially helpful if you have zoomed in on an object and want to reset your ruler at a new view.



**Note:** Double-clicking the **Base Point** button repositions the base point to the top left corner of the edit window frame.

### Displaying grid and guides

To better position objects, it is a good idea to display the grid as well as use guidelines within the edit window. The **grid** is a pattern of points that appear whenever you click **View: Grid**. The grid points make it easier to align objects and position them. You can also change the color of grid points as well as the distance between each for greater flexibility and control.



*An object with grids and guidelines displayed*

**Guides** are reference lines that you pull out from either the horizontal or vertical rulers. When you pull out a guide, it appears as a dotted line which you can use to mark certain areas within the edit window. You can have any number of guides which can be easily repositioned by dragging on them. To remove a guide, drag it off the edge of the edit window using the **Object tool**.

### ***Customizing the grid and guides***

The default color for grid points and guides are red and blue respectively. Depending on your background, as well as the color of your objects, you may want to change these to make them easier to identify. To do this, click **View: Grid & Guide Options** to open the Grid & Guide Options dialog box. Here you can specify the color for both the grid points and guidelines as well as control the horizontal and vertical spacing between each point in the grid. If you want your objects to "snap to" grid points or guides, select the **Snap to distance** option and specify the range within which a snap should occur. For example, a range of 5 pixels pulls an object to a grid point whenever it is placed within 5 pixels of that grid point's position.

#### **Notes:**

- *"Snap to" works on the rectangular area of an object's bounding box and not the path of the object itself.*
- *For objects to snap to grid points and guides, you need to first select the **Edit: Snap to Guides** and **Snap to grid** commands.*

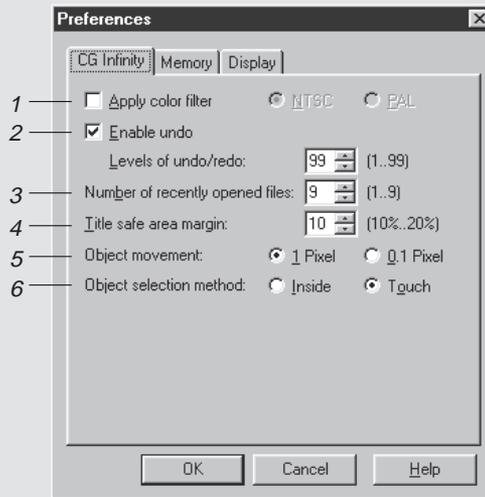
### **Aligning objects**

While the above methods allow you to accurately place objects within an edit window, you may also want to align a group of objects so that they appear along the same horizontal or vertical plane. To do this, CG Infinity provides the **Edit: Align** command which opens the Align dialog box. Here you can select to position objects vertically in columns or horizontally in rows. You can also specify to have the objects appear to the left, center or right of each other.

## Customizing CG Infinity

To better work with CG Infinity, it is important to customize the program's behavior with the Preferences dialog box (opened by double-clicking the Status bar or clicking **File: Preferences [F6]**). This dialog box has three tabs: **CG Infinity**, **Memory**, and **Display**. Except for the first, CG Infinity, the others are identical to Video Paint and are fully explained in the "Customizing Video Paint" section, page 269.

PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX: CG INFINITY TAB



- 1. Apply color filter** allows you to control how colors are displayed in CG Infinity, based on the **NTSC** or **PAL** color models. Select the appropriate option if you plan on having your video played back on an NTSC or PAL device such as a television. If you are designing for monitor display only, leave this option clear.
- 2. Levels of undo/redo** specifies the maximum levels of undo/redo allowed by CG Infinity (up to 99). As CG Infinity allocates more memory for each level of undo/redo, you may find that too high a level adversely affects performance. In such cases, restrict the level to 3-4 only. You can of course choose not to have undo/redo to maximize performance, but any editing done is final.
- 3. Number of recently opened files** specifies how many file names are stored in the Recent History list found in the File menu.

4. **Title safe area margin** specifies the margin percentage for displaying any titles in a video project. This is useful if you intend on sending your video back out to video tape or for broadcasting as television has a different resolution than computer monitors, and edges which are viewable on screen may disappear. As a guideline, for NTSC devices choose 12%, PAL 10%. To view the title safe area marquee, click **View: Title Safe Area**.
5. **Object movement** defines how far an object moves when you use the arrow keys to adjust its position.
6. **Object selection method** defines how objects are selected with the Object tool. **Inside** selects objects that fall within the marquee of a new selection and **Touch** selects objects that are touched by the marquee of a selection area. In most cases, use **Touch** as it allows you to quickly select objects without having to draw a selection over its entirety. **Inside** is useful if you have a lot of overlapping objects and only want to select a specific one without affecting any others.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- CG Infinity is a **vector-based** drawing program (see page 308).
- Use a video or image file as your background to better position and draw your objects (see page 311).
- Work in **Wireframe mode** to speed up the editing process (see page 312).
- CG Infinity **objects** are merged with the current background whenever you create video and image files (see page 313).
- You can paste an object's style or moving path to another object (see page 313).
- View **grids** and **guides** to better position objects (see page 315).

## Working with objects

*The power of CG Infinity lies in its ability to create and manipulate objects. Using a wide range of drawing tools, you can easily create these objects by tracing over existing images, drawing your own shapes or using the Text tool to create impressive titles and text effects.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

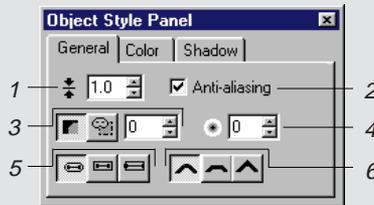
- *Defining an object's style ..... p.320*
- *Creating text and shape objects ..... p.323*
- *Selecting and transforming objects ..... p.328*
- *Adjusting shapes ..... p.332*
- *Creating a moving path ..... p.334*



## Defining an object's style

When you create an object, it takes its form from the path or shape you draw and its appearance from a number of attributes which make up its style. These attributes are defined in the **Object Style Panel** which you can view by clicking the **Object Style Panel** button on the Attribute toolbar or by right-clicking over a toolbar and selecting the **Object Style Panel** command. The panel has three tabs: **General**, **Color**, and **Shadow**. By experimenting with the various options available, you can quickly learn the types of effects and results you can create using CG Infinity.

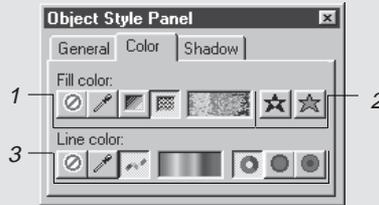
OBJECT STYLE PANEL: GENERAL TAB



1. **Line Width** defines the thickness of a line when applied to an object. You can enter sub-pixel values up to  $1/10^{\text{th}}$  of a pixel. The line is centered over the path, with half appearing on the outside, half on the inside.
2. **Anti-aliasing** smoothens the edges of non-rectangular objects by blending the areas with the background. This is particularly useful for text objects. Leave this clear if you want a sharp edge such as with square or rectangular objects.
3. **Transparency** controls how transparent an object appears. The first option, **Normal Transparency**, provides an even transparency over the entire object based on the value entered in the neighboring Transparency spin box. A value of 0 has no transparency and 100 full transparency. The second option, **Gradient Transparency**, controls an object's transparency based on the pattern indicated in the neighboring gradient square. The darker the area, the less transparent the object while the lighter the area, the more transparent the object. To change the gradient pattern, click on the gradient square to display the Gradient Transparency dialog box. Here you can control the start and end values of the gradient as well as the pattern, either linear or bidirectional. (A value of 0 is white, full transparency and 100 is black, no transparency.) To toggle between applying a linear or bidirectional gradient, click the **Gradient Style** button at the bottom of the dialog box. You can also change the direction and extent of the gradient by dragging on the sample image.

4. **Soft Edge** blends the edges of an object with the background. This option is useful if anti-aliasing does not create a smooth enough edge for some objects.
5. **Line Caps** defines how the ends of lines are drawn; you can choose between **Round**, **Square** or **Flat**. (Depending on the size of your object, you may not be able to see any obvious change.)
6. **Line Joints** defines how lines meet; you can choose **Round**, **Bevel**, or **Miter** joining. (Depending on the size of your object you may not be able to see any obvious change.)

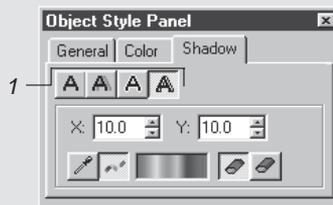
#### OBJECT STYLE PANEL: COLOR TAB



1. **Fill color** determines how an object is filled. The first option, **None**, applies no fill to an object making it clear. The second option, **Color**, fills an object with a solid color which you choose by right-clicking the color square or by selecting it from the Color Palette, or with the Eyedropper tool. (The Color Palette and Eyedropper tool behave in the same way as explained in Video Paint see page 286.) The third option, **Gradient**, fills an object with a special gradient pattern. To choose the gradient, click the color square to open the Magic Gradient dialog box and select a gradient from one of the available methods. The final option, **Texture**, fills an object with a special texture pattern. To choose this texture, click on the color square to open the Magic Textures dialog box and select a texture from one of the displayed thumbnails.
2. **Fill type** specifies how to apply the fill. The first option, **Even-Odd Fill**, toggles between filling the entire object or only areas which do not overlap. When not selected, the fill is applied to the entire object, otherwise the fill is only applied to areas where there is no overlap. (If the object does not have any overlap, then the fill is applied to the entire object.) The second option, **Fill Precedence**, toggles between applying a fill to overlapping areas or entire areas of an object. When not selected, the entire object is filled, otherwise any areas of objects which overlap are filled, leaving exposed areas untouched.

3. **Line color** determines how the line of an object is filled. The first option, **None**, applies no fill to an object's line making it clear. (If you do not select a color or style, then the line width specified in the **General tab** has no affect.) The second option, **Color**, selects a solid color to fill the line with. To choose the color, right-click the color square or select the color using the Eyedropper tool or the Color palette, keeping the **[CTRL]** key held down as you click. (If you don't hold down the **[CTRL]** key, you will be changing the Fill color instead.) The third option, **Gradient**, fills the line with a special gradient pattern. To choose the gradient, click the color square to open the Palette Ramp Editor dialog box and select a pattern from one of the available methods. Once you have selected a pattern, you can determine its direction with the neighboring three directional buttons, **Along**, **Outward**, and **Symmetrical**. **Along** applies the fill evenly along the line while **Outward** applies the fill from the inside out. **Symmetrical** applies the color from both the inside and outside edges towards the center.

#### OBJECT STYLE PANEL: SHADOW TAB



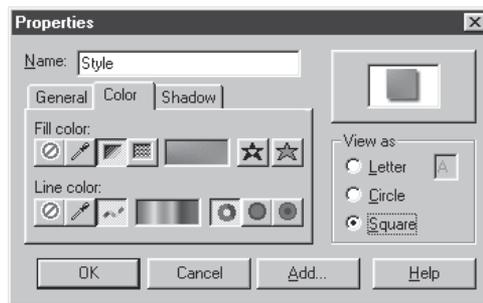
1. **Shadow options** determine the type of shadow to apply to an object. The first option, **None**, does not apply any shadow while the second option, **Drop**, applies a drop shadow. You can specify the position of the shadow in the **X** and **Y** spin boxes as well as control its transparency and the amount of soft edge in the **Transparency** and **Soft edge** spin boxes. The third option, **Glow**, applies a shadow to an object so that it appears evenly on all sides. You can specify the color of the shadow as well as its intensity in the Options group box. (The greater the intensity, the farther out the shadow extends.) You can also set the transparency and the amount of soft edge in the **Transparency** and **Soft edge** spin boxes. The final option, **Extrude**, applies a shadow so that it comes out from an object. You can specify the position of the shadow in the **X** and **Y** spin boxes as well as choose between a solid or gradient color. If you choose a gradient color, you can change it by clicking the color square to open the Magic Gradient dialog box. You can also choose to have the shadow extrude away in horizontal layers or along in vertical layers.

**Note:** To change the color of a shadow, right-click on the color square or select the color using the Eyedropper tool or the Color palette, keeping the **[SHIFT]** key held down as you click.



## Setting your default object style

Whenever you create an object, it takes its initial style from the current default as indicated by the graphic at the bottom of the Tool panel. You can change this default at any time by right-clicking it and choosing the **Properties** command. In the Properties dialog box that opens, you can specify the new defaults. To use an existing object's style as the default, first select it and then click the **Use As Default Style** command from the right mouse pop-up menu. The graphic in the Tool panel changes accordingly to reflect the new style. (You can also change the default style by dragging-and-dropping a style directly from the **Style** gallery in the Production Library to the graphic on the Tool panel.) If you wish to apply the default style to another object, first select the object and then choose the **Use Default Style** command from the right mouse pop-up menu.



*Properties dialog box*

## Creating text and shape objects

CG Infinity is designed specifically for creating various text and shape objects. The **Text tool** is ideal for producing impressive opening and ending credits as well as flashy text effects. The **Shape tool** creates regular shapes such as squares and polygons while the **Path** and **Free-hand** tools enable you to draw your own objects and even trace over existing images.

## T Using the Text tool

The **Text tool** in CG Infinity allows you to use any font currently installed on your system to create a text object. Once created, you can control the spacing between letters in a word as well as the spacing between lines of text. You can also edit the text at a later time, even after changing its shape and style.

**Note:** *If you want to edit a text object on another machine, that machine must have the same font installed. If not, the text uses your system's default.*

### *To create a text object:*

1. Click the **Text tool** from the Tool panel. The Attribute toolbar changes to display the various font characteristics you can choose from.
2. Select the **font** you want to use as well as any other font characteristics such as size, bold and italics. You can also specify the alignment of the text as well as the kerning and leading.

**Note:** ***Kerning** decreases the amount of space between letters in a word making it appear tighter while **leading** affects the spacing between words on different lines. The default 100% uses the font's own leading with lower values decreasing the space and higher values increasing the space.*

3. Click the edit window where you want the text to appear and start typing in your text. (To add a line, press the [ENTER] key.)

If you are including a lot of text, such as credits, drag your mouse to create a text bounding box. When you type your text, it wraps to the edges of this bounding box.

4. Change to the **Object tool** or click outside the text area to place the text as an object.



*Creating a text object*

## Using the Shape tool

In CG Infinity, you can create both regular symmetrical shapes, such as squares and circles, as well as more complex polygons and stars. You can use these shapes to block out sections of a background image or video, as a background for text, or to create a variety of special effects.

### *To create a shape object:*

1. Select the **Shape tool** from the Tool panel. The Attribute toolbar changes to indicate the various shapes you can choose from as well as how the shape is created.
2. Select the **shape** you want to use from the Attribute toolbar and then select the drawing options for creating that shape.

There are three options you can choose from to control the way a shape is drawn. The first, **From Center**, creates the shape from the center moving out. If not selected, the shape is created from the top left corner down as you draw. The second option, **Equal Sides** ensures that the sides of the shape are all of equal length. If not selected, you can draw a shape with variable width and height. The final option, **Fixed Size**, allows you to specify the exact width and height of an object in the neighboring **Width** and **Height** spin boxes. (Selecting this option disables the Equal Sides option.)

Another option, **Sides**, is only available for the **Polygon** and **Star** shapes and controls the number of sides present in these shapes. **Star** also has an additional option, **Pointiness**, which controls the length of each star cone in relation to the core of the star. For example, a value of 0 would produce no star cones, only the star core. A value of 50% would produce half star cones and half star core while 100% would produce only star cones with no star core.

**Note:** You can change the pointiness of a star object by holding down the **CTRL+ALT** keys as you drag. Dragging inward increases the pointiness while dragging outward decreases it. (The size of the star remains unchanged.)

3. Click on the area of the image where you want the shape to appear and drag. As you drag, the shape takes its form based on the specified attributes. (If you choose a fixed size, the shape is drawn immediately.) Once you release your mouse, the shape is created as an object.

**Note:** If you draw an object and then hold down the **[SHIFT]** key, you can adjust the object equilaterally. If you hold down the **[CTRL]** key, you can adjust the object in one direction only.



*Creating a variety of shapes with the Shape tool*



## Using the Freehand tool

The **Freehand tool** allows you to create any kind of shape you want by allowing you to draw it with your mouse. This is particularly useful for tracing over elements in a background video or image file, such as a person's head or a corporate logo. Once you have finished drawing your path, CG Infinity then places nodes in positions on the path, where necessary, to maintain the accuracy of the shape you have drawn.

### *To create a freehand object:*

1. Select the **Freehand tool** from the Tool panel. The Attribute toolbar changes to display the options for drawing a path.
2. Move to the edit window and begin drawing the shape you want to create or trace.

As you draw, a line appears in the edit window which follows your movements. To draw continuously, keep your mouse button down as you drag. If you release the mouse button, you end a segment. You can then choose to end the path or create a new segment by clicking in another area of the edit window. When you create a new segment, it automatically connects to the end of the previous segment.

**Note:** *If you make a mistake while drawing, press the [Esc] key to start again.*



3. Click the **Close** or **Open Path** button on the Attribute toolbar to end your shape. (**Close Path** draws a line connecting the ending and starting points of your path, while **Open Path** leaves it as is.) A **red line** appears following the path you have drawn. CG Infinity uses this line to determine how many nodes to place on the resulting path. To have the line more closely follow your own, increase the value in the **Accuracy** spin box on the Attribute toolbar.
4. When you are satisfied with the accuracy of your path, switch to the **Object tool** or click outside the area to place the shape as an object. (If you chose an **Open Path**, you need to specify a line width and fill color in the Object Style Options panel to see the path clearly.)



## Using the Path tool

The **Path tool** is similar to the Freehand tool with the exception that it allows you to create shapes based on a series of straight or curved lines. You can manipulate these lines as you draw them or come back to them at a later time for further adjustments.

### *To create a path object:*



1. Select the **Path tool** from the Tool panel. The Attribute toolbar changes to display the options for drawing a path.
2. Select the **type of path** you want to draw from the Attribute toolbar. You can choose between drawing in straight lines or curved line segments by clicking the appropriate button on the Attribute toolbar. (You can switch between **linear** or **curved** segments as you draw depending on the type of path you are trying to create.)

3. Move to the edit window and begin drawing the shape you want to create. Each time you click your mouse, a **node** is placed in the edit window and a line segment is automatically drawn connecting the two nodes. If you selected the **Add Curve** option, two handles appear on either side of the node allowing you to stretch, pull and turn the curve. (You can come back later to edit these nodes and handles using the **Adjust tool**, see page 332.)

**Note:** *If drawing in straight line segments, you can hold down the **SHIFT** key to restrict the line to movements of 15° intervals.*



4. Click the **Close Path** button on the Attribute toolbar to end your shape. CG Infinity automatically draws a line connecting the end of the last segment to the beginning of the shape, filling it with the currently specified fill color. If you want to leave the shape open, such as for creating lines, click the **Open Path** button on the Attribute toolbar. This fills the line of the shape only, leaving the contents clear. (To view an open path, you need to specify a line width in the Object Style Options panel.)

## Selecting and transforming objects

---

Once you have created an object, you can move and manipulate it in a variety of ways. The easiest is with the **Object tool** which allows you to select objects and then move and resize them anywhere within the edit window. In CG Infinity, you can select a single object or multiple objects, group them, or place them on top of, or behind, others. To select an object, click the **Object tool** on the Tool panel and then click the object you want to select. (You need to click a portion of the shape, such as the line or filled area. This may not be so easy for open shapes with small line widths. In such instances, increase your magnification or the line width.)

**Notes:** *You can also select an object by dragging a selection marquee over it. Depending on your settings in the Preferences dialog box (see page 320), you have to drag over the entire object or simply touch one of its edges.*



## Selecting multiple objects

You can select multiple objects by holding down the [SHIFT] key as you click each object. The bounding box changes each time to encase all the selected objects. Once selected, you can move them as one or resize them equally. If you change an object style, the new style is adopted by all the objects, regardless of their original settings. (You can also select multiple objects by dragging a selection marquee over each one.) To remove an object after selecting it, hold down the [SHIFT] key and click again. (You can only deselect objects in the reverse order that they were selected.)

## Grouping objects

If you selected multiple objects, you can group them together so they act as one. Once grouped, you can move the objects together as well as duplicate them to make additional copies. **Grouping objects** is especially useful at the end of a project when you have layered them in their final positions. To group objects, select them and then click **Edit: Group**. To ungroup them, select the grouped object and then click **Edit: Ungroup**.



## Layering objects

An important part of working with objects is being able to layer them on top of and behind one another to create a variety of effects such as shading and transparency. To control the layering of objects, CG Infinity provides several commands in the **Edit menu** as well as options on the Standard toolbar. For example, you can send an object behind another by clicking the **Send Backward** command or, if there are several objects, send the object to the bottom of the others by clicking the **Send to Back** command. To place objects in front of others, click either the **Bring Forward** or **Bring to Front** commands.

### Notes:

- To move an object quickly through the layers, use the **direction arrows** on the Standard toolbar.
- All new objects are placed above existing objects.

## Moving objects

Once an object is selected, you can move it by dragging it with the **Object tool**. Apart from moving an object with your mouse, you can also move it using the **Position** spin boxes on the Attribute toolbar. When you view the Position spin boxes, they show the current horizontal and vertical position of the selected object respectively (All measurements are in pixels). You can enter in new values to move the object accordingly. This is very useful if you are working with various layers of objects and you want to move one by a fraction of a pixel, such as when creating shading effects.

## Transforming objects

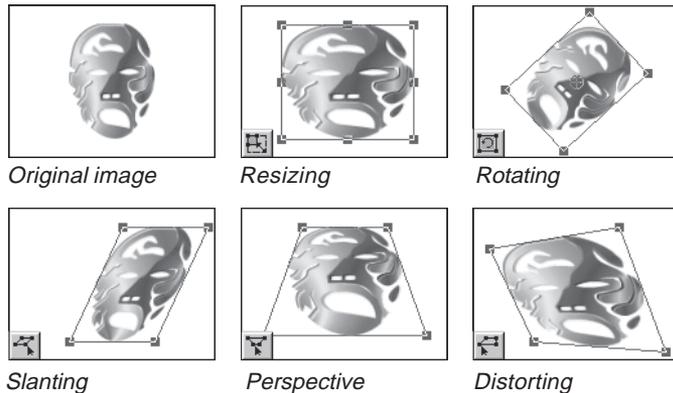
In CG Infinity, you can transform an object using the **Object** and **Envelope tools**. When you transform an object, you can adjust its shape and rotation as well as resize it so that it fits better inside the edit window frame. **Transforming** works by dragging the handles on the bounding box of a selected object. Depending on the type of transform you are performing, these handles appear either on the sides and corners of the bounding box or just the corners. (To manipulate the actual path of an object you need to use the **Adjust tool**, see page 332.)



### *Using the Object tool*

The **Object tool** provides five options on the Attribute toolbar for resizing and rotating an object. The first option, **Resize**, allows you to drag on the nodes of a bounding box to stretch and pull an object. (If you want the object to change its size proportionally, hold down the [SHIFT] key as you drag.) To rotate an object, select the **Rotate** option. As you rotate, the degree of the rotation is displayed in the **Rotation Angle** spin box at the end of the Attribute toolbar. For finer adjustments, you can use this spin box or enter in the degree of rotation directly. You can also reposition the rotation circle, found in the middle of the object, to determine where the center of rotation is, such as the top left corner or right side. (To return the rotation circle to the middle, click the **Center** button next to the **Rotation Angle** spin boxes.)

**Note:** To resize an object, you can click a button or enter the new dimensions for the object in the **Width** and **Height** spin boxes on the Attribute toolbar. (These spin boxes are useful when you need to make accurate adjustments to an object's size such as to 1/10th of a pixel.)



## Using the Envelope tool

The **Envelope tool** differs from the Object tool in that it works by providing a shape which you fit an object into, rather than having an object define its own shape. This is particularly useful for text objects whose shapes take their form from a particular font. By changing the envelope of the text, you have much greater flexibility over how the text is warped and distorted. For example, you could make the text appear as a wave or have it bend in three dimensions.

### *To change the envelope of an object:*

1. Create a text object and then select the **Envelope tool** from the Tool panel. A bounding box appears around the text with nodes on the sides and corners.
2. Select a method to control the envelope from the **Envelope method** combo box on the Attribute toolbar. You can choose between four types: **Fit Shape**, **Fit Length**, **Horizontal** and **Vertical**. (The result of each of these methods may differ depending on the size and font of your text.)

3. Drag one of the nodes of the bounding box to change the shape of the envelope. **Control handles** appear which allow you to further control the curve of the envelope.
4. Keep dragging the nodes and control handles until you have a shape you are happy with.



*Changing the envelope of a text object*

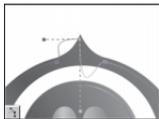
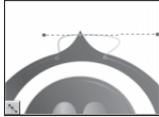
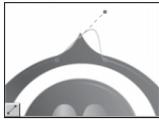
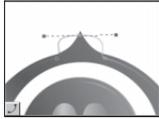
## Adjusting shapes

Whenever you create an object (other than a text object), its shape is defined by the path you draw. Once created, you can come back to this path and change it using the **Adjust tool**. The Adjust tool is particularly useful if you have traced an object or created your own freehand drawing and need to modify it so that it better takes the shape you want.

### *To adjust a path:*

1. Select the **Adjust tool** from the Tool panel. The Attribute toolbar changes to display the options for adjusting a path. **Nodes** also appear on the path of the selected object. (You cannot adjust the path of a text object.)
2. Select the **Adjust Path** button (if it is not already selected) and click any node on the path of the object. The node changes to black to indicate it is active and control handles appear on either side of the node.

3. Change the shape of the path by dragging the node or one of the control handles. Dragging the node repositions it while dragging a control handle changes the **curvature** of the path around the active node and between the preceding and following nodes. You can control the behavior of these nodes as well as their directions by choosing one of the node options on the Attribute toolbar. In all, there are five options you to choose from:



**Curve Segment** changes the curvature of a path between the preceding, following and active nodes.

**Linear Segment** changes the shape of the path to straight line segments beginning from the preceding node to the active node.

**Symmetric Node** changes the curvature of the path between the preceding, following and active nodes, keeping the control handles fixed in a linear path and equal in length. (This button is active only if the Curved Node option is selected). This option is best for performing general changes to a path's curvature.

**Smooth Node** changes the curvature of the path between the preceding, following and active nodes, allowing you to change the length of the control handles independently from each other (they still remain on a linear path). Use this option for greater control over the curvature with respect to the preceding and following nodes.

**Cusp Node** changes the curvature of the path between the preceding, following and active nodes, allowing you to move one control handle at a time. This is useful when you want to change the curve on one side of the path without affecting the other.

4. Keep dragging nodes and control handles until you have a shape you are happy with.

#### Notes:

- To add a node, click anywhere along the path of the object with the **Add Node** button selected from the Attribute toolbar. To remove a node, click the node with the **Remove Node** button selected.
- You can make a path closed or opened by clicking the respective buttons on the Attribute toolbar.



## Creating a moving path

An integral part of your work in CG Infinity is adding motion to your objects. This is done using the **Moving Path tool** which allows you to specify a path for an object to follow within the edit window. You can then position objects so that they move across the screen, either in unison or at different intervals. You can even perform various special effects such as fades from one color to another as well as changing the size and rotation of an object as it travels over time. Being a path, you can also adjust it just as you would the path of any object in CG Infinity, providing for extremely fine and accurate movements.

### Notes:

- Any moving path you create takes its time from the duration specified in the Properties dialog box, opened by clicking **File: Properties**.
- To delete a moving path, select the object with the Moving Path tool and then click **Edit: Delete [DELETE]**. (If there is no moving path, the object is deleted.)

### To create a moving path:

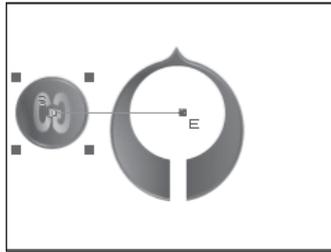
1. Position the object where you want it to start its movement and then select the **Moving Path tool** from the Tool panel. The Attribute toolbar changes to display the various options available and **Start** and **End** nodes appear on the selected object.

**Note:** Selecting the Moving Path tool should open the **Time Control Panel**. If it does not, click the **Time Control Panel** button on the Standard toolbar to display it. (If the Moving Path tool is not the current tool, it is automatically hidden.)

2. Click the **End** node and drag it to where you want the moving path to end.
3. Click the **Play** button on the **Time Control Panel** to see how the object moves. (It is best to do this in **Wireframe mode** as it speeds up the playback considerably.) To adjust the path's position or shape, drag on the **Start** and **End** nodes.

### Notes:

- Depending on the type of path, you may have to click twice before being able to move a **Start** or **End** node.
- To view a moving path at anytime, click on it with the **Moving Path tool**.

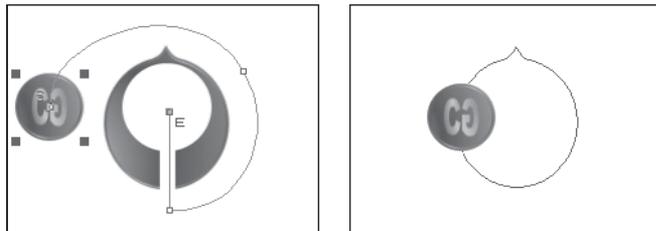


*Creating a moving path*

### Changing the shape of a moving path

In CG Infinity, there are two ways in which you can change the shape of a moving path: with the **Moving Path tool** or by assigning the path of an object as a moving path. To change the shape using the Moving Path tool, you need to select it with the Moving Path tool and then drag the moving path as you would if adjusting an object's path. The Attribute toolbar has the same options as the Adjust tool (see page 332). To create greater movement, you can add nodes anywhere along the path and edit them as you would with the Adjust tool.

To assign the path of an object as a moving path, first select the object and then copy it. Now select the object you want to move and click **Edit: Paste Object as Moving Path**. The path of the copied object now appears in the center of the selected object as a moving path. This is useful if you want an object to follow the shape of a particular feature, such as stars following the outline of a corporate logo.



*Changing the shape of a moving path (left)  
and pasting an object as a moving path (right)*

## Changing the size and style of an object over time

Using the **Time Control Panel**, you can make an object change its size over time as well as perform other effects such as fades and color transitions. This is done through the use of key frames that you place at strategic positions throughout the moving path. By changing the attributes of an object at each key frame, you cause it to change over time.

### *To change an objects size and style over time:*

1. Select the object you want to change with the **Moving Path tool**. The moving path of the object appears.
2. Move the **Preview slider** in the **Key frame Controller** to the frame in the path where you want the object to change. The object moves to that frame position on the moving path.
3. Click the **Add Key frame** button on the **Time Control Panel**. A key frame is added to the **Key frame slider**. (Key frames are explained in detail in the "Using key frame controls" section, page 188.)
4. Change the style and size of the object using the **Object Style Panel** as well as the resize buttons on the Attribute toolbar. If you are changing the style, any changes to the fill color options produces a fade effect from one to the other, as long as two fill colors are of the same type, for example, going from a gradient fill to another gradient fill. If the types are different, no fade occurs and the style changes only at the second key frame position.



You can also control the transparency of the object as it moves over time by adjusting the control points in the **Fade** graph. Moving a control point upward makes the object more transparent: downward less transparent.

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames. (To edit an object at an existing key frame position, you must first make it active by clicking on its key frame in the **Key frame** slider.)

6. Move the **Preview slider** to the start or click on the **Start Key frame** button to return the object back to its beginning position.
7. Click the **Play** button to see how the object moves and changes over time. (To see changes in an object's style, you need to play the moving path in **Preview mode**, not **Wireframe**.)



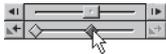
*Changing the size of objects over time*

## Changing the speed of an object

In CG Infinity, changing an object's position on a moving path at a particular key frame controls the speed at which the object travels. For example, if you place a key frame at frame 15 of the moving path, and then move the object further along the path, you create a fast motion effect as the object has to cover more ground within the same time period. Likewise, by moving the object back, you create a slow motion effect as the object has less distance to travel within the same time period.

### *To change the speed of an object:*

1. Select the object you want to change with the **Moving Path tool**. The moving path of the object appears.
2. Click a **key frame** in the **Time Control Panel**. The object moves to that position on the moving path.
3. Drag on the bounding box of the object and move it to where you want it to appear at that point in the path. (Moving forward creates a fast motion effect: back a slow motion effect.)
4. Move the **Preview slider** to the start or click on the **Start Key frame** button to return the object back to its beginning position.
5. Click the **Play** button to see how the object changes its speed as it moves over time.

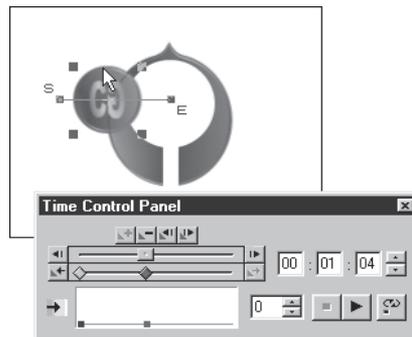


## Timing the movement of objects

An important part of any CG Infinity project is the **synchronization of objects** with each other. For example, you will often want text to appear either before or after another object has been displayed. To do this, you again need to use the **Time Control Panel** and place key frames to act as timers before an action occurs. (Often with multiple objects, you end up needing more time than currently specified in the project. To add time to a project, increase the duration in the Properties dialog box, opened by clicking **File: Properties**.)

### *To change the start time of a moving object:*

1. Select the object you want to change with the **Moving Path tool**. The moving path of the object appears.
2. Move the **Preview slider** in the **Time Control Panel** to the frame where you want the object to begin its movement and click the **Add Key frame** button. The object moves to that position on the moving path.
3. Drag on the bounding box of the object and move it back to the previous key frame. (This essentially makes the object "move" in the same place until the key frame is reached.)
4. Move the **Preview slider** to the start or click on the **Start Key frame** to return the object back to its beginning position.
5. Click the **Play** button to see the motion of the object.



*Adjusting the Start time of an object on a moving path*

*To change the end time of a moving object:*

1. Select the object you want to change with the **Moving Path tool**. The moving path of the object appears.
2. Move the **Preview slider** to the last frame in the **Time Control Panel**, the object moves to that position on the moving path. Then click the **Add Key frame** button. A key frame is added to the **Key frame slider**.
3. Drag on the key frame and move it to the position where you want the movement of the object to end.
4. Move the **Preview slider** to the start or click on the **Start Key frame** to return the object back to its beginning position.
5. Click the **Play** button to see the motion of the object.

*Performing minor adjustments in time*

After laying out all your objects and specifying their various moving paths, you may find that you need to go back and adjust the timing of a particular object by a few frames, but don't want to affect its position on the moving path. To do this, select the key frame belonging to the object and then move the key frame along the **Key frame slider** (not the object itself). This increases or decreases the timing before the object begins or continues its movement.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- To see a **line color**, you need to specify a **line width** (see page 320).
- Apply **gradients** to add color and depth to an object (see page 322).
- Right-mouse click on an object to set that object's attributes as the default (see page 323).
- Use the **Freehand** and **Path tools** to trace objects in the background (see page 326).
- Make general path adjustments using the **Symmetric node**, specific adjustments using the **Cusp Node** (see page 333).
- Position your objects at their starting point before making a moving path (see page 334).
- To have an object follow another, paste the other as a moving path (see page 335).
- You can create **gradient shifts** over time if the object shares the same fill type at each key frame (see page 336).
- To change the **starting time** of an object, move it from the start time in the path back to its original position. To change the **end time** of an object, move its key frame back to the end time (see page 338).

# Audio Editor



## Getting started

*Audio Editor is the MediaStudio Pro program that gives you command over your soundtrack. With it, you can play, record and edit the audio components of your video project with drag-and-drop ease and a click of the mouse.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Understanding the basics ..... p.344*
- *Recording sound ..... p.350*
- *Customizing Audio Editor ..... p.353*

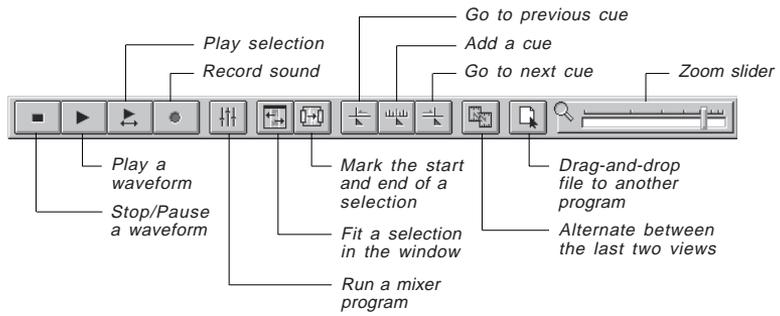
## Understanding the basics

To get started with Audio Editor you can either open an existing audio file or record sound from an external device such as an audio CD, microphone or VCR. When you view sound, it appears in an edit window as a waveform. This waveform represents the various positive and negative peaks that a natural sound wave makes. If it is a mono file (single channel), only one waveform is present, while stereo files (two channels) have two waveforms representing the left and right channels accordingly. Audio Editor displays sound in this manner to help you visualize the contents of an audio file and make enhancing it easy.

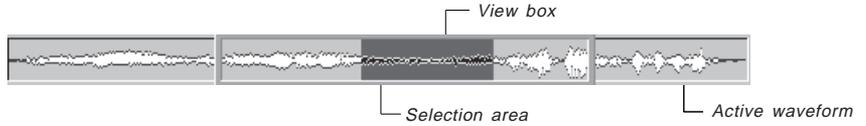


*Audio Editor's program window*

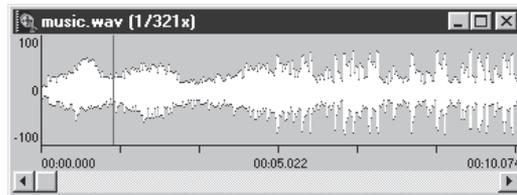
## Toolbar



## Overview strip



## Edit window





## Playing audio files

To play an audio file, click the **Play** button on the Toolbar or click **Control: Play** [SPACE BAR]. The file starts playing from the current cursor position. To stop the file click the **Stop** button or click **Control: Stop** [ESC]. The cursor pauses at the current position. Clicking Stop again returns the cursor to the start of the file. (Clicking Stop or pressing ESC when the file is not playing returns the cursor to the start of the file.)

### Notes:

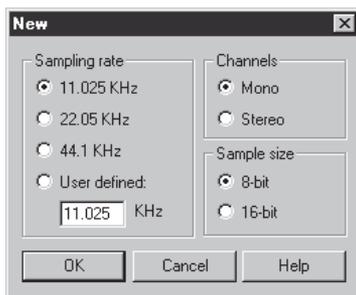
- To move the cursor to the start of a file, click **Control: Go To Start** [CTRL+HOME]. To move it to the end, click **Control: Go To End** [CTRL+END].
- If you have created a selection area you can play the contents of the selection by clicking the **Play Selection** button on the Toolbar or **Control: Play Selection** [F2].

## Creating a new edit window

To record sound, you first need to create a new edit window to hold that sound. If you do not create a new edit window, the sound is recorded into the currently active window using the properties of that window for the recording.

### To create a new edit window:

1. Click **File: New** [CTRL+N] to open the New dialog box.



*New dialog box*

2. Select the sampling rate you want to use from the **Sampling rate** group box.

The sampling rate determines how many portions (samples) of audio data appear each second and is measured in the thousands. The more

samples a file contains the better the audio reproduction; the down side is increased file size.

3. Select the number of channels to use from the **Channels** group box. The number of channels in an audio file refers to whether the file is mono or stereo. Stereo provides for better sound but is twice the file size of mono.
4. Select the **sample size** you want to use from the **Sample size** group box. The sample size specifies how much memory is allocated to store the audio data. In most cases 8-bit files produce adequate results without sacrificing too much in quality. If you want the best possible file then choose 16-bit. This does, however, result in a file twice the size of an 8-bit file.

## Saving files

Save your audio files using the **Save** and **Save As** commands. For previously saved files, clicking **Save** instantly overwrites the existing file with the new data. **Save As** opens the Save Audio File dialog box where you can specify a new name and/or destination. The Save Audio File dialog box also allows you to append subject and description information as well as assign a thumbnail image to use as a visual representation of the file in any preview enabled dialog box or browser.

There is also an option where you can directly save the audio file into the **Production Library** of Video Editor, saving you the trouble of having to import it when using Video Editor.

**Note:** *If the saved audio file is included as a track in a Video Editor project, the track is automatically updated.*

## Saving files to a video

Apart from saving audio as a wave file, you can also save it as an audio track to an existing AVI or MOV file. If the file contains an original audio track, the track is overwritten with the new data. (If the waveform is longer in duration than the video, it is truncated to the video length.)

## Converting files

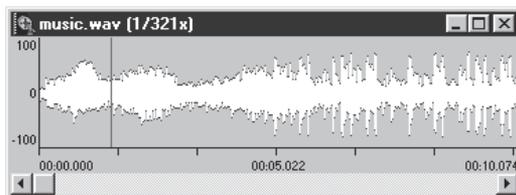
After saving a file you may find that you need to change its attributes, particularly if you are planning on mixing it with other files that have different properties. When you convert a file, you can choose to convert down, reducing quality and file size, or convert up. Converting up, such as adding an extra channel or increasing the sample size, does not result in an improvement in the sound of the file. This is because the attributes of an audio file are determined at the time of its creation.

To convert a file, click **Edit: Convert To**. In the dialog box that opens, you can choose to change the sampling rate, channels and sample size according to your needs. (For more on these see the section on "Creating a new edit window", page 346.) Once you click **OK**, the dialog box closes and the waveform is changed accordingly.

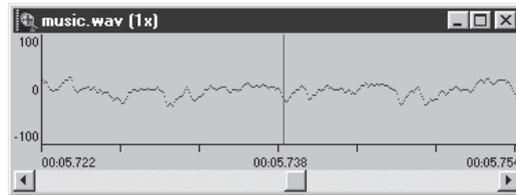
## Viewing waveforms

When you edit a waveform you may want to see part of it in greater detail or display it in a more compressed format. You can do this in three ways: click **View: Zoom In** and **Zoom Out**, by dragging the **Zoom slider**, or by dragging on the borders of the **Global View panel**. (The amount you can zoom depends on the size of the edit window, the length of the waveform and the amount of the waveform shown in the window.)

**Note:** In Audio Editor it is possible to zoom down to the sample level. Editing at this level however is often impractical as any changes you make may be inaudible because of the sheer number of samples possible. For example, the smallest audio file still has 11,025 samples per second.



A waveform at Fit In Window view



*A waveform at Actual view*

### **Changing the view of a waveform**

Whenever you open an audio file, the waveform is displayed entirely within the edit window. If you change the magnification of the window, the view of the waveform changes, and parts of the waveform may be hidden by the window frame. To change your current view, drag on the **Global View panel** in the **Overview strip**. This reveals those portions of the waveform previously hidden. To return to viewing the entire waveform in the edit window, click **View: Fit In Window [CTRL+1]**. (To view the waveform at **1x**, click **View: Actual View**.)

**Note:** *If you have created a selection area, you can fit the selection to the edit window by clicking on the **Fit Selection In Window** button on the Toolbar.*

### **Controlling the display and time unit of waveforms**

In the Preferences dialog box (see page 353), you can determine the detail with which Audio Editor displays waveforms, choosing between a precise scan and a quick scan. **Precise scans** produce a very detailed waveform, but take longer to redraw. On the other hand, **Quick scans** produce a slightly less accurate waveform, but are much quicker at redrawing. In most cases, the Quick scan option is more than adequate for editing at the **seconds level**. (In the same dialog box, you can also change the units used to indicate time along the bottom of the edit window. You can choose from M:S:ms, SMPTE or as samples.)

00:00.000 00:01.681 00:03.363 00:05.045 00:06.726 00:08.408 00:10.115

*An example of the time unit (M:S:ms)*

00:00:00 00:00:12 00:00:25 00:01:07 00:01:20 00:02:03 00:02:15

*An example of the SMPTE unit (M:S:f)*

0 2317 4635 6953 9270 11588 13940

*An example of the samples unit (thousands)*



## Dragging-and-dropping to Video Editor

Audio Editor allows you to take an audio file and then drag-and-drop that file into Video Editor for further editing or to make it a part of a video project. To do this, first open or record the file in Audio Editor and then click the **Drag-and-Drop** button on the Toolbar. Holding down your mouse, drag-and-drop the file to an audio track in Video Editor. If you wish to edit this file at a later date, double-click on it and Audio Editor will open with the file in the workspace. Saving then updates the file accordingly.



## Recording sound

In Audio Editor, there are two methods to record an audio file. The first is by recording sound to any open edit window (this can be an existing file or a new "empty" edit window). The other way is to copy a sound file directly from a CD. Depending on your system's configuration, you can record from a variety of sources such as a CD-ROM, MIDI player, microphone, or MIDI file (before you start recording, you need to specify the driver of the external audio source you will be using, such as a microphone or VCR). To do this, open the **Windows Control Panel**. Depending on the operating system you are using, double-click the item that manages **Multimedia** settings. In the **Preferred device for recording** option, specify the appropriate sound card driver (for audio sources) or video capture board driver (for video sources). For example, if you are using a SoundBlaster32 then you would set the **Preferred device for recording** as "SB 32 (220)."

***To record sound:***

1. Connect the audio source into your PC audio card's line-in jack. Test whether or not the connection works by playing from the source. If you hear sound from your computer's speakers, then it is a good connection.
2. Run your audio mixing program by clicking the **Run Mixer Program** button on the Toolbar or click **Control: Run Mixer [CTRL+M]**. (To use the Windows default mixer, click **Start: Programs - Accessories: Entertainment - Volume Control**.)
3. Make active the edit window you want to record the sound into and click the **Record** button on the Toolbar or click **Control: Record [CTRL+R]**. A message box appears displaying the current recording level.



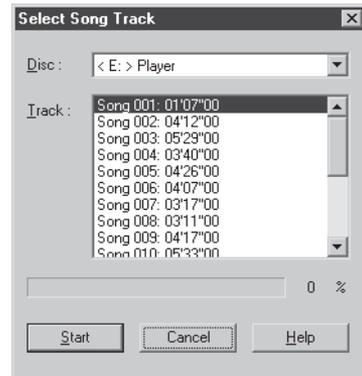
*Set Recording Level dialog box*

4. Adjust the recording level with the controls on the mixer control panel. For better recording quality, your peak level should stay close to, but not touch, the right side of the indicator.
5. Click **Start**. A message box appears telling you that Audio Editor is recording. Click **OK** in the message box to end recording. The new recording appears in the active edit window at the current cursor position.

***To copy tracks directly from an audio CD:***

1. Insert the audio CD in the disc drive.
2. Select **Control: Record from CD**. The **Sound Selection** dialog box opens.

3. Determine the capture sound quality, using **Format** and **Attributes**, for the audio file that you will be capturing. Click **Save As** to save your settings as a sound template. By saving it, you will be able to use the same attributes to capture from an audio CD in the future. Click **OK** to open the **Select Song Track** dialog box.
4. Select the desired track(s) then click **Start**. Audio Editor will begin copying the selected track(s).



5. The captured file will appear on the workspace. Select **File: Save As** to save the captured audio file. You can save the audio file in the Media Library folder of the Video Editor Production Library so you can access it right away when using Video Editor.

### Tips for determining audio quality

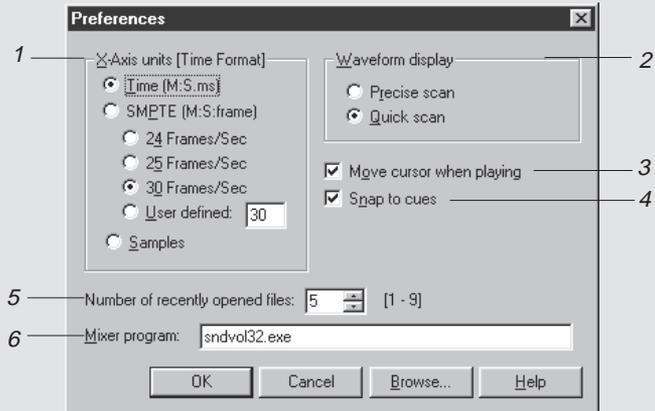
Generally, it is quite straight forward to determine the properties you should use for recording a waveform. The determining factors are the file size and the type of speakers the audio will be played back over. For example, if disk space is limited and the sound is intended for playing over small computer speakers, then there is no need for CD quality sound. Likewise, if you plan on playing your files over amplified speakers directly from your hard disk, then you would want more than just telephone quality. The chart on the next page offers you some ideas of the different types of audio quality possible and how they affect file size.

Quality	Properties	File size (compressed: 10 secs)
Telephone	11,025 KHz, 8-bit, Mono	107KB
Radio	22,050 KHz, 8-bit, Mono	215KB
CD	44,100 KHz, 16-bit, Stereo	1,720KB

## Customizing Audio Editor

You can customize the way you work in Audio Editor using the Preferences dialog box, opened by clicking **File: Preferences [F6]** or by double-clicking on the **Status bar**. Here, you can control the display of the waveform, the time format used, and assign a mixer program for recording audio files.

### PREFERENCES DIALOG BOX



1. **X-Axis unit [Time Format]** specifies the unit of time for each edit window. Selecting the **Time (M:S.ms)** option displays audio file information in minutes, seconds and milliseconds. The **SMPTE (M:S:Frame)** option shows the time in minutes, seconds and frames. This is especially helpful if you are editing audio for use in Video Editor as it allows you to match the audio portions with each frame of a video sequence. You can choose between film (24 fps), PAL (25 fps) and NTSC (30 fps), or, for irregular frame rates define your own, such as 15, for example. For detailed editing of audio select the **Samples** option; this displays time in samples per second. For example, if your sampling rate is 11.025 kHz, then the waveform shows 11,025 sample points per second.
2. **Waveform display** controls the detail with which Audio Editor draws waveforms. Selecting the **Precise scan** option produces a very detailed waveform, but may take more time to redraw because of the extra information. The **Quick scan** option produces a slightly less accurate waveform but is much quicker at redrawing. In most cases the **Quick scan** option is more than adequate for editing at the seconds level. If you want to go to the sample level, then select the **Precise scan**.
3. **Move cursor when playing** moves the cursor along the waveform whenever you play audio files. If you are low on memory, clear this option as it requires extra resources.

4. **Snap to cues** makes selection areas snap to any nearby cues.
5. **Number of recently opened files** specifies how many file names are stored in the Recent History list found in the File menu.
6. **Mixer program** defines the path and name of the mixer program to use when recording. (This program will open whenever you click the **Run Mixer Program** button on the Toolbar or click **Control: Run Mixer [CTRL+M]**.)

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- **Sound** is represented on your computer as a series of waves in a waveform file (see page 344).
- Use the **Edit: Convert To** command to change a waveform's properties (see page 348).
- Use the **Global View panel** in the **Overview strip** to zoom in on a waveform as well as reposition the current view (see page 348).
- Choose **radio quality sound** (22.05 KHz, mono, 8-bit) for files destined to be played back over the Internet or from CD-ROM (see page 352).
- Match the properties of a **waveform** to the speakers it will be played back on (see page 352).
- Set the time measurement unit to **SMPTE** when working on files for use in video projects (see page 353).

## Editing audio files

*With your computer and Audio Editor, trimming and enhancing audio tracks for your audio and video projects becomes greatly simplified and significantly easier. With a number of advanced audio effects and enhancements, Audio Editor will soon have you creating audio files that add impact to your work and multimedia presentations.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Creating selection areas ..... p.356*
- *Working with cues ..... p.357*
- *Sound sweetening ..... p.361*
- *Mixing tracks ..... p.365*
- *Applying special effects ..... p.367*

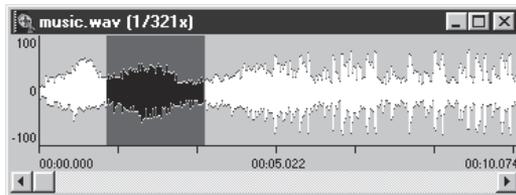
## Creating selection areas

After opening an audio file you can edit the entire waveform or selected parts of it. Unless a selection area has been created, any editing you do affects the entire waveform. In Audio Editor you can create a selection in the following ways:

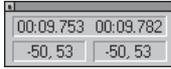
- Drag your mouse over the area you wish to select.
- Double-click on the waveform or click **Edit: Select All** [CTRL+L] to select the entire waveform.
- Play the file and then click the **Mark-in/out** button on the Toolbar or click **Control: Mark-in** and **Mark-out** [F3/F4] whenever you hear the part you would like to select. (This method is very useful for creating selections as your ear can hear the sound more clearly than your eyes can 'see' it.)
- Drag on the waveform in the **Overview strip**. (This can only be done if the file has been zoomed on and there is space outside the **Global View panel** to select.)

### Notes:

- To deselect a selection area, click anywhere within the waveform or click **Edit: Select None** [CTRL+K]. (Clicking the right mouse button deselects the area without moving the cursor.)
- If you have placed cues on a waveform, selecting the **Snap to cues** option in the Preferences dialog box (see page 354) 'pulls' any selection areas to the closest cue. (Depending on your current zoom level, you may have to start and end the selection area close to the appropriate cues.)



Selecting an area of a waveform



## Creating precise selections

During your editing there will be times when you want to make a very specific selection, starting and ending at exact times, particularly if you are working in conjunction with a video project in Video Editor. To make detailed selections you need to view the **Sample Information Window**, opened by right-clicking on a toolbar and selecting the **Sample Information Window** command. (You can also click **View: Toolbars & Panels**.)

The **Sample Information Window** tracks the movement of your mouse pointer as you move it, displaying the precise point in the waveform where the pointer passes, as well as the highest and lowest amplitudes of the waveform at that point. (If the times shown are not detailed enough, zoom in on the waveform.) The two values in the top box of the Sample Information Window indicate the starting and ending positions for the area your cursor currently spans, which, depending on your zoom level, may be the same or different. The bottom box (for stereo files there will be two, one for each channel) indicates the negative and positive amplitudes in that region.



## Working with cues

**Cues** are the best way to bookmark spots in a waveform that you want to frequently reference or come back to and edit. Once a cue has been created, you can jump to it from anywhere in the waveform regardless of where your cursor is located. Audio Editor also allows you to append information to a cue so that you can denote certain features at that particular point in the waveform (for example, marking the beginning of a long monologue, or denoting the point of impact between two cars in a high speed chase).

### *To place a cue:*

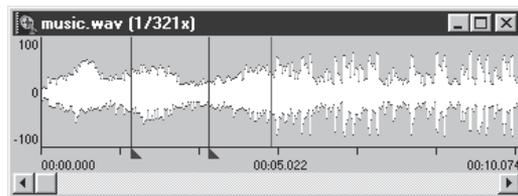
1. Click on the area in the waveform where you want to place a cue. (You may want to zoom in for a more accurate placement.)
2. Click the **Add Cue** button on the Toolbar or click **Control: Add Cue [F5]** to open the Add Cue dialog box.

3. Enter a description in the **Cue name** entry box (maximum **128** characters).

The default cue name, "**&p**" uses the time value of the cue's location for a name. For example, a cue at the **1** minute **30** second mark would be named "**01:30:00**."

4. Click **OK**. The **Add Cue** dialog box closes and a blue cue line appears at the cursor position.

**Note:** *You can also place a cue while a file is playing by clicking **Add Cue** or **Control: Add Cue**.*



*Placing cues on a waveform*

## Managing cues

You can manage cues in waveforms in several ways, such as changing their position and description, removing them from the edit window and switching between them. For example, you can:

- Right-click the cue handle at the base of the cue line to view its description.
- Double-click the handle to change a cue's name (this opens the Change Cue Name dialog box where you can enter a new name or description).
- Drag the handle of a cue to move it to a new position in the waveform.
- Drag the handle of a cue off either end of the edit window to remove it, or, to remove all cues, click **Control: Delete All Cues**.



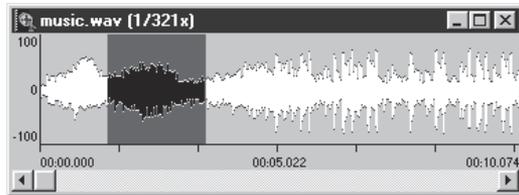
If a waveform has a large number of cues, you can navigate between them easily by clicking the **Previous Cue/Next Cue** buttons on the Toolbar or click **Control: Previous Cue** and **Next Cue** [SHIFT+TAB & TAB]. If you want to go to a specific cue, click **Control: Go To Cue** [SHIFT+G]. This opens the **Go To Cue** dialog box which lists all the existing cues in the waveform. To go to a cue, select it and click the **Go To** button. The cursor then jumps to that cue.

### ***Using cues with Video Editor***

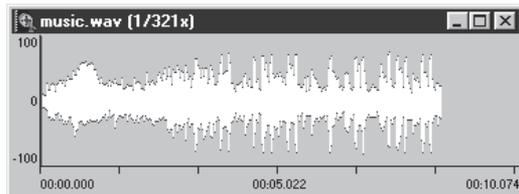
Whenever you save a file, any cue information is also saved with it. As such, you can insert the file as an audio track in Video Editor and maintain the cues which were placed in Audio Editor. Likewise, any cues placed on an audio track in Video Editor can be viewed in Audio Editor (for WAV files only). This makes it much easier when editing video as you can identify key areas in an audio track with which to match the appropriate action in the video track.

### **Clearing audio data**

Often when you open or record a waveform there may be areas which you don't want or no longer need. In such cases, you can remove them from the file by selecting them and clicking **Edit: Clear** [DELETE]. The selected area is removed and the remaining waveform shortens accordingly, decreasing the duration of the file. If you do not want to affect the duration of the file, click **Edit: Mute**. This effectively erases any audio data (zero amplification), maintaining the duration of the file while, at the same time, creating a "silent" part in the waveform. If you want to delete a large portion of the waveform keeping only a small part, first select the part you want and then click **Edit: Retain**. This removes all non-selected audio data.



*Waveform before clearing*



*Waveform after clearing*

## Inserting audio data

After cutting or copying audio data, you can paste it from the clipboard into an edit window by clicking one of the **Edit: Paste** commands. Although similar, each differs in its implementation as well as benefits.

- **Insert** adds data from the clipboard to an existing waveform at the cursor position. This increases the duration of the audio file by the duration of the pasted segment.
- **Replace** overwrites the waveform at the cursor position, replacing it with the audio data from the clipboard. If the clipboard data is longer than the waveform, Audio Editor truncates the excess.
- **Mix** opens the Paste Mix dialog box which allows you to combine waveforms by adjusting their relative amplitudes. A **100%** mix means that the data is mixed at equal amounts. Lowering the mix for one reduces its amplification, while increasing the mix for the other adds to its amplification. For more on mixing tracks, see the section "Mixing tracks", page 365.

- **Fill** replaces a selection area with the clipboard data. If the selection area is longer in duration than the clipboard data, the data repeats itself until the selection area is filled. If the selection area is shorter, Audio Editor truncates the data accordingly. This command is disabled if there is no selection area.
- **As a New Document** creates a new edit window, filling it with the data from the clipboard.

## Sound sweetening

---

Sometimes when you record audio data, you get annoying background noise and general imperfections. For example, many times the sound accompanying video footage comes out poorly, often because something interfered with the microphone or recording equipment. In Audio Editor, you can remove such noises as well as apply a number of studio quality filters that correct and enhance (or sweeten) the sound in your audio files.

**Note:** *If you only want to sweeten a certain portion of an audio file you must select it first, otherwise the entire waveform is affected.*

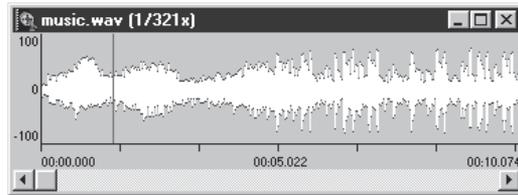
## Changing the audio level

Audio level refers to how loud or quiet an audio file plays back at. Generally, you can use your computer's volume controls to adjust this directly, but when it comes to mixing files you need to make sure that you first equalize the different sound tracks so that they share a similar audio level, especially if they were recorded at different levels.

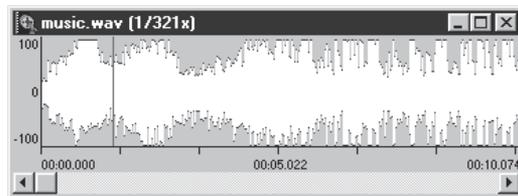
### *To change the audio level of a file:*

1. Click **Effect: Amplify** to open the Amplify dialog box.
2. Specify the percentage you want to change the audio level by in the **Percentage** spin box. **100%** is unchanged while anything above that increases the audio level and anything below decreases it.
3. Click **OK**. The waveform changes to reflect the new audio level.

If, after changing the audio level, you find that the waveform peaks or touches the top and bottom edges of the edit window ( $\pm 100\%$  on the amplitude scale), then you may find some distortion or noise has been created. In such cases, undo the audio level and click **Effect: Normalize**. This adjusts the waveform's amplitude so that it does not peak above or below the amplitude scale. (In some cases, you may not see much change to the waveform after normalizing depending on the existing audio levels.)



*Waveform before changing audio level*



*Waveform after changing audio level by 200%*

## Changing pitch

An audio file's pitch defines how high or low it sounds. A **high pitch** may be very shrill, like a whistle, while a **low pitch** may be very deep, like a fog horn. To adjust an audio file's pitch, click **Effect: Pitch**. This opens the **Pitch** dialog box where you can raise or lower the pitch by dragging on the **Pitch slider**. Moving to the left lowers the pitch, while moving to the right makes it higher.

## Quantizing a waveform

When you record audio data, you need to indicate the sample size, or the number of bits used to store the resulting file. This can be either **8-bit** or **16-bit**. The more bits the better the quality of the recording, but the greater the size of the audio file. If you need to reduce file size, but still want to maintain a good level of quality, you can quantize the file by clicking **Effect: Quantize**. This command opens a dialog box which allows you to specify the number of bits allocated to the file, **1-7** for **8-bit** files and **1-15** for **16-bit** files. Often, a small reduction in the number of bits is all you need to bring the file size down while at the same time maintaining audible quality. (If you reduce the number of bits too much, you will ‘clip’ the sound, thereby producing noticeable distortion.)

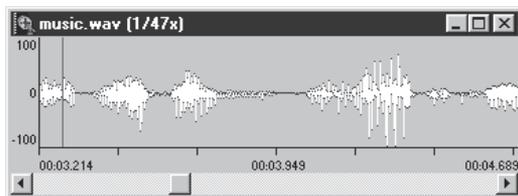
## Working with silence

From a computer’s perspective, silence is amplitude point **0** in a waveform (the **baseline**). Silence is useful in audio editing, particularly for what it isn’t rather than what it does. For example, **silence** is responsible for adding and removing time to an audio file, and timing is perhaps one of the most important aspects of any audio sequence. For example, the sound of a door opening must be timed to occur after the sound of the key entering the lock. Also, if you are creating a video project you will have events occurring at specific times and these all require an audio track that complements those times.

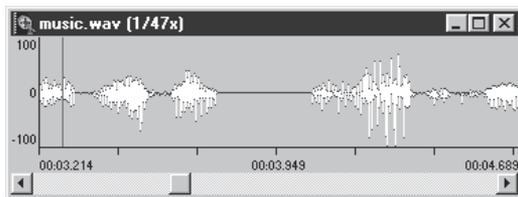
If you want to add silence to a waveform, click **Edit: Insert Silence**. This opens the **Insert Silence** dialog box where you can enter the time range you want to add in minutes, seconds, and milliseconds (**M:S:ms**). Once you click **OK**, the silence is added to the waveform at the cursor’s position, increasing the length of the audio file accordingly. To remove silence, click **Edit: Trim Silence**. In the **Trim Silence** dialog box that opens, you can specify to remove all silent areas in the file or just those matching a specified duration, measured in **M:S:ms**.

## Removing background noise

Unless you record in a rigidly controlled environment, such as a sound-proofed booth, every audio track you record will have some measure of background noise. For the most part, it will fall within acceptable levels, easily drowned out by the primary body of sound. If not, background noise can be very distracting and significantly decrease the quality of the sound. In Audio Editor, you can specify an acceptable threshold noise level by clicking **Effect: Remove Noise**. Any sound which occurs within this level is then removed from the waveform. As background noise is usually of a low amplitude, selecting a **2-5%** threshold is often adequate. Setting the threshold range too high, you run the risk of removing essential data.



*Waveform before removing noise*



*Waveform after removing noise*

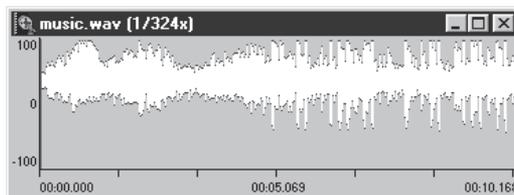
## Muting a waveform

Often, when you are working with waveforms, you will want to remove part of it without deleting the actual time it occupies (therefore silencing it). To do this, you need to mute the waveform by clicking **Edit: Mute**. After choosing this command, only the selected area of the waveform is silenced, leaving the total duration or length of the file unchanged.

## Calibrating files recorded from different sources

Not all recording devices have the same calibration or setup. It varies sometimes in frequency modulation and amplitude. In such cases, you may find that files recorded from these different sources end up with different baselines (point **0** on the amplitude scale). Most of the time, this doesn't adversely affect the overall quality of your tracks as the differences are minute. However, you may encounter some files whose baselines vary dramatically and the result of mixing them together produces unacceptable distortion and noise.

Audio Editor allows you to calibrate such files so that they all have matching baselines. Simply click **Effect: DC Offset**. In the DC Offset dialog box, you can drag the **Offset slider** to move the waveform above or below the baseline. Moving to the right shifts the baseline up, while moving to the left pulls it down. (This does not affect the amplitude of the file, only its waveform representation.) In this way, you can calibrate any mismatched files to have roughly the same baseline before you decide to mix them into the same audio file.



*Waveform with an incorrect baseline*

## Mixing tracks

Mixing tracks refers to taking two audio files and combining them into one. Mixing essentially blends the data from the audio files so that their respective sounds overlap and play through one another. When mixing, you can only mix waveforms with the same properties and need to have the two waveforms already open in the Audio Editor workspace. (To mix files with different properties, first convert them or cut one and click **Edit: Paste - Mix** to paste it into the other.)

### *To mix two tracks:*

1. Click **Edit: Mix**. The **Mix** dialog box opens displaying all files open in the workspace which share the same properties.



*Mix dialog box*

2. Select the file you want to mix by clicking on it in the **Mix with** list box.
3. Set the desired amplification levels for each waveform (between 1-**100%**). **100%** keeps the original amplification and anything below reduces it.
4. Click **OK**. A new edit window is created merging the two files.

## **Removing a mixed track**

There will be times when, after combining a group of files together, you may want to remove one of the files from the mixture. For example, you may be preparing an audio project for a client and, after having created a master file, they decide they want to remove the voice of one of their managers. Initially, this seems like an impossible task as all the files have been truly integrated. Fortunately, the solution is not as difficult as it seems. All you need to do is select the original audio file containing the manager's voice and then click **Effect: Invert**. (This action affects only the waveform, flipping it upside down, and does not affect the actual sound.) Once inverted, copy the entire waveform and then select the edit window containing the master file. Clicking **Edit: Paste: Mix** (leaving the

mixing levels at **100%**) pastes the inverted waveform into the file. As it is now the opposite of the original file, it negates the manager's voice and, as a result, removes it from the file.

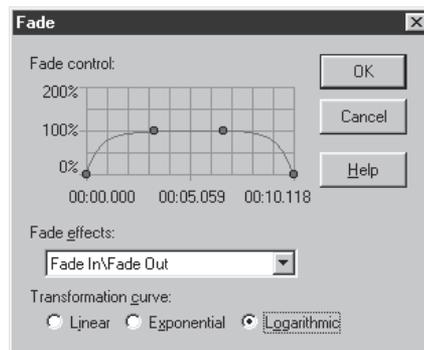
**Note:** You cannot remove a file from a mix using the Invert method if you have already applied other effects to the mixed file. This is because any effects you apply alter or shift each point in the waveform, and the inverse of the element you want to remove will no longer match properly to the original.

## Applying special effects

Audio Editor comes with a number of special affects that you can use to add impact to your audio files and provide enhancements which are difficult to replicate when recording from the original source. These can be anything from performing fades to the beginning and ending of a waveform to adding a variety of echo effects, such as stadium and resonance.

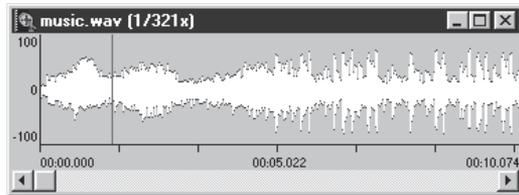
### Performing a fade

Performing fades is a frequent task in audio editing as you often need to control how sound enters and leaves a certain scene or moment. This is particularly useful if you want to give your audio a smooth or "rolling" start and finish. To perform a fade, click **Effect: Fade** to open the Fade dialog box. A Fade graph allows you to control how the fade is performed, offering a set of predefined fades or customizable settings.

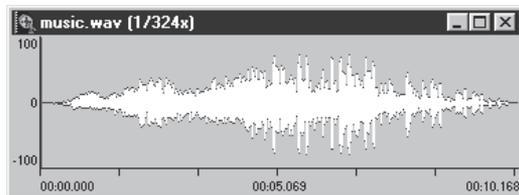


*Fade dialog box*

The first control point in the graph defines the start-fade amplitude, the second and third points for the middle of the fade and the fourth point for the end-fade amplitude (where **100%** is normal amplitude). To help smooth out the fade, select a **Transformation curve** option. A **Linear fade** produces a constant fade, while an **Exponential fade** begins slowly and ends quickly. The **Logarithmic fade** starts quickly and fades more slowly. For best results, it is a good idea to first experiment with a variety of different settings.



*Waveform before applying a fade effect*



*Waveform after applying a Fade In / Fade Out effect*

## Changing speed

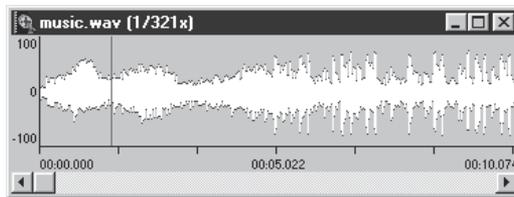
Changing the speed of an audio file is a useful way to increase or decrease its duration, as well as for producing interesting distortion effects. When you click **Effect: Speed**, the **Speed** dialog box opens with a slider for adjusting the speed. Moving to the right slows down the file, thereby increasing its duration. Moving to the left speeds it up, decreasing its duration accordingly.

## Performing a stereo pan

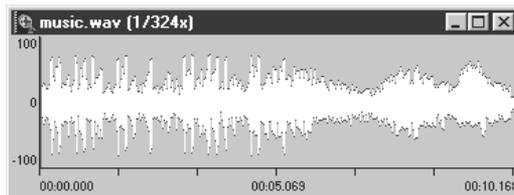
If you have a stereo file, you can pan the audio so that it sounds as if the audio moves from one speaker to the other, creating a "surround sound" effect. To do this, click **Edit: Pan** and in the **Pan** dialog box that opens, alter the fade for each channel accordingly. For example, a start and end level of **0%** results in complete silence while **100%** leaves the output unchanged. As with the Fade command, you can choose between Linear, Exponential and Logarithmic changes to help smooth the effect.

## Reversing a file

An interesting effect in Audio Editor is the **Effect: Reverse** command, which allows you to reverse a file so that it plays in the opposite direction. In most cases, this will produce an unintelligible result, which can only be deciphered if you reverse the file again.



*Waveform before reversing*



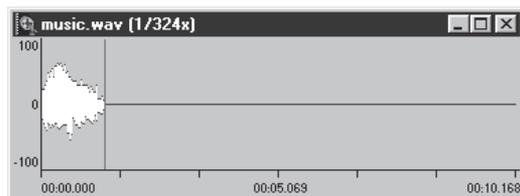
*Waveform after reversing*

## Performing an echo

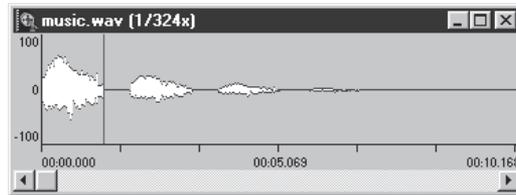
Echoes are useful effects which are often difficult to record naturally. Using Audio Editor, however, you can overcome such recording limitations and produce echoes that sound as if you are in a canyon or at a baseball game.

To create an echo quickly, click either one of the **Echo** commands available in the Effect menu. Or, to customize one of those commands, click **Effect: Echo**. This opens the Echo dialog box which allows you to define the three characteristics of each echo command: **Delay**, **Decay**, and **Bound**. **Delay** is the length of time that passes before you hear an echo, while **Decay** accounts for the loss of sound in each repetition. **Bound** determines the next round of repetition and is repeated until the echo fades away entirely. Below is a description of the characteristics for each of the echo commands:

- **Long Echo** has a long delay and a strong decay which results in longer repetitions, though it fades away faster.
- **Long Repeat** has a short delay and weak decay, therefore making the echo last longer (though each repetition comes in faster cycles).
- **Resonance** has a short delay with little decay and a very short bound. This results in a quick and fast echo, sort of like an "audio shadow."
- **Stadium** echo is very similar to Long Echo but starts sooner and ends faster.



*Waveform before applying an echo effect*



*Waveform after applying an echo effect*

## Performing a cross fade

A cross fade is where one audio track blends smoothly into another, head to tail. To cross fade two files, click **Edit: Cross Fade**. This opens the Cross Fade dialog box, which allows you to select the file you want to blend with. (You can only cross fade between files with the same properties.) Select the file to cross fade with from the **Cross Fade with** list box and then enter a value in the **Cross duration** spin box (in **M:S:ms**) to determine how much of the two files overlap. If you do not specify a duration, the second file is added to the end of the active file. Once you have an overlap duration, select one of the **Transformation curve** options to specify the type of fade to occur between the two tracks. A **Linear fade** produces a constant fade from one to the other, while an **Exponential fade** begins slowly and ends quickly and the **Logarithmic fade** begins quickly and ends slowly. When finished, click **OK**. The dialog box closes and a new waveform is created cross fading between the two files.

## Using DirectX Audio and DMO Audio Effect plug-ins

Audio Editor has the latest plug-ins that you can apply to your sound files. You can use **DirectX Audio** and some **DirectX Media Objects (DMO) Audio Effect** on your project, giving it a more cutting-edge results. These plug-ins provide a platform for creating dynamic audio files. **DirectX Audio** goes beyond the 16-channel limitation and allows any number of audio tracks to be played simultaneously, up to the limits of your system.

To use, select **Effect: DirectX Audio/Audio Effect DMO** then choose an effect to use. Adjust the attribute settings when the the specific dialog box appears then click **OK**.

## The chapter in review

---

Here are some key points and tips to remember from this chapter:

- Click the **Mark-in/out** button to start and end a selection when playing a file (see page 356).
- Use the **Sample Information Window** for creating precise selections (see page 357).
- Use **Cues** to mark events in a waveform (see page 357).
- Click the **Edit: Mute** command to remove areas without affecting the duration of a waveform (see page 359).
- **Normalize** a waveform before changing its amplification (see page 362).
- **Quantize** a waveform to decrease its file size while retaining audible quality (see page 363).
- Select a **2-5% Threshold** for removing noise (see page 364).
- Use the **Effect: Invert** command to remove a previously mixed file (see page 366).

**More Programs**



---

## More programs

*Ulead DVD MovieFactory LE and Ulead DVD-VR Wizard are separate programs that you can access inside MediaStudio Pro. DVD MovieFactory allows you to author DVD, VCD and SVCD to discs while the DVD-VR Wizard enables you to add or record videos to a device that supports DVD-RAM or DVD-R. Learn how to use these programs in this chapter.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *Ulead DVD MovieFactory ..... p.376*
- *Ulead DVD- VR Wizard ..... p.390*

## Ulead DVD MovieFactory

Ulead DVD MovieFactory provides you with the answer to your video disc authoring needs. No matter if the disc is a DVD, VCD or SVCD, DVD MovieFactory takes you there instantly with a user-friendly wizard-type process and specific task-oriented features. With DVD MovieFactory, creating professional-looking video discs has never been easier!

While all crucial information on how to use DVD MovieFactory is included in this document and the online Help, you can further receive the latest program updates, tutorials, technology advance (such as the newest hardware compatibility list), and technical support by visiting your local Ulead Web site.

### Getting around Ulead DVD MovieFactory

Once you open the program, the first screen you will see is this:



**Note:** The availability of the tasks on the left panel will depend on the DVD MovieFactory version you have.

## Which task should you choose?

Now you have an overall picture of how Ulead MovieFactory looks like. The next thing to do is choose the right task that fits your need:

- **Start Project - New project:** Choose this task if you are creating a new DVD MovieFactory project. Please select an output disc format, and then click **Next** to add media clips. (See [page 378](#) for details.)



- **Start Project - Existing project:** Choose this task if you already have a previous created DVD MovieFactory project saved on a hard drive or disc. Please use the drop-down list or the browse button to locate a project file (\*.dwz), and then click **Next** to start editing. (See [page 378](#) for details.)



- **Edit Disc:** Choose this task if you would like to edit your DVD+R/RW, DVD-R/RW, or an existing DVD MovieFactory project directly on a recordable disc. Please select the disc location on your computer, and then click **Next** to start editing.



- **Direct to Disc:** Choose this task if you want to capture videos straight from your video device and burn a disc immediately. Please select an output disc format, and then click **Next** to capture videos, setup menus, and finally burn the disc.



- **Copy Disc:** Choose **Copy from - Disc** if you want to make a disc-to-disc (VCD or SVCD) copy or burn a disc from a DVD folder located in the hard drive or a disc. You can also choose **Copy from - Disc image file** to copy a disc image file and burn onto a disc. Click **Next** to go to the output step directly.



## Working on a project

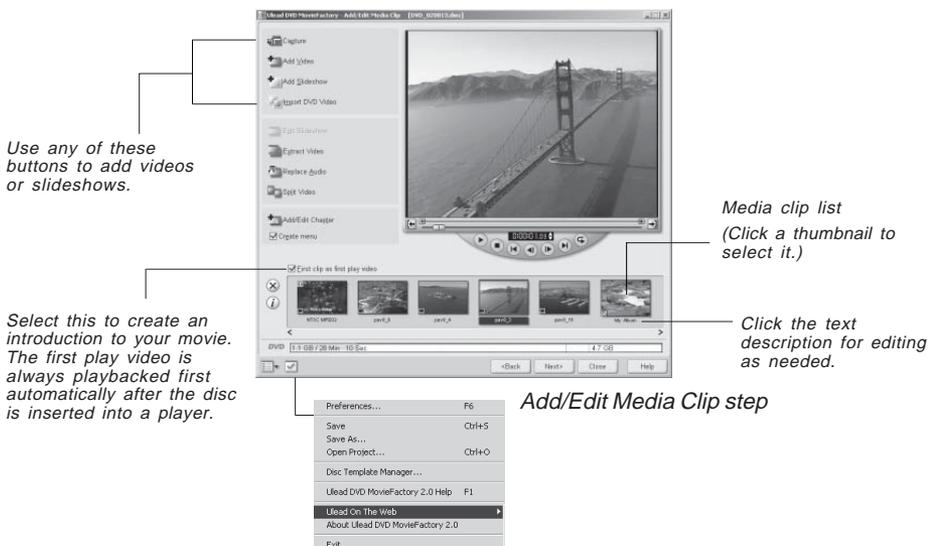
Ulead DVD MovieFactory is a project-based program. Each project (\*.dwz) file saves the latest information on your video and menu editing as well as the settings you have made for that project. So, you can always stop or resume your task at your convenience.

**Note:** *You can only work on one project at a time in Ulead DVD MovieFactory.*

### Add videos or slideshows

Now, you have opened a project. The next thing is to insert media clips into it. These media clips can be videos and/or slideshows. For example, using a compatible video capture card you can capture videos from a video device such as a DV camcorder. You can also add videos from a disc/hard drive, or create slideshows using a series of still images. Once these clips are inserted, you can make further editing and set up selection menus later.

**Tip:** *You can change the playback sequence by moving a thumbnail using the drag-and-drop method in the Media clip list.*



**Tip:** *Select **Save [Ctrl+S]** frequently to safeguard the latest update of your project.*

### *Capturing videos:*

1. Click **Capture**. The **Capture Video** dialog box opens.
2. Use the navigation controls to locate the starting point of the video you want to capture.
3. Click **Capture Video**.
4. Repeat steps 2 to 3 as needed to capture more videos.
5. Click **OK**.



*Capture video*

#### **Notes:**

- *All captured videos are stored in the default capture folder. To change the folder, click the browse button.*
- *The **Capture Video** dialog box is strictly for video capturing. Playing a captured video clip is only possible in the Media clip list of the main window.*

### **Capture settings**

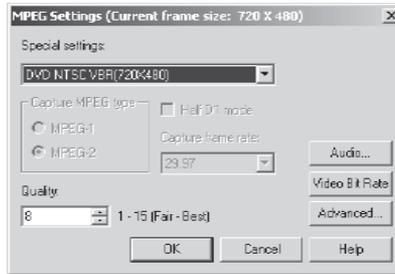
Ulead DVD MovieFactory automatically detects and determines capture settings for you. However, if you need to customize the settings, click



. Here, you will see the menu as depicted below. The menu shows available options, capture plug-ins, and currently selected input video device. Mostly, you will want to select **MPEG Settings** for customization.



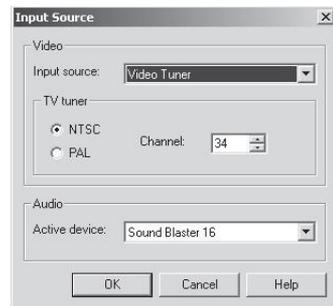
*Menu shown after clicking **Capture Settings***



In the **MPEG Settings** dialog box, you can choose from a number of presets or define your preferred settings from **Special Settings**. Also, click **Video Bit Rate** if you want to set a particular variable bit rate. (See online Help for details.)

**Tip:** *If you experienced dropped frames in your captured video, adjust the Quality level in the MPEG Settings dialog box to a lower value or turn on the DMA setting of your hard drive.*

If you have a TV tuner card installed on your computer, you can use this by selecting **Capture Settings: Input Source**. In the Input Source dialog box, select the channel you want to view then click OK.



*Input source*

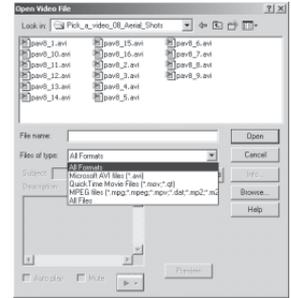
**Tips:**

- *If you are having problems viewing in the Preview window, select Force to use preview mode in Capture Options.*
- *If the captured video appears to be “shaking”, experiment with the different Output frame type options in the Advanced Settings dialog box. You can access this dialog box through the MPEG Settings dialog box.*

**Adding videos:**

1. Click **Add Video**.
2. Locate the folder where the videos are, and then select one or more video clips you want to add.
3. Click **Open**.

**Note:** You can add video formats such as AVI, QuickTime, and MPEG files. You can also add VCD video (DAT) files.

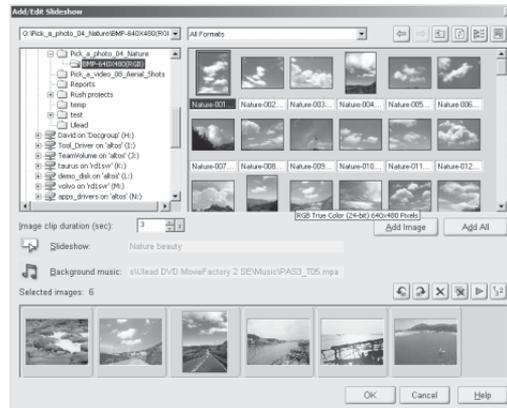


Open video file

**Tip:** After a video clip is added to the Media clip list, sometimes you may see a black thumbnail. This is because the first scene (frame) of this video clip is a black screen. To change it, double-click to select this video clip and move the Jog Bar to the scene you want. Next, right-click the thumbnail and select Change Thumbnail.

**Adding a slideshow:**

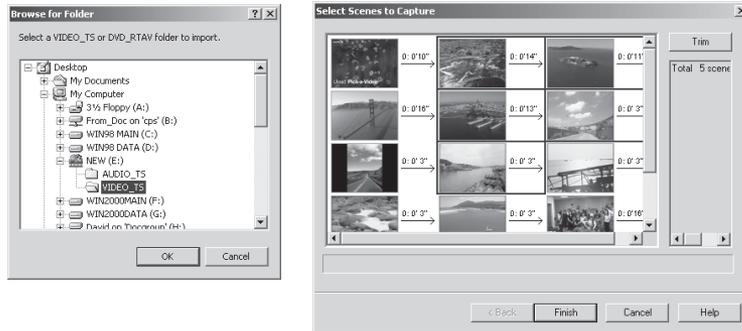
1. Click **Add Slideshow**.
2. Locate the folder where the still images are and select one or more images. (Use **[Ctrl]** or **[Shift]** to select multiple images)
3. Click **Add Image**. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as needed.
4. Click  or  if you want to add a text description or background music to the slideshow.
5. After all images are inserted, click **OK**.



Create a slideshow

### Importing DVD videos:

1. Click **Import DVD Video**.
2. Locate the folder where the videos are. (For example, locate the VIDEO\_TS folder for the DVD+R/RW or DVD-R/RW format; the DVD\_RTAV folder for the DVD-RAM format.)
3. Click to select the video clip you want to import, and then click **Finish**. (Use [CTRL] or [SHIFT] to select multiple videos) Depending on the video time length, wait a while until the capture process completes.



**Note:** Sometimes you might see some white video thumbnails in the **Select Scenes to Capture** dialog box. This is normal because the first frame for this type of video thumbnails is white or black.

### Trim a video

You can trim a video using the **Jog Bar**, mark-in/out, and navigation controls. (See the illustration below.) Trimming a video gives you the freedom to precisely edit the video length.



Before trimming

### *Trimming a video:*

1. Double-click a video thumbnail to select it for trimming.
2. Use the navigation controls or drag the **Jog Bar** to move to the starting point of your desired trimmed video. When you're there, click **Set mark-in**. Alternatively, simply drag **mark-in** to the starting point.
3. Similarly, determine the ending point by using **Jog Bar** and **Set mark-in/mark-out**.
4. Now, the trimmed video is ready. (You can preview the trimmed video by pressing [SHIFT] and clicking **Play**.)



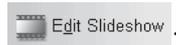
*After trimming*

Another way to trim your videos is to use the **Extract Video** feature. To learn about this feature, see the section [Extract video](#) on the next page.

### **Edit video or slideshow**

If you have Ulead VideoStudio 6 installed on your computer, you can edit your video in the Media clip list using VideoStudio 6 by clicking  **Edit Video**.

If you want to edit a slideshow, select the slideshow thumbnail then click



**Note:** *The availability of Edit Video will depend on the DVD MovieFactory version you have.*

## Extract video

Trim your video by drawing out specific portions of your clip. This feature allows you to select and extract multiple portions from your clip and then modify your clip according to the portions you have extracted.

### *Extracting videos:*

1. Click the video in the Media clip list to select it then click . The Extract Video dialog box opens.
2. To select a portion to retain, use the Jog Bar to go that section of the video then use the In and Out buttons (or Mark-in [F3] and Mark-out [F4] buttons on the Trim Bar). Click **In** when you find the start of the portion you want then click **Out** when you reach the end of the portion you want extracted.
3. Repeat step 2 as often as necessary to extract more portions from your clip.
4. Your extracted videos will appear on the Media clip list. Preview the clips you have extracted by pressing [SHIFT] and clicking the play button. Click OK.
5. The dialog box closes and you return to the Add/Edit Media Clip step.



In the Add/Edit Media Clip step, you can see the portions you have extracted by looking at the Trim Bar of the Preview window. The red segments on the Trim Bar are the portions that you have extracted. Preview the clips you have extracted by pressing [SHIFT] and clicking the play button. If you need to change the portions that you have extracted from your clip, click Extract Video again.

**Note:** *The availability of Extract Video will depend on the DVD MovieFactory version you have.*

## Replace audio

Insert or replace the background music of your video by using this feature.

Click  **Replace Audio** to open the Replace Audio dialog box where you can specify an audio track you want to use with your video.

### Notes:

- *After adding or replacing the background music, you can still remove or use the original music of your video file again by clearing the **Replace audio with selected file** option in the dialog box.*
- *The availability of Replace Audio will depend on the DVD MovieFactory version you have.*

## Split a video

You can add more video thumbnails by breaking an existing video thumbnail into several ones. Simply double-click to select a video thumbnail in the Media clip list, and then drag the **Jog Bar** (as depicted on **page 382**) to move to the scene you want as the separating point. Next, click

 **Split Video**. You can keep moving the **Jog Bar** and add as many video thumbnails as you like. Note that the original video thumbnail is still retained while new ones are added accordingly based on the number of newly added videos.

## Add/Edit chapters

This feature is only available when the **Create menus** option is selected. By doing so, you can create submenus linked to their associated video clip at the **Setup Menu** step later.

Represented as a video thumbnail in a submenu, each chapter is like a bookmark for a video clip. Viewers can easily select a chapter then the video clip will immediately jump to the first scene of that chapter and start the playback. This feature is particularly useful when you want to attract your viewers by giving them the freedom to choose a particular part of the movie to watch. Note that these small video thumbnails only link to its “mother” video without generating any additional physical video files. So, you don’t need to worry about the possibility of unexpected file size increase.

### *Creating or editing chapters linked to a video clip:*

1. Select a video in the Media clip list.
2. Click **Add/Edit Chapter**.
3. Click **Auto** to let Ulead MovieFactory help you select chapters (such as at fixed intervals), or drag the **Jog Bar** to move to a scene as the first frame of a chapter, and then click **Add**.
4. Repeat Step 3 as needed. You can also use **Remove** or **Remove All** to delete unwanted chapters.
5. Click **OK**.



#### **Tips:**

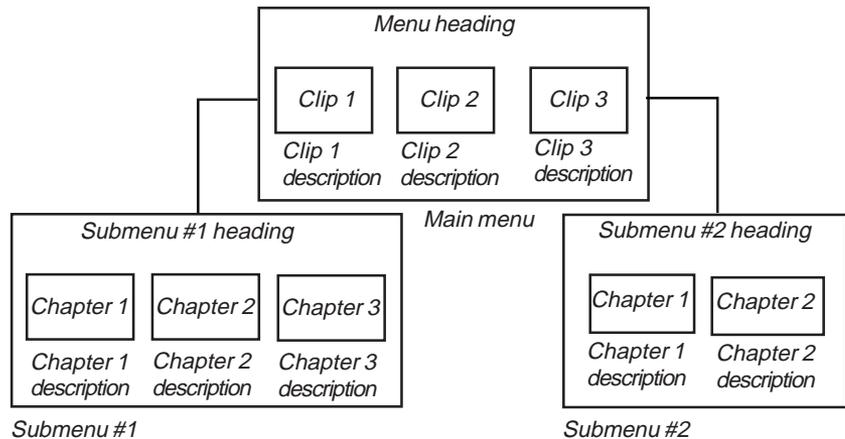
- If you want to use **Auto**, your video must be at least one minute long or the video has scene change information.
- If you click **Auto** and your video is a DV-formatted AVI file captured from a DV camcorder, DVD MovieFactory can automatically detect scene changes and add chapters accordingly.
- If the selected video is an MPEG-2 file with scene change information, DVD MovieFactory automatically generates these chapters for you when you click **Auto**.

## Setup menus

At this step, you can create the main menu and submenus. They provide a list of interactive thumbnail-styled options displayed on a screen for your movie viewer to choose from. Ulead DVD MovieFactory offers a set of menu templates to best fit the purpose of each menu. Custom-made menus are also available at your fingertips.

To help you better understand the DVD/SVCD/VCD menu structure, see the illustration below.

In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it therefore there is no submenu for Clip 2.



In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it therefore there is no submenu for Clip 2.

### *Editing menus:*

- 1 By default, DVD MovieFactory automatically makes all required menus for you. Use **Current displayed menu** to switch to the menu you want to edit.
- 2 Click “My Title” to customize the menu heading. You can also click the text description under each video thumbnail for customization.



**Note:** If you skip Step 2, “My Title” and the thumbnail name will be used as the menu heading and the text description respectively. If you don’t want to show the menu heading or the text description, simply delete it.

3. To change the image shown on each video thumbnail, click it then drag the **Jog Bar** to change.
4. To change a menu layout, use the **Menu template** list and select another preset.
5. You can also click  **Background image** to use your own background image, or click  **Background music** to use your background music.
6. To further customize and create your own menu template in the **My Favorites** folder, click  .
7. When you’re done, click **Next** to preview the movie.

## Preview your movie

Now, it’s time to see how your movie looks like before you burn it onto a disc. Simply move the mouse and click **Play** to watch your movie and test the menu selection on your computer. Use the navigation controls here as you would on a standard remote control of a home DVD player.

**Tip:** As you move between controls, a *ToolTip* pops up and tells you its specific function.

## Output your movie

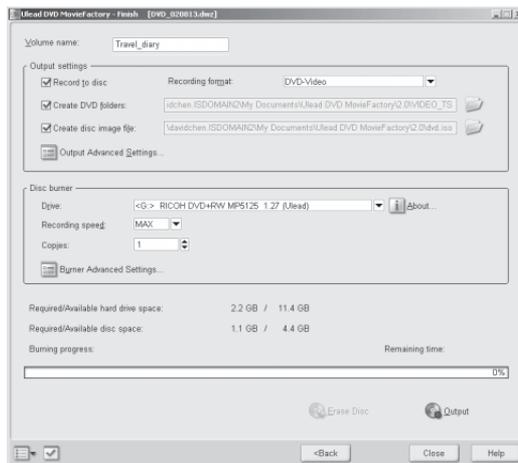
This is the final step before your video disc or output file is ready. Here, you can choose the disc burner, as well as select the folder where you want to output video files or a disc image file.

**Tip:** Before actual disc burning starts, make sure the disc in the correct format has already inserted into the disc burner.

### Outputting your movie:

1. Enter a volume name (up to 32 characters) for the output disc.
2. In **Output settings**, select one or more tasks you want to do. For example, select the recording format that best suits your need. (See the notes below). You can also click **Output Advanced Settings** if you want to add additional components such as a video disc player or your personal data.
3. Select a disc burner and make settings (such as the recording speed) compatible with your output disc format.
4. Click **Output**.
5. The burning progress bar shows you the burning status. Once it is done, click **Close**.

**Note:** The availability of **Include DVD player** in the **Output Advanced Settings** dialog box will depend on the **DVD MovieFactory** version you have.



### Notes on how to choose an appropriate recording format:

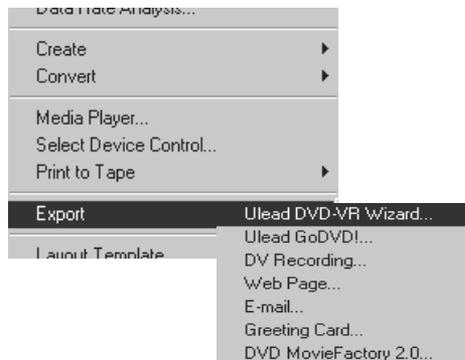
- *DVD MovieFactory provides an option, **DVD-Video (fast editable)**, that allows you to still use the industrial standard DVD-Video format, however, it will only burn the necessary files you need so you can edit your video content (e.g. menus) in the future. This option saves time in copying files and hard drive space when you edit the contents of your disc again but may result in your disc not being compatible with some DVD players.*
- *If DVD-Video (fast editable) is selected, options in the **Output Advanced Settings dialog box** such as Include personal folder to disc and Archive images of slideshows will not be available.*
- *If DVD-Video (fast editable) is selected, keep in mind that there is a 30MB file size limitation for menus, background audio and project file combined. Audio files have larger file sizes and therefore it takes up the bulk of this file size limitation. Reduce the file size of your audio (e.g. shorter length) if you plan to have a lot of menus.*
- *If you choose **DVD-Video**, you will be using the industrial standard DVD-Video format for maximum compatibility. However, you cannot enjoy the advantages brought by the **DVD-Video (fast editable)** option.*

## Ulead DVD-VR Wizard

You can record or add your videos to the device that supports DVD-RAM (using the DVD-VR format) or DVD-R. Follow the procedure below to learn how to use the DVD-VR Wizard.

### Step 1: Select a file to export

Select **File: Export - Ulead DVD-VR Wizard** then select a compatible DVD-VR video file in the Select Video File dialog box.



## Step 2: Add Program

The Ulead DVD-VR Wizard dialog box appears. Choose an option below, and then click Next:

- To record video files onto a new blank formatted DVD-RAM disc, click **New Disc Image**.
- To add video files onto an existing disc (with some data previously recorded), click **Open Disc Image** and then select the “DVD\_RTAV” folder on the DVD-RAM disc in the **Browse Folder** dialog box.
- To add other files, click **Add MPEG File** and then select the files you want to add in the **Select Video File** dialog box. Next, click **Open**.



**Tip:** If you record your videos on a new DVD-RAM disc, it must be pre-formatted in the DVD-VR format. After formatting, a “DVD\_RTAV” folder is automatically created on the disc.

## Step 3: Select Playlist

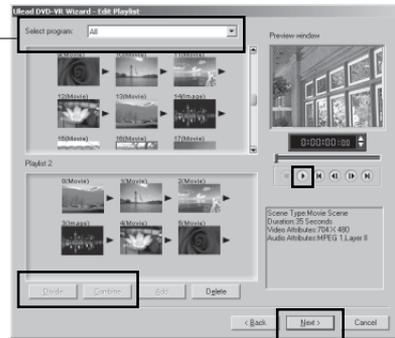
Select a play list. (You can also add or delete a list as needed.) If you select **All**, all video clips are in its original chronological order. Once you’re done, click **Next**.



### Step 4: Edit Playlist (All)

In Step 3, if you select **All** you can select multiple neighboring clips for combination, or divide a clip. You can also select any clip to preview its content. Once you're done, click **Next**.

**Note:** *Select Program* shows different sets of programs recorded in the chronological order.



### Step 5: Edit Playlist

In Step 3, if you select a play list, the list is displayed in the lower pane while the upper pane shows all available video clips. Here, you can add or delete any clip in the play list. (Drag-and-drop is also supported.) Once you're done, click **Next**.



### Step 6: Playback Simulation and Output

Use **Select playlist** to preview any content as needed. Once you're done, click **Record**.



#### Notes:

- While recording is in progress, all buttons are temporarily gray out. When recording is done, click **Finish** to complete the task.
- While recording is in progress, you can still cancel recording by pressing **[Esc]**. By doing so, no files will be recorded onto the disc.

# Appendix



## Background information

*To get the most out of MediaStudio Pro, it is important to understand the fundamentals behind digital video editing, and video in general. This means an appreciation of both the analog and digital video worlds, and how the sound and moving pictures that make up video move between those worlds.*

***In this chapter you will learn about:***

- *The world of analog video ..... p.396*
- *The world of digital video..... p.397*

## The world of analog video

---

Video, in general, starts out as a series of electrical signals (analog waves) which have been recorded by a camera and then broadcast over airwaves or played back from a video tape. To be able to see and hear the video information contained within this signal, it has to follow certain standards and be decoded by a specific device. The most common device is a television set and the most common standards are **NTSC** (National Television Standards Committee) and **PAL** (Phase Alternating Line). NTSC is predominant in North America and many Asian countries, while most of Europe and the South Pacific follow the PAL standard. These different standards explain why you cannot view video recorded in England on a television set in the United States and vice versa, without special equipment.

### Inside the video signal

The standard video signal defines color by two factors: luminance and chrominance. Luminance is the black and white values of color and serve to control the brightness and contrast of the picture, whereas chrominance is the colors of the video itself and control the hue and saturation of the picture. The NTSC and PAL standards both utilize luminance and chrominance and merge them into the one signal along with any audio information. This type of signal is called composite video as it combines the various aspects of video. Another type of signal, component, separates the luminance and chrominance values of a video signal and offers better quality through greater control over the various aspects of color. A good example of component video is Betacam.

## How analog video is displayed

Analog video is displayed on an NTSC or PAL compatible device, such as a television set. The tube of a television set is made up of a series of lines which display the pictures that we see. The number of lines determines the resolution and quality of the video. (NTSC devices have 525 lines and PAL have 625.) When the video signal is received, it moves across and down these lines, with each pass referred to as a scan, and one complete pass as a field. Once it has reached the end of the scan, it repeats the process, updating the display each time. This all happens very quickly, with the tube being scanned 60 times a second for NTSC devices and 50 for PAL devices.

When television was first developed, the sets at the time had trouble scanning so many lines for each field. To compensate for this, it was decided to interlace the display, (scan alternate lines rather than every line). For example, the first scan would pass over every even line, the second every odd. (As such it took two fields of information to display an actual image.) This was still quick enough to fool the human eye into believing that it was seeing a continuous and uninterrupted picture.

---

## The world of digital video

Instead of having the video represented by a series of waves and signals, digital video's data is made up of a series of zeros and ones. Converting analog signals into digital data involves digitizing or capturing data. This is done using a special hardware card called the **video capture board**. There are several varieties of video capture boards in the marketplace. Some are designed to perform professional broadcast videos, and others, to process the more consumer-orientated home video.

## Inside digital video

There are three components that go into the makeup of digital video: **frame rate**, **frame size**, and **data type**. The **frame rate** refers to the number of frames that appear each second, while the **frame size** is the actual physical size of each frame. The **data type** determines the number of colors allowed to appear at one time. How you work with these three elements is determined by the type of video capture board available and your preferred method of distribution. For instance, if you have a high-end capture board and plan to output your data into a video tape, then you need the best quality possible, like **640x480**, **30** frames per second **24-bit** color, for NTSC devices. If you have a less expensive capture board, and plan to output your video in a CD-ROM or over the Internet, then your decision on the type of video is determined by the machine or medium it will be played back from. This is because different machines and mediums have different abilities at moving amounts of video data. This ability is referred to as the **data rate**, which measures how much data can be moved within one second.

## Working with the data rate

The problem with most venues where video is transmitted and viewed (e.g. DVD players, computer disc players, the Internet, etc.) is that they have trouble moving large amounts of data continuously. The specifications of a majority of these devices give you an indication of how many kilobytes can be moved at any one time. A DVD with a capacity of **4.7** to **17GB**, has a data rate of approximately **600kbps** to **1.3mbps**. Compare that to the Internet where many people still operate with **56kb** dial-up modems with a data transfer rate of less than **57.6kbps**!

Another point to consider is that while devices promote a specific data transfer rate, very few can maintain that rate over an extended period. As such, if your video comes in just under **600kbps**, it doesn't necessarily mean that most DVDs can play it smoothly. There are four factors that affect the data transfer rate for video files: **frame rate**, **frame size**, **data type**, and **compression**.

## Understanding the frame rate

The **frame rate** determines how many images get displayed during every second of a video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother your playback can be because motion can be shown in smaller increments and at a faster rate. But higher frame rates require more memory as a greater number of images must be stored and shown each second. So, if you are producing fast motion video, such as recording a sporting event, you probably need to retain as high a frame rate as possible. But if you are working on a project where there is little or slow movement, you might be able to save some space by using a slower frame rate.

## Understanding the frame size

The **frame size** determines how big the video image appears on screen. By using a larger frame size, your image can be bigger and assuming your source material is of sufficient quality, you can include more detail in your video. But larger frame sizes carry two distinct problems. First, each frame requires more data to store the information. For example, an uncompressed frame with a size of 320 x 240 might require about 250KB of memory. A 640 x 480 frame (twice the size) would require about 1MB, (four times as much memory!). The frame size also affects how well the video plays back for another reason. Larger frames require more information to be redrawn. Some displays cannot refresh themselves fast enough to show each change smoothly.

## Understanding data types

The **data type** of a frame refers to how many bits (memory) are allocated for displaying colors. For example, 8-bit (1 byte) data types can show a maximum of 256 colors, while 24-bit can show over 16 million colors (256x256x256). Obviously, the greater the data type the larger the file size for the video. While this may be true in most cases, you will find that a 24-bit video can often be compressed to rates equivalent to 8-bit video as compression schemes can easily reduce the thousands of colors present to

just a few. The main reason for choosing 8-bit over 24-bit is that you can control the range of colors that appear in an 8-bit file by using a color palette. This ensures that your video will display equally well on machines running in 256 color display modes (often the requirement for those seeking to distribute video on CD-ROM or over the Internet).

## Understanding video compression

While frame rate, frame size and data type all contribute to controlling the transfer rate, the real savings come from effective use of compression. In general, there are two types of **compression** used in the digital video world: **spatial** (intraframe) and **temporal** (interframe). By combining these methods, video files can be saved at a fraction of the size required for their uncompressed counterparts. For example, compression schemes, such as MPEG, first compress the images in certain frames of a video by finding repeated or similar patterns in the image. Then, the compression method refers to preselected frames, (key frames) and creates baseline data to compare against the information in the following frames. This time, the compression method seeks differences from the previous frame and discards everything else. It is for this reason that videos that use a limited number of colors and easily identified patterns, such as cartoons, tend to compress very well, while those with much greater colors and more random patterns, such as live video recordings, require larger file sizes.

### ***Motion JPEG***

The JPEG compression scheme works by compressing each frame in a video sequence. It is not the most efficient in regard to file sizes, but by compressing every frame individually, it offers the best quality and is the scheme of choice for people wanting to output back to video tape or broadcast. To do this, however, you will need a lot of storage space and a high-end video capture board that can handle large amounts of data and

low compression ratios, such as 2:1 (every one original frame can be resized down by half). Once you get up to higher ratios such as 10:1 or even 100:1, noticeable degradation occurs and you would be better off using another scheme such as MPEG.

### ***MPEG***

MPEG has grown out of JPEG but added more sophisticated interframe techniques to save only the differences between key frames – called I frames. Currently there are two standards: **MPEG-1** and **MPEG-2**. **MPEG-1** is designed to produce ½ screen (352x240) 24-bit color, 30 frames per second video running at approximately 170kbps. **MPEG-2** is designed for full screen (720x480) 24-bit color, 60 field video running at anywhere between 500kbps to 2mbps. MPEG-2 is set to become the standard for high quality video playback, particularly over the newer DVD discs.

### ***MPEG.Now***

The **MPEG.Now** software codec promotes superior quality transcoding and real-time encoding for MPEG 1 and 2. It supports real-time features (e.g., direct MPEG capture from **IEEE-1394** interfaces).

### **Aspect Ratio**

Aspect ratio is the relative horizontal and vertical sizes of the screen or image (usually expressed as width:height). If an image has an aspect ratio of **4:3**, it means that it is wider than it is tall (which, of course, is mostly the case for television). It is best to maintain the image's aspect ratio when adjusting its size to avoid distortion. It could also be used to represent the dimensions of a particular image's display resolution (e.g., if we have a resolution of **800x600**, the aspect ratio is **4:3**, or if we have a resolution of **720x480**, then the aspect ratio is **16:9**). The standard aspect ratio for traditional television sets and computer monitors is **4:3** while the aspect ratio for high-definition, wide-screen digital systems is **16:9**. More systems can read **4:3**. For the sake of general viewership, **4:3** would be the most advisable display aspect ratio to use.

## Frame type

A **frame** is a single image in a video sequence. The type of frame you choose will determine how your videos are produced. There are three frame types: **Field Order A**, **Field Order B**, and **Frame-based**. The first two types are best used for capturing video that is intended for output to a VCR tape (or TV). The latter, on the other hand, is best used for video that will be viewed on your personal computer.

## DV Type-1

A DV compressed video and pulse code modulated (PCM) audio data is what can be found in a native DV interleaved stream that is created and used in I/O with a DV device. This interleaved stream can be saved in an AVI file as an interleaved video/audio stream. This method of storing DV data is known as Type-1. With Type-1, the entire DV stream is saved without modifications as a single AVI stream. The good thing about storing your video as DV Type-1 is that the DV data does not need to be processed and is stored precisely in its original format.

## DV Type-2

It is possible for interleaved DV data to be divided into one video stream and multiple audio streams (about **1** to **4**) within a single AVI file. This method of saving DV data is known as Type-2. With Type-2, the DV stream is divided into separate data segments—video and audio. They are then saved as two streams in the AVI. The good thing about converting your file into a DV Type-2 is that it is compatible with any video software that is not especially written to read and process Type-1 files.

## WMV

**Windows Media Video**, developed by Microsoft, is a rather new video streaming format that allows data to be transmitted in a constant, continuous stream, permitting it to be displayed during the process. It is expected to

replace the current standard **AVI** (Audio Video Interleaved) format sometime in the near future.

### **On USB and IEEE-1394 (Firewire) capture cards**

To connect your DV device to your system, your computer must first have a capture card. You can use an **IEEE-1394** or **USB** port to connect the device to your system.

#### ***The difference between USB and IEEE-1394 capture cards:***

**USB** (Universal Serial Bus) is an external bus standard that allows up to **12** mbps data transfer. One **USB** port can link up to **127** devices (*i.e.*, modems, keyboards, *etc.*), and support Plug and Play installations. This is available in most systems.

**IEEE-1394**, on the other hand, is another external bus standard that allows up to **400** mbps of data transfer and can connect approximately **63** peripheral devices. **IEEE-1394** is also known by other names. Apple calls their version **Firewire** while other companies call theirs **iLink** or **Lynx**.

### **System Tweaks**

The following are useful, video-specific tweaks for improving the performance of your system. Some of the paths may vary slightly between various versions of Windows.

- If you have two hard drives on your system, install the software on your system drive (usually C:) and capture the video to your other drive (usually D:).
- Your display card shouldn't use too much of your resources just to provide you with overlay. Right-click on your desktop, select **Properties: Settings**. Lower the color depth to "High Color (16-bit)", and set the screen resolution to 1024x768. You might want to disable some of the high-end 3D gaming features, which have no bearing on video display.
- Make sure DMA is enabled. Click **Control Panel: System - Device**

**Manager.** Select **IDE Controller - Primary/ Secondary - Advanced**, and make sure DMA is selected on each of your drives.

- Disable **Write-Behind Caching** on the hard drive used for video capture. Go to **Control Panel: System**, right-click on your hard drive then click **Properties**.
- Change the values of your **Paging File (Swap File) size** in **Control Panel: System - Advanced -Virtual Memory**. Set the minimum and maximum values to twice your amount of RAM. So if you have **256MB** of RAM, set both your minimum and maximum paging file limits to **512**.

**Note:** *After each of these tweaks, restart your computer and make sure it is running well before proceeding to the next one.*

**Direct Memory Access (DMA)** is a method of transporting data from the system's main memory without passing through the CPU. It is also useful when making direct back-ups while doing real-time capturing.

**Write-Behind Caching**, otherwise known as copy-back caching, is a technique wherein revisions to the content of the data in the special high-speed storage mechanism aren't copied to the cache source until needed. It can be found in several microprocessors.

For an exhaustive list of version-specific tweak for Windows, please visit the excellent [http://www.videoguys.com/Windows\\_Tips.html](http://www.videoguys.com/Windows_Tips.html)

# Shortcuts



# Shortcuts

## Video Capture shortcuts

---

Video Capture has many shortcuts that allow you to access commands and open dialog boxes without having to go through the menus.

### File Menu

Ctrl + O	Displays the Open dialog box
Ctrl + S	Saves an existing video file
Alt + Enter	Displays file information about the current video
F6	Displays the Preferences dialog box
Ctrl + Q	Exits Video Capture

### Control Menu

Esc	Stops the video clip being played and returns it to the first frame
Space	Starts playing the video clip
Page Up	Skips back through the video clip
Page Down	Skips forward through the video clip
<-	Moves back a single frame
->	Moves forward a single frame
Home	Goes to the first frame of the video clip
End	Goes to the last frame of the video clip
Shift + F	Goes to a specified location using a controllable device(Only works if you are in Capture Mode)
Ctrl + R	Plays the video clip in a continuous loop (Only works if you are in Playback Mode)
F3	Selects an individual frame and/or the start of a selected area
F4	Defines the end of a selected area
Delete	Closes the door if a controllable device is installed
Insert	Opens the door if a controllable device is installed

### View Menu

Ctrl + P	Displays the video in Playback mode
Ctrl + E	Switches to Capture Mode. It displays a preview of the video you intend to capture

Ctrl + V Displays the video directly from the capture board

### **Capture Menu**

F5 Displays the Video Capture dialog box

Ctrl + C Captures a single frame to the clipboard

F8 Captures a single frame to a file

### **Help Menu**

F1 Displays the contents for Video Capture Help

### **Miscellaneous**

Double-click Status bar Opens the Preferences dialog box

Double-click any toolbar Floats or docks the toolbar

Shift + F10 Invokes the About Windows Help dialog box

Double-click title bar Maximizes or restores the active window

Esc Closes dialog boxes without making changes

Double-click Status bar Opens the Preferences dialog box

Double-click any toolbar Floats or docks the toolbar

Shift + F10 Invokes the About Windows Help dialog box

## **Video Editor Shortcuts**

---

Video Editor has many shortcuts that allow you to access commands and open dialog boxes without having to go through the menus.

### **File Menu**

Ctrl + N Starts a new video project

Ctrl + O Displays the Open dialog box

Ctrl + W Closes the current project file without exiting Video Editor

Ctrl + S Saves an existing document

Alt + Enter Displays the Project Settings dialog box

F6 Displays the Preferences dialog box

Ctrl + Q Exits Video Editor

### **Edit Menu**

Ctrl + Z Undoes the last command  
Ctrl + Y Reapplies the last undone command  
Ctrl + X Cuts the selection area onto the clipboard  
Ctrl + C Copies the selection area onto the clipboard  
Ctrl + V Pastes the clipboard contents  
Del Deletes the selected area  
Ctrl + L Selects all clips in the Timeline  
Ctrl + B Deselects any selection area  
F7 Invokes the selected clip's associated program

### **View Menu**

+ Zooms in  
- Zooms out  
F9 Toggles between the current and previous view

### **Search Menu**

Ctrl + G Displays the Go To dialog box  
Ctrl + F Displays the Find Clip dialog box  
F2 Repeats the last search

### **Clip Menu**

Ctrl + D Displays the Video Filters dialog box  
Ctrl + A Displays the Audio Filters dialog box  
Ctrl + R Displays the Overlay Options dialog box  
Ctrl + M Displays the Moving Path Options dialog box

### **Help Menu**

F1 Starts the online help

**Using the Shift key**

Shift while inserting a clip in the middle of another clip	Splits existing clip to make room (only when Single-Track Ripple or Multi-Track Ripple is selected)
Shift while selecting clips	Allows you to select multiple clips
Shift + Ctrl	Allows you to select audio clips while selecting video clips and vice versa
Shift while dragging the title clip edge	Trims a title clip using the Trim Window
Shift + F1	Invokes context sensitive help

**Using the Ctrl key**

Ctrl while dragging	Copies the selection to another place in the Timeline
Double-clicking	
Empty video track	Displays the Insert Video or Image File dialog box
Empty audio track	Displays the Insert Audio File dialog box
Empty F/X track	Switches the Production Library to the Transition effect gallery, when displayed
Title clip	Displays the Title Options dialog box
Project Cues	Displays the Rename Cue dialog box
Video, audio or image clip	Displays the clip in the Source Window
Video Editor Title bar	Maximizes or restores the active window
Title bar of the Timeline Window	Docks the Timeline into the Video Editor workspace
Other Title bars	Closes or hides the window
Info section in the Status bar	Displays the Preferences dialog box

**Preview Window and Source Window**

Enter / K	Plays/Pauses the preview of the project in the Preview Window or the playback of a selected clip in the Source Window
Shift + Space	Plays a preview range or pauses the playback

Space	Plays from the current pointer position up to the mark out frame or pauses the playback
Esc	Stops the playback for the Source and Preview Window
Page Up	Displays the frame of the previous edit point
Left & Right arrows	Goes back or forward in the project or a selected clip by one frame
Page Down	Displays the frame of the next edit point
F3	Create Mark-in
F4	Create Mark Out
Shift + F3	Clears a mark-in or mark-out point at the current frame, if any
F5	Adds or deletes a cue
Home	Jumps to the beginning of the project (Preview Window) or goes to the first frame in the clip (Source Window)
End	Jumps to the end of the project (Preview Window) or goes to the last frame in the clip (Source Window)
Shift - drag	Create new selection in the audio clip (Source Window only)
F8	Refresh (Preview Window only)
Ctrl + 2	Activates the Preview Window
Ctrl + 3	Activates the Source Window
J	Displays the previous frame
L	Displays the next frame

### Timeline Toolbar

C while selecting a clip	Allows you to select a clip using the Clip Selection Tool
E while selecting the first clip in a track	Allows you to select a track using the Track Selection Tool
Shift + E	Allows you to select multiple tracks
T while dragging	Allows you to select clips that fall within a time range using the Time Selection Tool
M	Selects a trim option (Normal, Overwrite or Stitch)
R	Selects a ripple editing mode (No Ripple, Single-Track Ripple or Multi-Track Ripple)
S while clicking on a frame	Cuts a clip into two using the Scissor Tool
Shift + S while clicking on a position to cut	Cuts clips in multiple tracks
F while clicking two	

audio clips	Applies the cross-fade effect to the audio clips
Shift + F while clicking two audio tracks	Applies the cross-fade effect to all overlapping audio clips in the audio tracks
Z while clicking on the Timeline	Zooms in
Shift + Z while clicking on the Timeline	Zooms out
Ctrl + I	Separates the audio track from a video clip
Ctrl + 1	Activates the Timeline Window
Shift + Up & Down arrows	Displays all the video tracks in the Timeline
Alt + Up & Down arrows	Displays all the audio tracks in the Timeline
Up & Down arrows	Moves the selected clip in the Timeline Window one track up or down.
<b>Miscellaneous</b>	
Up & Down arrows	Adjusts the volume
Left & Right arrows	Moves the selected clip(s) one frame forward or backward
Left & Right arrows	Moves the Vertical Preview Line one frame forward or backward when there are no clips selected (Also displays the current frame when the Preview Window is open)
Page Up & Page Down	Moves the Vertical Preview Line to the previous or next project cue, clip edge, the beginning or end of a project
F3	Marks the beginning frame for a preview area
F4	Marks the last frame for a preview
Esc	Closes dialog boxes without making changes
Del	Deletes a selected thumbnail in the Production Library
Ctrl + 4	Activates the Production Library
Ctrl + 7	Opens the Audio Mixing Panel
F10	Invokes the options menu of the active window
F11	Adds the active clip in the Production Library to the Source Window
Shift + F11	Moves the inserted clip from the Source Window to the Timeline Window specified by the indicator position. If the Timeline is occupied, the clips cannot be inserted.
Ctrl + F11	Applies the changes made on the inserted clip directly to the Production Library or the selected clip in the Timeline

Shift + Ctrl + Left & Right arrows	Allows you to select multiple clips in the Production Library
Ctrl + 5	Activate Quick Command Panel
Ctrl + 6	Activate Trim Window
Ctrl + L	Select All
Shift + Arrow (left & right)	Scroll Timeline View
Ctrl + Arrow (left & right)	Preview video ( without scrub)

### Timeline

Space	Play project
ESC	Stop
Page up or down	Previous or Next edit point
F3 / F4	Set preview range
F5	Add project cue
Arrow (up/down)	Select or move clip
Arrow (left/right)	Jog
Shift + Arrow (up/down)	Scroll video tracks
Alt + Arrow (up/down)	Scroll audio tracks
Shift + Arrow (left/right)	Shuttle (scroll Timeline)
Ctrl + I	Split clip
F10	Invoke menu
Shift + 0	Change speed range to -8.0
Shift + 1	Change speed range to -4.0
Shift + 2	Change speed range to -2.0
Shift + 3	Change speed range to -1.0
Shift + 4	Change speed range to -0.5
Shift + 5	Change speed range to 1.0
Shift + 6	Change speed range to 2.0
Shift + 7	Change speed range to 4.0
Shift + 8	Change speed range to 8.0

### Source Window

Space	Play clip
ESC	Stop
Page up or down	Previous or Next edit point

F3/F4	Set mark-in / mark-out
F5	Add clip cue
Arrow (up/down)	Change active clip
Arrow (left/right)	Jog
Shift + Arrow (left/right)	Shuttle (control speed)
F11 / Shift F11	Add active clip into Timeline
Ctrl + F11	Apply change back to Production Library
F10	Invoke menu
L	Doubles the current play speed range
J	Increases by one half the current play speed range

### Production Library

Tab	Switch from Thumbnail View to List View or vice versa
Shift or Ctrl + arrow key	Select multiple clips
F11	Add selected clips to Source Window
F10	Invoke menu

## Audio Editor shortcuts

---

Audio Editor has many shortcuts that allow you to access commands and open dialog boxes without having to go through the menus.

### File Menu

Ctrl + N	Displays the New dialog box
Ctrl + O	Displays the Open dialog box
Ctrl + W	Closes an audio file
Ctrl + S	Saves an existing audio file
Alt + Enter	Displays information about the audio file
F6	Displays the Preferences dialog box
Ctrl + Q	Exits Audio Editor

### Edit Menu

Ctrl + Z	Undoes the last applied command
Ctrl + X	Cuts a selection area and places it onto the clipboard

---

Ctrl + C	Copies a waveform or selection area onto the clipboard
Ctrl + V	Pastes the clipboard contents
Del	Deletes a selection area
Ctrl + L	Selects the entire waveform
Ctrl + K	Deselects any selection area

**Control Menu**

Space	Plays/Pauses the waveform
Esc	Stops playing the waveform
Ctrl + R	Records to an audio file
Ctrl + D	Records an audio file from a CD
Ctrl + M	Runs the Mixer program
F2	Plays only the selection area
F3	Starts selecting during playback
F4	Ends a selection during playback
Ctrl + Home	Goes to the start of the selected area
Ctrl + End	Goes to the end of the selected area
F5	Places a cue on the waveform
Shift + Tab	Goes to the previous cue
Tab	Goes to the next cue
Ctrl + G	Displays the Go To Cue dialog box

**View Menu**

Ctrl + A	Displays the actual view of the waveform
+	Zooms in on the waveform
-	Zooms out on the waveform
Ctrl + 1	Fits the entire waveform in the window
Ctrl + F	Fits a selection in the window
Ctrl + T	Toggles between current view and actual view

**Window Menu**

Shift + F5	Cascades all waveforms
Ctrl + H	Tiles all waveforms horizontally
Shift + F4	Tiles all waveforms vertically
Ctrl + P	Displays the Audio Master Panel

**Help Menu**

F1 Displays the contents for Audio Editor Help

**Miscellaneous**

Double-click Title Bar Maximizes or restores the active window

Double-click Toolbar Hides the Toolbar

Double-click Overview

Strip/waveform Selects the whole waveform

Double-click Sample

Information title bar Hides the Sample Information box

Double-click Sample

Information box Displays the Wave Information dialog box

Double-click Status

Bar Displays the Preferences dialog box

Esc Closes dialog boxes without making changes

Alt + Backspace Undoes the last applied command

Shift + Insert Pastes the clipboard contents

Shift + F6 Toggles between showing/hiding the Sample information window

Shift + Delete Cuts a selection area and places it onto the clipboard

Insert Copies a waveform or selection area onto the clipboard

**Video Paint shortcuts**

---

Video Paint has many shortcuts that allow you to access commands and open dialog boxes without having to go through the menus.

**File Menu**

Ctrl + N Opens the New dialog box

Ctrl + O Opens the Open dialog box

Ctrl + W Closes the current window

Ctrl + S Saves an existing file

Ctrl + P Opens the Print dialog box

---

Alt + Enter	Displays properties of the current file
F6	Displays the Preferences dialog box
Ctrl + Q	Exits Video Paint

### **Edit Menu**

Ctrl + Z	Undo the last command
Ctrl + Y	Redo the last command
Ctrl + X	Cuts the current selection
Ctrl + C	Copies the current selection to the clipboard
Ctrl + V	Pastes the contents of the clipboard as a selection
Del	Deletes the current selection
Ctrl + K	Duplicates the last floating selection
Ctrl + L	Duplicates the last Paint Layer
Ctrl + F	Opens the Fill dialog box
Ctrl + A	Selects the entire contents of the current frame

### **View Menu**

Enter	Preview current project
Shift + F	Begins flicking the current video
+	Zoom in
-	Zoom out
Ctrl + 1	Fit in window by 1 x
Ctrl + 2	Fit in window by 1/2 x

### **Frame Menu**

Ctrl + Home	Go to previous cue
Ctrl + Left arrow	Go to previous frame
Ctrl + Right arrow	Go to next frame
Ctrl + End	Go to next cue
Ctrl + G	Opens the Go To dialog box
Esc	Stops the current video from playing or flicking

**Window Menu**

Shift + F5	Cascade
Shift + F4	Tile vertically

**Help Menu**

F1	Displays the contents for Video Paint Help
----	--

**Miscellaneous**

F11	Displays the current active frame on the filmstrip
Shift + F1	Activates help button on menu bar
Shift + F10/Right mouse click on workspace	Displays the Edit menu as a floating menu
Double click on file Title Bar	Maximizes or restores current window
Double click on Toolbar or Tool Panel title bar	Closes window
Double click on Status Bar	Displays Preferences dialog box
Shift + click on Filmstrip	
Scroll Bar	Displays the next or previous frame in the Strip View.
Ctrl + click on Filmstrip	
Scroll Bar	Displays the next or previous set of frames in the Strip View.

## CG Infinity shortcuts

---

CG Infinity has many shortcuts that allow you to access commands and open dialog boxes without having to go through the menus.

### File Menu

Ctrl + N	Displays the New dialog box
Ctrl + O	Displays the Open dialog box
Ctrl + W	Closes a project file
Ctrl + S	Saves an existing project file
Alt+Enter	Displays the Properties dialog box
F6	Displays the Preferences dialog box
Ctrl + Q	Exits CG Infinity

### Edit Menu

Ctrl + Z	Undoes the last applied command
Ctrl + Y	Redoes the previous action
Ctrl + X	Cuts a selection and places it onto the clipboard
Ctrl + C	Copies a selection onto the clipboard
Ctrl + V	Pastes the clipboard data into the current project as an object
Ctrl + A	Selects all objects in the current project
Del	Deletes a selection or object

### View Menu

+	Resizes the image on the screen for better detail
-	Resizes the image on the screen to see more of it at one time
Ctrl + U	Removes all program element on the screen except the current frame and floating toolbars and panels
Ctrl + D	Shows only the outline of each object in the project

## Help Menu

F1                                      Opens the CG Infinity Help Contents dialog box

## Miscellaneous

Double-click title bar              Maximizes or restores the active window

Double-click toolbar or  
panel title bar                      Hides the toolbar or panel

Double-click any toolbar          Makes toolbar floating if docked or docks toolbar when floating

Double-click Status Bar          Opens the Preferences dialog box

Esc                                      Closes dialog boxes without making changes

# Index



## Symbols

3D Moving Paths .....	206
4:3 & 16:9 aspect ratio .....	121

## A

Adding shadows to an object .....	322
Adjust tool .....	332
Adjusting an object's path .....	332
Advanced Moving Paths .....	205
Aligning CG objects .....	316
Alpha Channels .....	193
Amplification .....	361
Analyzing video's data rate .....	225
Animation texture .....	54
Aspect ratio .....	40
aspect ratio display management .....	121
Audio	
extracting extra audio tracks .....	130
synchronizing .....	38
tracks .....	133
Audio amplification .....	35, 210
Audio Editor	
shortcuts .....	414
Audio Editor program .....	343
amplification .....	361
basics .....	344
bit reduction .....	363
bound .....	370
calibrating sound .....	365
changing views .....	349
clearing data .....	359
converting audio files .....	348
creating new files .....	346
cross fading sound .....	371
cues .....	354, 356, 357
managing .....	358
using in Video Editor .....	359
customizing .....	353
decay .....	370
delay .....	370
drag-n-drop functions .....	350
echo .....	370
editing .....	355
fading sound .....	367
filling .....	361
filters .....	361
global viewer .....	349
inserting .....	360
mark-in / mark-out .....	356
mixing .....	360
mixing sounds .....	365
removing .....	366
mono channel .....	344
muting sound .....	359, 364
pitch .....	362
playing files .....	346
preferences .....	353
quality .....	352
quantizing sound .....	363
recording .....	350
removing background noise .....	364
replacing .....	360
resonance .....	370
retaining sound .....	359
reversing sound .....	369
sample information .....	357
samples .....	353
saving .....	347
to video .....	347
selection areas .....	356
silence .....	363
sound sweetening .....	361
special effects .....	367
speed .....	368
stereo channel .....	344
stereo pan .....	369
time units .....	349, 353
timecode .....	349
transformation curve .....	368
viewing	
information .....	357
viewing audio data .....	348
waveform display .....	349
zooming .....	348

Audio Editor shortcuts .....	414
Audio fading .....	211
Audio filters .....	209
Audio Mixing Panel .....	228
grouping audio tracks .....	232
modifying volume controls .....	233
Auto capturing .....	90
Autosnap .....	282

## B

Background noise, removing .....	361, 364
Background sets .....	54
Batch list	
editing .....	110
viewing .....	110
Batch video creation .....	224
Bit reduction .....	363
Blue screens .....	133
Bound .....	370
Bring to front .....	329
Brush panel .....	290
advanced tab .....	293
color tab .....	293
options tab .....	291, 298
shape tab .....	290

## C

Calibrating	
sound .....	365
video .....	82
color .....	82
waveform monitor .....	82
Calibrating clips .....	156
Capture history .....	105
Capture log .....	105
Capturing	
audio .....	91
auto-naming .....	91
controlling your DV device .....	95
customizing .....	91
FAT32 file system limit .....	94

from a DV camcorder .....	93
history/log .....	105
IEEE-1394 FireWire capture card .....	93
improving .....	87, 88
MPEG video .....	96
save to library .....	91
Scan DV Tape .....	101
seamless capturing .....	94
still image sequence .....	104
video	
auto .....	90
DV camcorder .....	93
hardware concerns .....	86
manual .....	90
WMV video .....	97
Capturing a sequence of frames .....	104
Capturing MPEG video .....	96
Capturing videos and images .....	88
Capturing WMV video .....	97
based on profile .....	98
CG Infinity	
shortcuts .....	419
CG Infinity program .....	307, 375
adjust tool .....	332
basics .....	308
bring to front .....	329
color tab .....	321
customizing .....	317
cutting & copying	
objects .....	313
default object styles .....	323
duplicating .....	314
edit window	
view .....	312
envelope tool .....	331
freehand tool .....	326
general tab .....	320
grid .....	315
customizing .....	316
grouping objects .....	329
guides .....	315
customizing .....	316
mattes .....	66

- moving paths ..... 334
  - adjusting ..... 335
- Object Style Panel ..... 320
  - color tab ..... 321
  - general tab ..... 320
  - shadow tab ..... 322
- object tool ..... 330
- objects ..... 310
  - aligning ..... 316
  - changing across time ..... 336
  - changing shape ..... 332
  - defining style ..... 320
  - freehand ..... 326
  - layering ..... 329
  - moving ..... 330
  - shape ..... 325
  - text ..... 324
  - timing ..... 337, 338
  - transforming ..... 330
  - working with ..... 319
- pasting
  - object styles ..... 314
  - objects ..... 314
- path tool ..... 327
- projects ..... 310, 313
- reference background ..... 311
- rulers ..... 315
- saving ..... 313
- selecting
  - objects ..... 328
- send to back ..... 329
- shadow tab ..... 322
- shape tool ..... 325
- text tool ..... 324
- tutorial
  - advanced techniques ..... 66
  - animating objects ..... 65
  - applying gradients ..... 62
  - common techniques ..... 60
  - creating a corporate logo ..... 64, 67
  - creating and distorting text objects ..... 61
  - creating mattes ..... 66
  - drawing regular shapes ..... 60
  - fade-ins and distortion ..... 69
  - manipulating objects ..... 63
  - timing multiple objects ..... 68
  - viewing objects ..... 312
    - preview mode ..... 312
    - wireframe mode ..... 312
- CG Infinity shortcuts ..... 419
- Changing an object across time ..... 336
- Chroma ..... 80
- Clearing data ..... 359
- Clip Selection tool ..... 150, 163
- Clips
  - calibrating ..... 156
  - changing the playback speed ..... 155
  - Clip Selection Tool ..... 163
  - color ..... 132, 133
  - cues ..... 160, 161
  - cutting & copying ..... 153
  - deleting ..... 154
  - display mode ..... 134
  - displaying ..... 134
  - jumping to ..... 162
  - locating ..... 162
  - pasting ..... 154
  - pasting attributes ..... 154
  - placing cues ..... 161
  - relinking ..... 156
  - replacing ..... 132
  - reversing frames ..... 156
  - Scissors tool ..... 165
  - silence ..... 132
  - Smart Trim ..... 166
  - snapping together clips ..... 155
  - splitting ..... 128
  - splitting/combining video and audio
    - clips ..... 155
  - Timeline cues ..... 161
  - Ulead file types ..... 139
  - Ulead Image Sequence ..... 139
  - video ..... 127
  - visibility ..... 134
  - zooming ..... 135
- Clone tool ..... 58



DVD .....	241
DVD MovieFactory .....	245
DVD-VR Wizard .....	245

## E

Echo .....	370
bound .....	370
decay .....	370
delay .....	370
Edit windows .....	265
Editing	
duplicating .....	314
Editing and customizing WMV profiles .....	100
Editing in A/B Roll mode .....	159
Effects .....	182
audio .....	187
cross-fade .....	185
customizing .....	184
saving .....	185
effects	
adding .....	127
Envelope tool .....	331
Erase tool .....	52
Exporting	
DVD MovieFactory .....	245
DVD-VR Wizard .....	245
Exporting to DVD MovieFactory .....	245
Exporting to DVD-VR Wizard .....	245
External device preview .....	247
External playback device .....	247
Extracting audio .....	130
Eyedropper tool .....	288

## F

Fade to black .....	185
Fade-In/Out .....	69
Fading .....	211
Fading sound .....	367
Field options .....	158
File properties .....	107
Files	

changing views .....	349
creating .....	257, 346
saving .....	255, 313, 347
viewing .....	312, 348
Filling an area with color .....	294
Filmstrip panel .....	254
settings .....	254
Filters	
applying .....	301
Find .....	162, 163
Flicking .....	302
Frame rate .....	120
Frames	
deleting .....	267
duplicating .....	267
inserting .....	266
replacing .....	267
Freehand tool .....	326
Freeze frame .....	157

## G

Gamma correction .....	194
General & Summary Timeline .....	136
Global viewer .....	264
audio .....	349
Gradients	
applying .....	62
Grid .....	315
customizing .....	316
Grouping	
objects .....	329
Grouping audio tracks .....	232
Grouping clips .....	153
Guides .....	315
customizing .....	316

## H

Hardware concerns for capturing .....	86
---------------------------------------	----

<b>I</b>	
Insert Title Clip dialog box .....	213
Font tab .....	214
Inserting .....	360
clips .....	127, 129, 133
frames .....	266
Inserting clips .....	169
Inserting files into the Timeline .....	29
Instant Play .....	175
Instant Playback	
performing .....	32
<b>J</b>	
Jumping to clips .....	162
<b>K</b>	
Key frame controls .....	188
Key frames	
moving paths .....	207, 336, 337
<b>L</b>	
Lasso tool .....	282
Layering objects .....	329
Layout .....	122
Locating clips .....	162
Long echo .....	370
Long repeat .....	370
Luma .....	80
<b>M</b>	
Macros .....	48, 298
advanced techniques .....	57
Magic Wand tool .....	283
determining color similarity .....	284
Manual capturing .....	90
Mark-in / Mark-out .....	109, 356
Mattes .....	195
creating .....	51, 66
MCI devices .....	109
Mixing sounds .....	360, 365
removing .....	366
Modifying volume controls .....	233
Moving	
objects .....	330
selection marquees .....	285
Moving path dialog box .....	203
Moving paths .....	34, 37, 202, 334
adjusting .....	335
MPEG-1 .....	240
MPEG-2 .....	242
Muting sounds .....	359, 364
<b>N</b>	
New features .....	19
New project	
creating .....	28
No Source Video mode .....	279
Normal .....	166
Normal mode .....	276
<b>O</b>	
Object Style Panel .....	320
color tab .....	321
general tab .....	320
shadow tab .....	322
Object tool .....	330
Objects .....	310
adding color .....	321
adding shadows to .....	322
aligning .....	316
alignment .....	315
animating .....	65
changing across time .....	336
default styles .....	323
defining attributes .....	320
defining style .....	320
dimensions .....	320
freehand .....	326
manipulating .....	63
moving .....	330

- moving paths ..... 334
  - resizing ..... 69
  - shape ..... 325
  - text ..... 324
  - timing ..... 68, 337, 338
  - transforming ..... 330
  - working with ..... 319
  - Onionskin mode ..... 278
  - Outputting to tape ..... 238
  - Overlay effects ..... 190, 192
    - Alpha Channels ..... 193
    - blue screen ..... 193
    - gamma correction ..... 194
    - key types ..... 192
    - mattes ..... 195
  - Overlay Options dialog box ..... 191
  - Overlay tracks ..... 133
  - Overwrite ..... 166
- P**
- Package ..... 122
  - Packaging ..... 255
  - Paint layer
    - selection areas ..... 281
  - Paint Layer mode ..... 255
  - Paint Tool
    - customizing ..... 46
  - Paint tools ..... 289
    - brush panel ..... 290
      - advanced tab ..... 293
      - color tab ..... 293
      - options tab ..... 291
      - shape tab ..... 290
  - Painting ..... 275
    - brush panel ..... 290
      - advanced tab ..... 293
      - color tab ..... 293
      - options tab ..... 291
      - shape tab ..... 290
    - paint tools ..... 289
  - Palettes
    - Video Paint ..... 285
  - Parade ..... 80
  - Pasting
    - CG objects ..... 314
      - styles ..... 314
    - color palettes ..... 107
    - masks ..... 259
    - selections ..... 259
  - Pasting attributes ..... 154
  - Pasting clips ..... 154
  - Path tool ..... 327
  - performing instant playback ..... 32
  - Picture-in-Picture effect ..... 205
  - Pitch ..... 362
  - Placing an object on a moving path .... 334
  - Playback mode ..... 77
  - Posting timecode ..... 237
  - Power Duplicate ..... 47, 260
  - Power duplication ..... 53
  - Preferences ..... 269, 353
  - Preferences dialog box ..... 142
    - Associate tab ..... 146, 147
    - Edit tab ..... 144
    - General tab ..... 143
    - Preview tab ..... 147
  - Preview window ..... 174
  - Previewing ..... 31, 174, 175, 302
    - audio clips ..... 234
    - external playback device ..... 247
    - flicking ..... 302
    - managing preview files ..... 303
    - using external device ..... 179
  - Previewing audio clips ..... 234
  - Previewing on an external device ..... 179
  - Production Library ..... 123
    - drag-and-drop ..... 125
    - placing clips ..... 123
    - thumbnails ..... 126
    - using the storyboard ..... 124
  - Projects ..... 310
    - cues ..... 160
    - customizing ..... 119
    - layout ..... 122
    - saving ..... 122

- new ..... 118, 257
  - packaging ..... 122, 255
  - rendering ..... 258
  - saving ..... 122
  - settings ..... 120
  - Smart Relink ..... 122
  - templates ..... 118, 119
    - saving ..... 121
- Q**
- Quantizing sound ..... 363
  - Quick Command Panel ..... 138
    - adding commands ..... 138
- R**
- Recording from Timeline to DV device . 41
  - Recording macros ..... 298
  - Recording sound ..... 350
  - Recording to a DV camcorder ..... 246
  - Reference background ..... 311
  - Region dialog box ..... 201
  - Relinking clips ..... 156
  - Replacing ..... 360
    - frames ..... 267
  - Replacing clips ..... 132
  - Resize ..... 69
  - Resonance ..... 370
  - Retaining sound ..... 359
  - Retouch tool ..... 296
  - Reversing frames of a clip ..... 156
  - Reversing sound ..... 369
  - Ripple editing ..... 167, 168, 169
  - Ruby Mask mode ..... 276
  - Ruler Unit ..... 315
- S**
- Saving ..... 255, 313
    - audio ..... 347
    - audio to video ..... 347
    - captured video ..... 107
  - Scan DV Tape ..... 101
  - Scissors tool ..... 165
  - Seamless Capturing ..... 94
  - Selecting areas in the Timeline ..... 150
    - Clip Selection tool ..... 150
      - multiple clips ..... 150
  - Selecting colors ..... 287
    - with the eyedropper ..... 288
  - Selecting multiple clips ..... 150
  - Selection area
    - marquee
      - hiding ..... 280
  - Selection areas ..... 356
    - adding or subtracting to ..... 284
    - color fill ..... 294
    - color similarity ..... 283
      - determining ..... 284
    - composite mode ..... 281
    - filling ..... 361
    - irregular shapes ..... 282
    - marquee ..... 280
    - moving marquee only ..... 285
    - objects ..... 328
    - paint layer ..... 281
    - shapes ..... 281
      - fixed size ..... 281
    - shrink mode ..... 281
    - Time Selection tool ..... 151
    - Track Selection tool ..... 152
      - transforming ..... 294
  - Send to back ..... 329
  - Shape objects ..... 325
  - Shape tool ..... 281
  - Shortcuts ..... 407
  - Shrink mode ..... 281
  - Silence ..... 363
  - Silence clips ..... 132
  - Smart Check & Convert ..... 140, 141
  - Smart Trim ..... 166
  - Sound
    - amplification ..... 361
    - calibration ..... 365
    - inserting ..... 360
    - mixing ..... 360, 365

- muting ..... 359
  - normalizing ..... 362
  - pitch ..... 362
  - quantizing ..... 363
  - replacing ..... 360
  - retaining ..... 359
  - sweetening ..... 361
  - Sounds
    - bound ..... 370
    - cross fading ..... 371
    - decay ..... 370
    - delay ..... 370
    - echo ..... 370
    - fading ..... 367
    - removing mixed tracks ..... 366
    - resonance ..... 370
    - reversing ..... 369
    - special effects ..... 367
    - speed ..... 368
    - stereo pan ..... 369
  - Soundtracks ..... 210
  - Source window ..... 172
    - cues ..... 161
    - Trimming ..... 164
    - trimming clips ..... 173
  - Special effects ..... 181, 367
  - Speed ..... 155, 368
  - Splitting video and audio clips ..... 155
  - Stadium echo ..... 370
  - Stereo pan ..... 369
  - Stitch ..... 166
  - SVCD ..... 241
  - Synchronizing audio & video ..... 38
- T**
- Text objects ..... 324
    - creating and distorting ..... 61
  - Text tool ..... 324
  - Time Selection tool ..... 151
  - Timecode
    - audio ..... 349, 353
  - Timeline
    - ripple editing ..... 167, 168, 169
    - using ..... 129, 136
  - Timeline track buttons ..... 152
  - Titles ..... 212
  - Track buttons ..... 152
  - Track Selection tool ..... 152
  - Tracks ..... 133
  - Transform tool ..... 294
  - Transformation curve ..... 368
  - Transforming
    - objects ..... 330
    - selections ..... 294
  - Transition effects ..... 182
    - audio ..... 187
    - cutomizing ..... 184
    - dialog box ..... 183
    - saving ..... 185
  - Transition track ..... 133
  - Trimming clips ..... 163
    - options ..... 166
  - Scissors tool ..... 165
  - Trimming in Source window ..... 164
  - Tutorials
    - advanced cloning ..... 58
    - advanced macros ..... 57
    - advanced power duplication ..... 53
    - advanced techniques
      - CG Infinity ..... 66
      - Video Editor ..... 36
      - Video Paint ..... 52
    - animating objects ..... 65
    - applying gradients ..... 62
    - applying video filters ..... 33, 49
    - audio amplification ..... 35
    - capturing DV ..... 26
    - cloning ..... 50
    - common techniques
      - CG Infinity ..... 60
      - Video Paint ..... 49
    - converting 16:9 to 4:3 ..... 40
    - creating a corporate logo ..... 64, 67
    - creating a new project ..... 28
    - creating a picture-in-picture ..... 37

creating a split screen .....	36
creating a transition effect .....	31
creating a video paint project .....	44
creating and distorting text objects ...	61
creating background sets .....	54
creating mattes .....	51, 66
creating slideshows .....	39
cross-fading audio .....	35
customizing paint brushes .....	46
drawing regular shapes .....	60
editing a frame .....	45
erase tool .....	52
fade-ins and distortions .....	69
inserting files into the Timeline .....	29
macros .....	48
manipulating objects .....	63
moving path .....	34, 37
performing instant playback .....	32
power duplicate .....	47
previewing your work .....	31
recording to DV device from timeline	41
retouching frames .....	56
setting up DV device control .....	26
synchronizing audio & video .....	38
timing multiple objects .....	68
transition effects .....	31
trimming clips .....	30
working with clips .....	30

## U

Ulead color picker .....	287
Ulead DVD MovieFactory 2 .....	376
getting around .....	376
which task should you choose .....	377
working on a project .....	378
Ulead DVD-VR Wizard .....	390
Ulead file types .....	139
Ulead Image Sequence .....	139
Using DV SmartPlay .....	177
Using Instant Play .....	175
Using the Audio Mixing Panel .....	228
Using the storyboard .....	124

## V

VCD .....	240
Vectorscope .....	80
chroma .....	80
luma .....	80
parade .....	80
Video	
synchronizing .....	38
tracks .....	133
Video Capture	
shortcuts .....	407
Video Capture program .....	73
audio attributes .....	78
audio format .....	78
basics .....	74
calibrating your display .....	79, 82
color .....	82
vectorscope .....	80
capturing .....	88
audio .....	91
auto-naming .....	91
customizing .....	91
save to library .....	91
capturing audio .....	78
color test pattern .....	79
copying color palettes .....	107
customizing .....	83, 91
data type .....	106
displaying video .....	76, 77
displaying video options .....	77
improving capturing .....	87, 88
MCI devices .....	109
pasting color palettes .....	107
playback mode .....	77
preview options .....	77
properties .....	107
resizing the window .....	78
saving .....	107
setting preferences .....	83
tutorial	
capturing DV .....	26
setting up DV device control .....	26

- vectorscope ..... 80
- video source setup ..... 76
- waveform monitor ..... 82
- Workspace ..... 74
- Video Capture shortcuts ..... 407
- Video Capture Workspace ..... 74
- Video Editor
  - shortcuts ..... 408
- Video Editor program ..... 115
  - A/B Roll editing mode ..... 159
  - adding effects ..... 127
  - Alpha Channels ..... 193
  - audio amplification ..... 35
  - audio filters ..... 209
  - basics ..... 116
  - blue screen ..... 193
  - blue screens ..... 133
  - calibrating clips ..... 156
  - changing a clip's playback speed ... 155
  - Clip Selection tool ..... 163
  - clip visibility ..... 134
  - clips ..... 132
    - Clip Selection tool ..... 163
    - display mode ..... 134
    - inserting ..... 127, 133
    - playback speed ..... 155
    - replacing ..... 132
    - Smart Trim ..... 166
    - splitting & uniting ..... 155
    - Ulead file types ..... 139
    - Ulead Image Sequence ..... 139
  - color filter ..... 144
  - color keying ..... 133
  - converting a project ..... 140
  - converting files ..... 140
  - creating files
    - audio ..... 227
    - edit decision list ..... 236
    - video ..... 218, 219, 220, 222
  - cropping video clips ..... 222
  - cues ..... 160, 161
  - customizing preferences ..... 142
  - display modes ..... 134
  - Effects ..... 182
    - audio ..... 187
    - cross-fade ..... 185
    - customizing ..... 184
    - saving ..... 185
  - effects
    - adding ..... 127
  - field options ..... 158
  - filters ..... 197
  - freezing a frame ..... 157
  - gamma correction ..... 194
  - grouping clips ..... 153
  - inserting ..... 127, 133
  - Instant Play ..... 175
  - jumping to clips ..... 162
  - key frame controls ..... 188
  - layout
    - saving ..... 122
  - locating clips ..... 162
  - locating empty time slots ..... 163
  - mattes ..... 195
  - moving path dialog box ..... 203
  - moving paths ..... 34, 37, 202
  - outputting to tape ..... 238
  - overlay effects ..... 190
    - Alpha Channels ..... 193
    - blue screen ..... 193
    - gamma correction ..... 194
    - key types ..... 192
    - mattes ..... 195
  - overlay key types ..... 192
  - overlays ..... 133
  - package ..... 122
  - placing cues ..... 161
  - posting timecode ..... 237
  - previewing ..... 31, 174, 175
  - Production Library
    - folders ..... 125
    - placing clips ..... 123
    - viewing thumbnails ..... 126
  - projects
    - customizing ..... 119
    - layout ..... 122

- new ..... 118
- packaging ..... 122
- settings ..... 120
- Quick Command panel ..... 138
- relinking clips ..... 156
- reversing frames of clips ..... 156
- ripple editing ..... 167, 168, 169
- Scissors tool ..... 165
- scrolling titles ..... 212
- selecting areas in the Timeline ..... 150
- Smart Check & Convert ..... 140, 141
- Smart Trim ..... 166
- snapping together clips ..... 155
- Source window ..... 172
- special effects ..... 181
- splitting ..... 155
- synchronizing audio & video ..... 38
- Time Selection tool ..... 151
- Timeline ..... 134
  - ripple editing ..... 167, 168, 169
- Timeline cues ..... 161
- titles ..... 212
- Track buttons ..... 152
- Track Selection tool ..... 152
- tracks ..... 133
  - overlay ..... 133
- transition effects ..... 182, 183
  - audio ..... 187
  - customizing ..... 184
  - fade to black ..... 185
  - saving ..... 185
- trimming clips ..... 173
  - options ..... 166
- tutorial
  - advanced techniques ..... 36
  - applying video filters ..... 33
  - changing the amplification of an audio track ..... 35
  - creating a new project ..... 28
  - creating a split screen ..... 36
  - creating a transition effect ..... 31
  - creating a picture-in-picture ..... 37
  - creating moving paths ..... 34, 37
  - cross-fading audio ..... 35
  - inserting files into the Timeline ..... 29
  - previewing your work ..... 31
  - synchronizing audio & video ..... 38
  - transition effects ..... 31
  - trimming clips ..... 30
  - working with clips ..... 30
- Ulead file types ..... 139
- Ulead Image Sequence ..... 139
- using DV SmartPlay ..... 177
- video filters ..... 33, 197
  - zooming ..... 135
- Video Editor shortcuts ..... 408
- Video Filter Options dialog box ..... 199
- Video Filters ..... 33
- Video filters ..... 197, 301
- Video Paint
  - shortcuts ..... 416
- Video Paint program ..... 251
  - animation texture ..... 54
  - basics ..... 252
  - brush panel ..... 290
    - advanced tab ..... 293
    - color tab ..... 293
    - options tab ..... 291, 298
    - shape tab ..... 290
  - clone tool ..... 50
  - color fill ..... 294
  - color palettes ..... 286
    - picking colors ..... 287
    - saving ..... 288
  - copying ..... 259
  - cues ..... 262
    - managing ..... 263
  - customizing ..... 269
    - memory usage ..... 271
    - preview options ..... 270
    - video display ..... 272
  - cutting ..... 259
  - deleting
    - frames ..... 267
  - display modes ..... 276
  - duplicating ..... 260

- frames ..... 267
- edit window ..... 255
- modes ..... 255
- viewing ..... 263
- eyedropper tool ..... 288
- filmstrip panel ..... 254
- adjusting ..... 254
- global viewer ..... 264
- inserting frames ..... 266
- lasso tool ..... 282
- macros ..... 298
- Magic Wand tool ..... 283
- opening videos ..... 256
- specific duration ..... 257
- packaging components ..... 255
- paint tools ..... 289
- painting ..... 275
- pasting ..... 259
- masks ..... 259
- power duplicate ..... 47, 260
- preferences ..... 269
- previewing ..... 302
- flicking ..... 302
- projects
- new ..... 257
- rendering ..... 258
- replacing
- frames ..... 267
- retouch tool ..... 296
- saving ..... 255
- selection areas
- color fill ..... 294
- color similarity ..... 283
- composite mode ..... 281
- irregular shapes ..... 282
- marquee ..... 280
- moving marquee only ..... 285
- paint layer ..... 281
- shapes ..... 281
- shrink mode ..... 281
- transforming ..... 294
- shape tool ..... 281
- transform tool ..... 294
- tutorial
- advanced cloning ..... 58
- advanced macro techniques ..... 57
- advanced power duplication ..... 53
- advanced techniques ..... 52
- applying video filters ..... 49
- cloning ..... 50
- common techniques ..... 49
- creating a project ..... 44
- creating background sets ..... 54
- creating video mattes ..... 51
- customizing paint brushes ..... 46
- editing a frame ..... 45
- erasing ..... 52
- macros ..... 48
- retouching frames ..... 56
- video filters ..... 49
- video mattes ..... 51
- zoom tool ..... 264
- zooming ..... 263
- Video Paint shortcuts ..... 416
- Video projects ..... 257
- customizing ..... 119
- layout ..... 122
- saving ..... 122
- new ..... 118, 257
- packaging ..... 122
- saving ..... 122
- settings ..... 120
- Smart Relink ..... 122
- templates ..... 118, 119
- saving ..... 121
- Video Save Options
- Cropping tab ..... 222
- General tab ..... 220
- Video Editor tab ..... 219
- Video source setup ..... 76
- Viewing ..... 255, 263, 312
- audio files ..... 348
- changing views ..... 349
- objects ..... 312
- sample information ..... 357
- zooming ..... 348

Volume ..... 210

## **W**

Waveform display ..... 349

Waveform monitor ..... 82

Windows color picker ..... 288

WMV capture profile ..... 98

    editing and customizing ..... 100

Working with CG Infinity objects ..... 319

Working with color ..... 285

## **Z**

Zoom tool ..... 264

Zooming ..... 135, 263, 348